



THE ABRIDGE
ment of the Historyes
of Trogus Pompeius, gathered
& written in the Latine tongue, by the
famous Hystoriographer Iustine, &
translated into Englishe by Ar-
thur Golding : a worke briefly con-
teyning great plēty of most delectable
Hystories, and notable examples, worthy not
only to be Read, but also to be embra-
ced and folloved of all Men.

*Libra Joh. Habermayha
in dono hitorie J. B.*

IMPRINTED
at London in Fleetstreete, neere vnto
Saint Dunstons Church, by
Thomas Marsh.

1578.

Cum Priuilegio.

To the Right Honorable and his ve
ry good Lorde and Maister, Edwarde de Veer,
Earle of Oxenforde L. greate Chamberlayne of
England, vicount Bulbeck, &c. Arthur Gol-
dinge wiseth Wealch, and Prosperity with
furtheraunce, in knowlledge and encrease
of Honoure.



Ight Honorable, I finde in per-
using of aūcient writers, that it
hath ben y custome of y greatest
Estates and Princes in y world,
when they haue had leysure fro
the earnest and weighty affaires
of their Realmes, to bestow their idel times in peru-
sing stories. For we rade that Artaxerxes sur-
named Longbad, the fift king of Persia, used to
haue the Cronicles, both of his predecessors & of
his owne time also, read before hī at nights whē he
wēt to rest. And Alexāder the great, had that no-
ble writer of y famous battell of Troy in such esti-
matiō, that he neuer went any wher, but he had his
works about him, nor neuer slept, but he had them
vnder his pillowe. Moreouer cōminge into a schole,
and finding not Homers workes there, he gaue the
Maister a buffet w his Fist: Meaning therby, that
y knowledge of Histories was a thing so necessary
to all estates and degrees, that it was an offence to

Aij.

bee

The Epistle.

be without the. For like as in Musike many notes and many tunes make one concent & one Harmony: so also in an History, the variety & multitude of examples, tēd al to one end, that is, the aduancement of Vertue, and the defacing of Vyce. Offring t hēselues as a most cleare & perfit Mirror, wherein for man to behold, (I say not the outwarde portraiture and shape of his body, but) the very linely Image & expresse figure of his inward minde, ēstructinge him how to guide and order himselfe in all things. For what cā be a greater enforcement to chivalry, thē not barely to heare, but in a maner presently to behold y sage and graue consultatiōs of expert Captaines? the speedy puttings in practise of thinges deuised? the pollicies and sleights in executing of thē? the fauorable assistance of successe to the same, with the fame & renowne of valiant enterprises. What cā be a grearter encouragemēt to vertue, then to see mē raised from low & base degre (as it were out of y dust) vnto high estate & honor? to see Realmes flourish? to see cōmon wealths prosper? to se goodmē exalted & euilmē suppressed to see peace & tranquillity obserued, to see Natiōs willingly offer their obediēce, to see lōg cōtinuāce in felicity, w honorable report & wishing for, after y decease? On the cōtrary part, what cā be a greater

dehorta-

Dedicatorie.

dehortacion from vice, then to haue laid before ones eyes not onely the heinousnesse and enormitye of the offence? but also the miseries, calamities, shames and punishmentes worthely ensewing vpon the same, with endlesse reproch and infamy after death? and so consequentely what can be more commodius and profitable then an Historye? Agayne, what can bee more pleasaunt, or more to the satisfying and contentacion of mannes nature (which is alwayes desirous of newes and couetous of knowledge) then sittinge quietly by himself, to receiue tydings of thyngs done through the whole world? to behold the places, the persones, the tymes, and the things with th order & circumstances in doing of the same? to se so many rīning streames: so many high mountains: so many raging Seas: so many wild forests and desertes: so many straūg beasts, Foules, fishes, Serpents, Herbes & trees: so many large Countries: so many rich and populous Cities: so many welgouerned cōmon wealthes: so many good Lawes and custōms: and so many sundrye sortes of people: together with the natures, dispositions, effectes, descriptiōs, situacions comodities, pleasures and displeasures: foundations, continuances and decayes: beginninges, proceedinges, and endinges of the same: and that in such sort, as euery thing may seme, not to be reported, but to be present

A. iij.

lye

The Epistle.

ly in doing? Now at such time as I had finished my translation of the histories of Iustine (who in so small rounge, & in so few words, comprehendeth so many and so notable things that it is to be doubted whether hee be, more brieft of sentence, or plentiful of matter) as I stayed with my selfe (as it were to take breath at the ende of my race) deuisinge to whome I might specially dedicate the same: It came to my remembraunce, that sithens it had pleased Almighty God, to take to his mercy your Lordships noble Father (to whom I had long before vowed this my trauell) there was not anye, who eyther of duty might more iustlye claime the same, or for whose estate it seemed more requisite and necessarye, or of whom I thought it should be more favorably accepted, than of your honor. For to omit other things, wherof this time and matter serueth not to speak, it is not vnknewen to others, and I haue had experience therof my selfe, how earnest a desire your honor hath naturally graffed in you, to read, peruse & communicate with others, as well the Histories of auncient time and things don longe agoe, as also of the presente estate of things in oure dayes: and that not without a certain sharpnesse of wit and ripenesse of vnderstanding. Which things do not only now reioice y hearts of al such as beare faithfull affection, to the honorable

Dedicatorie.

norable house of your auncestours, but also stirre vp a greate hope and expectation of suche wisdom and experience in you in tyme to come, as are mete and becominge for so noble a race. To the furtherance wherof (because I will not bee ouer tedious in wordes) I will brieftly propounde vnto youre L. no mo but two examples, whiche are mencioned amonge many other of like purport in this booke. The one is of the valyante Epaminondas Prynce of Thebe, whoe beyng an expert Captain and politike in all Martiall feates and warlike affayres, was neuerthelesse so well learned that it was a wonder too see how a man bredde, and brought vp in Philosophie, shold come by such knowledge in feates of Armes: or howe a man accustomed too the licentious libertie of the Campe, shoulde reteyne suche exquisite knowledge in Philosophie, with vnsported innocencie of liuing and conuersacion. Whose fortune was suche (by the consente of all writers) that the strengthe, the glorie, and the renowne of hys Countrey, dyd bothe ryse with him and dye wyth him. The other example is of Arimha Kyng of Epyre, who beyng very yonge at the decease of hys father, was by the aduise and consente of the whole Realme, durmyng his nonage, sente too Athens to bee instructed in Learninge and in Philosophie. At his returne then into his owne Realme agayne

Any. he

The Epistle Dedicatorie .

he chose him a sage and graue counsell created officers, made good lawes, abrogated euill customs, and finallye so stablished the state of the common wealth, that he seemed to haue made the Realme newe. And loke how much he was better learned then his ancestors, so much the storye reporteth him to haue ben the better beloued and honoured of his subiectes. Let these and such other examples (wherof your L. shall find store in this worke) encourage your tender yeares, runnyng in the renowned fote steppes of youre famous auncestours, to procede in learnyng and vertue (which are thonly ornamentes of nobilitie, or rather the verye true nobility it selfe) in which sort as you maye bee able too doe acceptable seruice to your Prince and your countrie, Your Prince & your countrie for your welldoynge embrace you and esteeme you as a leuel, and your self therby become equall to any of your worthy predecessours in aduancing thonour of your noble house. Whereof as your great forwardnes geueth assured hope & expectacio, so I most hartely beseech almighty God to further, augment, establish, and confirme the same in your L. with thabundance of his Grace

Your L. humble Seruaunt
Arthur Golding.

To the Reader.



Concerninge there is not a more precious Jewell geuen vs of God than tyme: and that nothinge reioyseth a mans mind more than the remembrance of the well spending, nor any thing more greueth, than the remembrance of the ydle & vayne bestowing therof: It oughte to bee the chiefe regarde and indenuour of al men, in such wyse to employ the same, as may most redound to the profit of others, (for the whiche intent we be chiefly bozne into this world) to thaduancemente of Vertue, and to the purchasyng towarde themselves a laudable name and monument of their well doynges. To aspire vnto the which, we se it hath ben and is the study and treasure of al good and vertuous men: some by doing thinges themselves wherby others myghte take good ensample, and some by putting the actes of other men in writing, to the profite and commoditye of such as should come after: wherein albeit the trauell be not lyke of the writer and of the doer: yet the one deserueth not muche lesse commendacion than the other. For like as there could haue ben no Historiographer, if noble actes and enterpryses had not ben achieved: so if no man shoulde haue put such deedes in writing, besides that the fame of the doers should after a while haue vtterly bene

To the Reader.

ly be condemned to forgetfulnesse) the fruitful example of their doynges, (whiche no to remaineth to posterity must) also nedes haue perished. Therefore are wee not a litle beholding to Chronaciars, as to them that are the guides, instructours, and maisters of our life: by whom wee are not onely admonished of our duties: but also by euident & plaine demonstration told before, (and as it were pointed to with the finger) what we ought to eschew, what we ought to do, and in what maner to enterpryse and bring entyre thinge to effect, as may be most to the praise and behoofe of the doer. In such wise annering and enterlacing, pleasure, variety, and delectacion, with commoditie & profit, that I can not deuise how a man should lightly feele any wearinesse. Howbeit even as the commodity is great if we read and peruse Histories aduisedly: so it nothing availeth, if wee purpose not to put in by the therapies of the true & vndisturbed vertue left in them for the reformation of our liues. For like as when a man cometh into a goodly Garden plentifully replenished with all kind of holsome herbes, sweete flowers, and pleasant noursishing fruites, if he neither gather of the herbes and flowers, nor tasting of the fruits, but cometh by, and doth negligently, feeding his eyes with the vaine sight and beholding of them only, he taketh neither benefite nor pleasure of the same: Even so if a man read ouer Histories, not minding to put the samples in practise, but only contenteth himselfe with the pleasantnesse of the reading, or with the

To the Reader.

the strangenes and variety of the matters, he loseth his labour and mispendeth his life. Neither is there any difference betwene such a one, & hym that looketh vpon his owne Image in a glasse, which he forgetteth as sone as his back is turned. For all our life consisteth wholly in vertuous actes and exercises: the residue thereof beinge otherwise mispent, differing nothing at all from death. Diuers noble personages therefore, (as wel for the worthynesse and excellencye of the works, as to the intent to wyne double honour, and thereby to geue good Example to such as should come after to contend by the lyke perswauement to attaine to the lyke glory and renowne) haue not only don noble feates and aduentures themselves, but also put in writinge as wel their owne dedes as the doyngs of other men. Iuba kinge of *Mauritanie* made a Collection of Thyssories of sundrye Nations. *Julius Caesar* compiled his owne actes. *Trogus Pompeius* wrote The Histories of the whole Worlde: from the beginning of the Monarchy of *Assyria*, vnto the reigne of the Emperour *Augustus*. The bridgemente of whose woordes gathered out by *Iustyne* (who partly by his owne trauele, but more by the decaye and losse of his Authoure *Trogus*, obtained the name of a famous Historiographer) I haue translated oute of Latyn into Englyshe, though not so eloquently as a number could haue done: yet (I trust) according to the true sence & meaning of the Authour wherein albeit I may seme to some: to haue taken in hand a paine & needlesse tra-
well.

To the Reader.

namely, to put forth that thinge in rude & on like
which is written in good & pure latin. Yet not to
standynge (as well for the vopdinge of Idlenesse
the Mother and nourisher of al vice, as also for the
zeale I beare to this my native country, desirous
to gratifye you, and to profite such as haue not un-
derstandynge in the Latin tongue if I coulde) I
haue not stopped my race, vntil such time as I had
attayned to the finall ende of my pretended pur-
pose: folloving the Example of dyuers wyse &
well learned, both of old tyme and also of our age
of all sortes of Nations, whose studie and trauel
hath alwayes beene to brynge into their Mother
tunge, such works as they found either in y^e Greke
(the head and welprynge of all Philosophie, con-
nyng and learning) or in any other language, wor-
thy to bee knowne and had in Remembrance. And in
lyke maner as oftentimes beautifull and welfa-
uored personnes, turned out of their gorgeous ap-
parell & costly attyre into simple raiment: do like
the beholders as well as they dyd in the y^e gailyest
garmentes: Euen in likewise (I trust) it may so
come to passe, that this my rude translation void
of ornate termes and eloquent indityng, may (as
it were) in his playn and homely Englishe cote, be
as wel accepted of the favorable reader, as when
it was richly clad in Romain besture: considering
that the value and estimation of Christow, is no
more abased thereby, then should the vertue of a
precious stone, by settinge it in brasse or yron, or by
caryng it in a clothe of Leather. If any errors
haue

To the Reader.

haue escaped me in y^e doing hereof (as I doe not
thinke, but that some thinges worthy to be cor-
rected, may haue escaped my hand,) I desyre the
learned Reader, as well to admonish me freely
of myne errour, as also to put his helping hand
to th^e amēdment of the same. In doing whereof
as he shal greatly benefit others, so let him assure
himselle, he cannot do me a greater pleasure, nor
a higher frendshipp. And thus wishing e
that my trauayle & labour in doinge
hereof, may turne to thy com-
modity & profit, I bid thee
farewell.

The Succession of the Kings of the

three Monarchies, mencioned in his Booke, take out
of Eusebius, Berofus, and Megasthenes.

The first Monarchie of Chaldeans.		
1 Ninus the sonne of Jupiter	32 Dyrziades	xxx. peres
2 Belus the first Emperour of Assyria raygned	33 Dphateus	xx. peres
3 Semiramis wife of the sayde Ninus	34 Dphatanes	l. peres
4 Zames Sineas, otherwile called Ninus, sonne of the foresaid Ninus, & Semiramis	35 Ocraspes	xlvi. peres
5 Aris	36 Tonos Comoleros, al. Dardanius	lxx. peres
6 Trallius	This Emperie continued 1236. peares.	
7 Balus Ferrus	The second Monarchie of the Medians, & Persians.	
8 Armatritus	The Medes.	
9 Belachus the priest of Baal.	1 Arbaces	28. peres
10 Balus	2 Mandanes	50. peres
11 Uradas	3 Hofarmon	30. peres
12 Hamitus	4 Articarmicus	50. peres
13 Manceaus	5 Arbians	21. peres
14 Sierus of Spherus	6 Arcus	40. peres
15 Hamelus	7 Arriues	21. peres
16 Sparetus	8 Asybaras	20. peres
17 Scatades	9 Asragas	30. peres
18 Imnithas	The kinges of Media halde the Emperie. 292. peares.	
19 Belothus	The Persians.	
20 Bellopares	1 Cyrus	30. peres
21 Lampydes	2 Cambyses. 7. peres.	5. Mon.
22 Sofares	3 Podyzites & Dapastus usurper	7. Monethes
23 Lampares	4 Darius	36. peares
24 Darius	5 Ferres	20. peares
25 Hofarmus	6 Artabanus usurper that slew Ferres	7. monethes
26 Hyreus	7 Artaxerxes longhad.	40. per.
27 Cautrus	8 Ferres	2. mon.
28 Cineus	9 Hogdianus	8. monethes
29 Dercillus	10 Darius the bastard.	19. peres
30 Supalus	11 Artaxerxes mindful.	40. pe.
31 Laodhenes	12 Artaxerxes Ochus	26. peres
	13 Arses	4. peres
	14 Darius the son of Arsamus	whom

The Table.

whom Iustine calleth Cadosman.	6. peres	Seleucus Cerannus	3. pere
The kinges of Persia helde the ppe. 230. peres and 5. monethes.		Antiochus the great	36. pere
The seconde Monarchie of the Medes, and Persians endured. 522. peres. 5. moneths.		Seleucus Philopater	12. pere
The third Monarchie of the Macedonians.		Antiochus Epiphaneus	11. pere
1 Alexander the great, after whose death his kingdome was deuided amdg his noble me. 12. pe.		Antiochus Eupater	2. peare
2 Drideus	7. peres	Demetrius Soter	22. pere
3 Cassander	18. peres	Alexander	10. peres
4 Antipater & Alexad.	4. peres	Demetrius	3. peres
5 Demetrius	6. peres	Antiochus Sedetes	9. peare
6 Pyrrhus	6. monethes	Demetrius agarne	4. peare
7 Asymachus	5. peres	Antiochus Grypho	12. peare
8 Ptolomeus Ceraunus	1. re.	Antiochus Cyrenus.	18. peare
9 Meleager	2. monethes	Phrlippe	2. peare
10 Antipater	1. pere	The kingdome of Syria ens dured. 299. peares.	
11 Sosihenes	2. peres	The Kinges of Agypt.	
12 Antigonus Conatas.	36. per.	Ptolomeus the son of Lag.	40. pe
13 Demetrius	10. pere	Ptol. Philadelphus	58. pere
14 Antigonus	15. peare	Ptol. Euergetes	36. peare
15 Philip	42. peare	Ptol. Philopater.	17. peare
16 Peres the last king.	10. peare	Ptol. Epiphaneus	24. peare
The Emperie of Macedone, lasted wth Alexander. 169. peare and. 8. moneths.		Ptol. Euergetes	20. peare
The Kinges of Asia.		Ptol. Philsc al. Soter.	22. peare
Antigonus	18. peare	Ptol. Alexander	10. pere
Demetrius polioctetes.	7. peare	Ptol. Lachyrus	8. peare
The Kinges of Syria.		Ptol. Dionisius	30. pere
Seleucus, Pricano.	31. peare	Cleopatra.	22. peare
The Kinges of Syria and Asia.		The Emperie of Egypt floode after Alexander. 288. peares.	
Antiochus Soter.	43. peare	The Monarchy of Alexander continued in altogether. 300. peares.	
Antichus Theos.	15. pere	FINIS.	
Seleucus callinicus.	20. peare		

A PREFACE OF SIMON
Grineus to the Reader as cōcer-
ninge the profite of readinge
Hystories.



If it waere as easye for eue-
rye man to take out and vse to hys
owne beehoofe, the examples & in-
structiōs left in Hystories, as h̄ Hi-
stories haue sure and grouded exā-
ples to leane vnto: I would geue al
men aduise to runne the strait and
nearest way into the most plētifull
and fruitefull fieldes of Hystories,
without tariens. For what can be thought moze pleasant
or profitable, thā sittinge as it were in the Theatre or stage
of mans lyfe the whiche an Hystorie hath most exquisitelie
furnished in all poynts, and at all entents and purposes) to
be made ware and wyle, at the perilles of other men, with-
out any daunger on his owne behalfe: to take ensamples of
all sortes, which a man may apply to his owne bechoofe and
profit in euery thynge: and at suche time as he shal chaunce
to be present amonge great men, when with greatest adu-
sement they do debate moste weyghty affaires, to be able to
discusse the ende & sequele of the same, which thinge we all
doe chieflie desire and couet: and that which other wise cō-
sideringe the shortnes of mans lyfe (were a thinge impossy-
ble) to cōpise in memozy the tines of manye hundred yeres
past: to behoulde the beginninges, the proceedinges, and the
endinges of the greatest Emppres: of all euillies either pri-
uate or publike, manifestly to discerne the growd & occasion:
In euery harde and difficult matter to haue one to trye out
the ieperdies & perilles befoze thee: and to haue as it were
a lodesman to go befoze thee in euery daunger: neuer to be
destitute of tryed experience: & (to be briefe) of thinges past
which properly & peculiarly, apperteyneth to the duty of a
wyle.

wyse man,) politickely to foresee what maye followe in all chaunces, and so iudge of them as if they were present. Nowe for as much as we ought to come to the readinge of Histories, so muche the better furnished, as an Historie is more replenished and laden with plenteous fruite: and for as much as it is as difficulte a matter, to giue right iudgemente of another mannes lyfe as of his owne: and that no manne is able (be he neuer so sharpe sighted in this case) to bew another mannes life well, that can not bew his owne: both are to bee vnderstanded: namely that there is in this case very great difficultesse, and also to longe time before we enterpryse hereunto: we ought not only to haue a little smatthe of ciuill policy: but also, that we ought to be fully resolued and established in our selues as concerninge the whole tenour of our life: onles we wll continually wauer in our mindes, and be miserably led about with vayne imaginations of this ille like vnto ghostes. For in like maner as at a great and sumptuous feast, that is furnished wyth all kinde of deyntyes, and delicate viandes, it cometh to passe that one thinge is set before one man, another to another: fewe taste of one thinge, euery man of that he liketh best: the rauyners of al that comes before them: and as euery mans taff and diete is, so taketh he pleasure of the dainties that stande before him: yet notwithstandinge, there is but some one kinde of measure which nature hath appointed, and some one kinde of meate simple and in anye wyse vncorrupted, that is most for the health and nourishment of the bodye: from eyther of the whyche whosoouer steppeth aside, and followeth his owne appetite beyond eyther measure or thordinaunce of nature, he may take more hurt than pleasure of the delicacies: Euen so in that great varietie of mans lyfe, although there be a thousande sundrye sortes of thinges, and a thousande purposes, and after what sorte so euer a man be led by fancye or staied by iudgement so doth he deeme of his owne life, and of other mennes: yet there is but one onely pathewaye of vertue, in whyche

who so walketh aduisedly, is only to becounted to liue well. All others (like as they did at the sumptuous feast, when all thynges prouoke them) bringe able neyther in their owne life, nor yet in any other mannes at any time to find what is best to folowe, or howe to procede: But if nature haue geuen any thinge to man, the which he may vse or abuse at his pleasure, certesse he ought most circumspectely to vse this. But I pray you what man is there almost, that applyinge the rule of vertue vnto all sayinges and doynges, as well of his owne as of other mennes, doth with more aduiselemente aduenture vpon them, then vpon the deinty dishes, set before him on the table: or which thinketh not him selfe sufficiently learned in thys behalfe? In whyche thinge it is a wonder to see, howe soe men deceyue them selues, whiles they imagin that the bare history, is of it selfe able inoughe to instruct the reader, whereas in dede it doth no more but minister matter to learne vpon, offeringe it selfe to all vses accordinge as the person is affectioned, in like case as doth the feast. for some (we see) haue none other delight but onely in the reading: who seeking no more but that only one delectacion, do lose all thother goodly and pleasaunt frutes thereof. Such men gayne nothinge more by the readinge of an Historie, than they that playe vpon a harpe or a lute to driue away the time, as a man would saye, to passe ouer the troublesomnesse of the time present, shortlye after to entre into a greater and more troublesome conflict wyth theym selues. For it is no pleasure that hath not respect vnto vertue. Other some the glittering glosse of glory so much prycketh forward and (which in other matters is vnstableness of minde) to no purpose transfor meth, that they thinke nothyng to great for theym, nor nothinge so farre aboue their reache: quite forgettinge that those gloriuous examples are not set forth by wyriters for any other intent, than that suche as reade them ensuinge vertue, maye learne

to contemne glōry if none be offered, or if it accompany the, not to be proud and arrogāt for it. And although that none but fooles, wyl go about to aspyre to the lyke glōry wpythout the lyke vertue: yet notwithstandinge wee see some, which for none other cause but that they haue reade the noble actes of others, do thinke them selues byghe wise men, and take much vppon them lyke vnto players of Tragedies, who when they haue put of thapparell, wherein they played the partes of most noble personages, do also counterfet them in countenance and behauiour. There ar also (and those not a fewe) whych be lyghte onely in straunge things and wonders, men of vulgare and rude vnderstandynge who after the maner of thunskpyfull people, oftentimes make moze of a mannes gaye cote, than of the person hym selfe, and moze of the outwarde shewe than of the worke. So wonderfull a power hath an Hystory, to worke in the myndes of the Readers. Now, wheras it is the chiefest popnet that belongeth to an Hystorye, to aspyre by the minde of man from slouthfulnesse, and to fence it agaynst all daungers and that the strength of examples, (then the whych there is nothing of greater force to perswade and dissuade) inesppecially tendeth to that ende and purpose it commeth to passe through the carelesse security of menne, (beleuing that other mennes perilles pertaine nothyng to them selues) that suche thinges as are most worthy of remembraunce, are harde and read with beaffe and stopp'd eares. Finallye there be (whiche a man would not beleue) that transgresse euen agaynst the verye same parte that containeth moste graue and earnest matter: as though the thinges should be wpytten, not as they were done in dede, but as they ought to haue bene done. Therefore partly by meanes of that careles security, and partly by meanes of that surfet of rashe and vnadvised readinge, it commeth to passe, that (euen as it were of corrupt humours,) a certayne

corrupte

corruptnesse of iudgement, and peruerfenesse of opinion, (which ought to be most vpyght and sound as cōcerning the lffe) and an vnstedfaste and slippery trade and Tenour of ltuinge is taken by: & that in like wise as to inordinate persons, their meate doth them no good: eue in lyke case, there commeth no profyt at all to vs of our readinge.

I thinke you may nowe perceyue, how y maner of readinge Hystories, and of lookinge vpon a mans lyfe, is well nigh al one. And the greatest difficulty is this. I meane y browardnes of our owne iudgement, whych causeth vs to be diuē, not that way that the examples ought to beare greatest sway of them selues, but that way that our mind is most enclined and bent vnto. This is also another, and of no lesse force than th'other aforesayd, that wryters do in such wise set forth thinges, y they not only seeke to be wel liked, but also (followinge as it were y taste of their owne mouthes as though they were Forgers of it theselues,) giue their iudgement and verdit vpon matters: extollinge some thinges with high commendations, as though they would haue al other men to lyke those thinges, which they most fancied theselues. Which thinge if so bee it they dyd without colour, it were easier to consent or dissent therefro. But nowe in likewise, as Cookes haue oftentimes moze regard to the Belly, then to their maisters commodity and profit: euen so I would God that the wryters of Hystories, for the most parte, sought not so much to please and entice the Reader: Therefore by two meanes are wee led awpye, that is to say, by our owne iudgement, and by the foyle speaking of the wryters, as by them that wryte not matters playnely and sincerely. For an Hystoriographer is but a Reporter of thinges done: with whose iudgement (if there be any faule therein) it standeth in like case, as w a pce of wyne, which (of it selfe beinge good, pleasaunt, and beautiful) doth either take an euil talent of the Caske, or els is otherwys marred, by minglinge some other thinge wpyth it, whych is eyther a shamefull and Intollerable

A iij.

deceit

decepte, or els a poput extreme offolly and ignoraunce. It
is to be sene by thys one example, what matter the iudge-
ment of the wytyer maketh. A man of raw aduysment,
that attributeth the byying to passe of great matters to
mans pollicie: although that by the determination of so
many thynges, he proue hymselfe a lyer: yet he casteth men
into a great folly: as whole knowledge (so the beste they
can) being scarce able to waygh & consider accordingly, the
thynges that lye before their eyes, their power & strength
not much exceeding the litle wormes because of one prospe-
rous successe, rashly taketh vppon it, the rule of the whole
worlde. But such a man as is rashly enformed, teachinge
that thynges are in dede, put in execution by the pollicie of
man, but yet ruled and governed, by the prouidence of god
delinerech wth both from folly, and also from another mis-
chiefe as great as that, which is superstition. By the res-
idue such as be good mē (whole study is altogether employ-
ed about matters appertayning to God) oughte to knowe
what difference there is betwene eche of theym and what
their dutye is. I geue this warning, first of all for this pur-
pose that soasmuch as I am of opinion, that such kind of
authours are to be read (though it be for nothing els but
for the great aboundaunce of examples that they entreate
of) young men should also thinke this, how circumspectlye
and carefully they ought to be read, considering how great
fruites or discōmodities are in them propounded. For it
happeneth in lyke case to such as imagine that an hysto-
rye may be read ouer lightly, or the lyfe be passed ouer vnad-
uisedly, without the exacte obseruinge and executinge of a
mans duty: as it doth to mē of the countreie, which in the
sacking of a citee come to the ryfing of some Apothecaris or
Grocers shoppe plentiouslye furnished wth all thynges
belonging to the craft, and being allured wth the sweete-
nesse of the confections and spices which they chaunce firste
to lay their bandes on, thinking al the residue to be of the
same sort, do eat, sipp, deuoure, cramme in, and lick vp
all

all that comes to hande in suche wyse that some fall sicke,
some runne madde, some dye out of hand, and every one of
them is meruaylouslye dissempered, so that al the armie
laugh them to skorne for theyr labour. For euen as the
lyfe is ful of commodities and discommodities, euen so is
an hystory which is the image and representation of
the life. And the wysdome of the lyfe consisteth
only in the vsage of the lyfe. Farewel,
and enioy these thynges to thy
most furtheraunce and
commodity.

(c3)
..

The Preface of the most famous

Historiographer Iustine, vpon the Histories of Trogus Pompeius,
vnto Antony the
Emperour.



Whereas manye of the Romaynes, euen suche as were of the state of Consuls, hadde put th'actes of the Romaynes in wytyng bothe in Greeke, and also in other straunge languages: Trogus Pompeius a man of auncient eloquence, whether it were for desire of like renowne and gloyp, or for pleasure that he had in the varietie and straungenesse of the worke, compiled as well the histories of the Grekes, as the histories of all the whole world besides in the Latin tounge: to the intent, that as our Chronicles are red in Greeke, so the Chronicles of the Grekes might be read in our tounge also. Wherin he enterprysed a piece of worke of great payn both to body and mynde. For seinge that manye Authours, whiche haue taken vpon them to put in wytyng the doinges of some one king, or of some one peculiar kynd of people, do thinke theymselfes to haue taken a matter of greate weghte in hand may we not worthelepe thinke Pompeius to haue bene as bold as Hercules, that durste aduenture vpon the whole world in whose bookes are conteyned the doinges of al ages, of all kinges, of all nations, & of al countreys: And those things that the Greeke Chronicles haue entreated vpon disorderly, as euery man thoughte most conuenient for himselfe, all the same thinges hath Pompeius (placing them in their tymes and setting the in due order) compiled in history, omittinge al such thinges as were not profitable to bee spoken of. Therefore of these xliiij. Volumes, for so manye did Pompey set forth) by leasure during the tyme that I was in the Citie, I drew out all

al such thinges as I thought worthe to bee knowen, and leauinge out such thinges whereof the knowledge coulde not haue delighted, nor yet were necessarie for example: I haue gathered (as it were) a litle bunble of flowers to the intent that such as haue learned Greeke might haue wherby to bee admonished, and they whiche haue not learned Greeke, wherby to be instructed. The which I haue dedicated vnto your Maestie, not so much to reade as to peruse and correct, and also to the intent to geue an accompt. of the spending of my tyme, wherof Cato willet a due accompt to be made: for it sufficeth me at this present, if your highnes do allow my doinges, trusting herafter that when the hunt of slaunders enuy is ouerpast, they that come after me shal beare witness of my trauaile and paynes takyng
Farewel.

The first Booke of thabridgement of Histories, taken out of the Historie of Trogus Pompeius, by Iustine the Hystorographer.

The contentes of the first Booke.

Ninus layeth the foundatiō of the Monarchy of Assyria. Semiramis counterfayteth herselfe to be a man, buildeth Babilon, cōquereth Ethiopia, maketh vvar agaynst Inde, and vvas slayn by her son Ninus. Sardanapalus is deposed for his vicious living and vwith life endeth thempire of Assyria. Arbactus cōueyeth thepyre to the Medes. Astiages causeth Cyrus to be cast away as sone as he is borne: hee is preferred, by the prouidence of God. Harpagus leseth his sonne for the same. Cyrus ouercometh Astiages and remoueth thempire, from the Medes to the Persians. Babilon rebelleth and is subdued. Cresus is taken prisoner, and his realm brought to miserable subiectiō. Cādaules through his ovne folly is slayne by Gyges, vwho enioyeth the kingdome for his labour. Cyrus vwith two hundred thousand Persians is slayne by Thomris, Q. of the Massagetes. His son Cambyses succeedeth, vwho conquereth Egypt, commaundeth his brother Smerdis to be murdered, and is slayn vwith his ovne sword. Comaris and Oropastes vsurpe, Orthanes beulteth out their treason, Seuen of the noble men conspyre there deaths: Darius is made king by the nying of his horse, he marieth kinge Cyrus daughter, recouereih Babilon by the helpe of Zopyrus, and prepareth vvar agaynst the Scythians.



Princes first
elected for ver
tues sake.

The beginnig
of the Monar-
chy of Assyria.

The first beginning, the govern-
mente of countries and nations
was in the handes of kinges.
Who were aduanced to this high
estate of preheminēce, not through
rascall ambition, but for theyr ver-
tuous and tried behaufour amōge
good menne. There were no
lawes to bynd the people to their
obedience. The commaundementes of the Princes were
in stead of lawes: their custome was rather to defende, the
to enlarge the borders of their kingdome. None bare any
dominion out of his owne countrey. Ninus king of Thassy-
rians, was the first that altered this olde and auncient cu-
stome of al nations through a desire of bearing rule. For
he was the first that made warre bypon his neyghbours,
and

Of Iustine

I.

conquered the nations which yet wist not howe to make
resistence euen vnto the borders of Affricke. There were
before his tyme two auncient kings Vexores kinge of E-
gypt and Tanais king of Scythia, of which, the one made a
voyage into Pontus, and the other into Egypt. But they
made warre a farre of, and not nere home: not to get do-
minion to themselves, but to winne honoure to their sub-
iectes: and so beinge satisfied with victorie, they absteyned
from bearinge rule. But Ninus enlarged his empyre by
cōtinual seizing into his possession such countreys as hee
wonne by reason whereof, hauinge subdued his neyghbours
and ioyning their power vnto his, and so goinge alwayes
stronger to the next, eche former victorie being an occasiō
of furtheraunce to the nexte followinge hee conquered
at the East part of the worde. The last field that he fought
was with Zoroastres king of Bactrians, who is reported
to haue bene the first inuenter of art Magike, & diligent-
ly to haue searched out the beginninge of the worlde, & the
mouing of the starres. This Zoroastres being slayn, Ninus
himselfe also died, leauing behynd him a sonne as then vn-
der age, called Ninus by his wyfe Semiramis. She durste
neither commit the gouernment of the Empyre to a childe
vnder yeres of discretion, nor yet herselfe medle wth it
openly: & therfore considering that so manye & so mightye
nations which scarcely by theyr good willes would obeye
a man would much lesse obey a woman where as she was
Ninus wyfe, she counterfayted her selfe to be his sonne, and
wheras she was a woman, she counterfayted herselfe to be
a boye. And she might wel do it. For both the mother and
the sonne were of a meane stature, and had a small voyce,
and in making and propozcion of body, they were one like
another. Therfore she put on mans apparelle & close bo-
sen, and ware on her heade a kynde of copse called Tyara.
And because folke should not mistruste anye chynge to lye
hiden vnder this newe founde attyre, shee commaunded
the people to bee apparelled after the same sorte, whiche
kynde

Desyre of ho-
nour the first
cause of vvar.

The inuention
of magike and
Astronomie.

An example
of a pollicyke
woman.

kinde of attyre all Thassyrians haue ever vsed, from that day to this. Thus at the first by counterfaytinge the kynd, she was taken for a Boye.

Virtue ouer
cometh enuy.

The buildinge
of Babylon.

Afterward she atchieued many noble enterpryses, by the greatnesse whereof, when she thought she had overcome enuy, she confessed who she was, and whom she counterfeited. Neither dyd this thinge diminish the honour of her estate, but rather increased her renowne, that she beinge a woman, had surmounted in prowesse not onely women, but also men. She builded Babylon and enclosed it with a Wall of hycke enterlaped with sand & Brytmen, which is a kinde of stymy Porter, yssuinge out of the Ground, in diuers places of that Countrey. Many other noble enterpryses did this Queene atchieue. For beyng not content to mayntayne the estate of Chemyrre, as her Husbande left it, she subdued Etyop thereunto.

Semyramis
slayne of her
owne Sonne.

And besides that, she made Warre vpon Inde, whereto neuer any man entered, sauinge she and great Alexander. At the last, vnnaturally desiringe to company with her owne sonne, she was by him slayne, when she had raygned. xlii. yeares after the death of her husband Ninus.

Sardanapa-
lus.

Her sonne Ninus beinge contented wth the Costreys wonne by his Parentes, layde aside all Chualre, and Knighthode, & as though he had chaunged nature wth his mother, hee was seldome scene of men, but spent his time amonge a sorte of women. His posterity also followinge his example, gaue aunswere to the people by Des-sengers. The Assyrians which afterwarde were called Syrians, held the Soueraynty. 1300. yeres. The last that raygned amonge them, was Sardanapalus, a man more nyce than any Woman. Vnto whose presence Arbactus (whom he had made lieutenant ouer the Medes) beinge by long suite and much intreataunce hardily at length admitted, (which thing was neuer graunted to any man before) found him amog a sorte of his concubines spinning purple on a rocke, in womans apparell, passing all the womē there

there in softenesse of body, and nicenesse of countenaunce and weying out to eche of them their taske. At the whiche sight Arbactus disdayning, that so many men should be subject to such a woman, and that so many valiaunt knightes & men of warre should be subject to a woman, went forth and tolde his peres what he had sene: sayinge, he could not fynde in his harte, to obey suche a one as had rather bee a woman then a man. Whereupon the Lordes confedered them selues together and bad him battell. Who hearinge thereof (not like a man entendinge to defend his kingdom, but as women are wont to do for feare of death,) first sought a corner to hide his head, & soone after with a fewe and out of araye, came into the fiede, where beinge vanquished, he retired into his pallace, & there making a great bonfire, cast him selfe and al his ryches thereinto, playinge the man in this only point. After this, Arbactus the worker of his confusion (which before was lieutenante ouer the Medes), was made kinge. And he remoued the empyrre from the Assyrians to the Medes. In pcesse of tyme after many kinges, by order of descent, the kingdome came vnto Astyages. This man hauing noue issue sauing one only daughter, dreamed that he saw spryng out of her priuities a vine whose braunches should ouershadow all Asia. The interpretours of dreames & wōders being asked the aduice in the matter, made aunswere that his daughter should bringe him forth a nephew whose greatnesse was by his vision declared before, and that by him hee should be deposed from his kingdome. The kinge being stricken in feare with this interpretacion, married his daughter neyther to a Noble man, nor to one of his owne countrey, least the nobilitie of the parentes myghte encourage his nephew to take much vpon him: but vnto a man of meane estate and liuing of the countrey of Persia, which in those dayes was reputed as a base countrey, and of no regarde or estimatiō. And yet beinge not by this acte quite dispatched of the feare of his dreame, he sent for his daughter greate

Uicious raz-
lers are the de-
cap of the
greatest kyng
domes.

The empyrre
of the Medes
beginneth.

Astyages and
of his dyane.

Her name
was Mandane.

The crueltie
of Astyages.

great with childe, that as soone as she were deliuered, hee might see the babe killed. Alas, as the childe was borne, it was deliuered to be slayne, vnto Harpagus cheefe of the kinges counsaile. Harpagus feainge that yf after the decease of the king, (because he had no issue male to succeade him,) the kingdome shoulde descend vnto his daughter, she would reuenge the death of her childe vpon him beinge a subiecte, which she could not do vpon her father: deliuered the childe to þe kinges herdsman to cast it away. By chaunce the verye same tyme the herdsman hym selfe had a sonne borne his wyfe therefore hearinge of the castinge awaye of the kinges childe, earnestly besought hir husbände to fetch the childe vnto hir that she might see it.

That God
will haue sa-
ued cannot bee
lost.

The shepheard overcome with the earnest intreatiunge of his wyfe, returned into þe wood, where he found a bytche geuyng the childe sucke, and defendinge yt from foules and wyld beasts. Then being moued with pitye to see the bytch so pityfull, he toke vp the childe and bare it home to his cottage, the bytch folowinge him egerly all the way.

Alas, as the woman toke the babe in hir armes, hee smiled and played with hir, as though he had knowne hyr, and there appeared in him such a chearefullnesse, and as it were a certayne smilinge & flatteringe countenance that she despyed the shepheard her husbände, to cast awaye his owne childe, and suffer her to bringe vp that in the steede of it: such was the good fortune of the childe or els the hope that shee of him conceived. And so the destinye of the twoo children beinge chaunged, the kinges nephew was broughte vp for the shepherdes sonne, and the shepherdes sonne was cast awaye for the kinges nephew. The nurces name was afterwarde called Sparcon, for so do þe Persians terme a bytch in theyr language. The childe beinge broughte vp amonge the shepherdes, was named Cyrus. And in the meane tyme beinge by lot chosen kinge amonge chyldren as they were playinge: whē in sport he whippede such as were stubborne agaynst him: the parentes of the chyldren made

Herodatus
sayth yt was
borne dead.

Cyrus is cho-
sen kynge a-
monge chyldren

com

complaint thereof to the kynge, takinge skorne that noble mens chyldren shoulde be beaten lyke slaues of the Kynges bondman. The kinge sendinge for the childe, demaunded of him why he did so. who answered (withont any chaunginge of countenance at all for the matter) that hee had done as it became a kynge to do. The kinge maruaulinge of his audacitye, came in remembraunce of his dreame, and the interpretation thereof, and so when both the countenance of the childe, and also his liknesse vnto him selfe, the time of his castinge awaye, and the examination of the sheperd agreed in one, he acknowledged hym to bee his nephew. And for bycause he thoughte hym selfe dyspacched of his dreame (in as much as the childe had played the kinge amonge the shepherdes) he relented his displeasure, as to hymwarde. But towarde his frende Harpagus he became so deadly an enemy (that in reuengement for sauinge of his nephew) he killed his sonne, and set him before hym to eat. Harpagus dissembling his griefe for the tyme, dyd put vp the kinges displeasure, til oportunitie myght serue to reuenge. At the lengthe when Cyrus came to mans estate, Harpagus beinge warned with sorowe for the losse of his sonne wrote vnto hym howe his graunde father had sent him out of the waye into Persia, howe his graunde father had commaunded him to be slayne, howe by his benefite he had bene preserved, howe for the same hee had gotten the Kynges displeasure, and howe he had lost his owne sonne: exhortinge hym to raise an armie, and to enter the reddy waye vnto the kingdome, promysinge that the Medes shoulde turne to his side.

And for asmuche as the letter could not be caried openlye for the kinges officers which kept all the passages, it was put into a Wares bellye, (the howels first taken out), and the Ware was deliuered to a trustie seruaunte to carie to Cyrus into Persia. Whereouer he tooke nettes with hym, to the intent the deceit myghte be hydden vnder colour of huntynge.

The audacity
of Cyrus.

Thoutrage-
ous cruelty of
Harpagus.

Displeasure
wisely dissem-
bled.

The letter of
Harpagus
vnto Cyrus

Cunning con-
ceyuaunce of a
letter.

When

When Cyrus had receiued the letter, he was commaunded in a dreame to take the same waye as he was counsayled in the epistle. Neuerthe lesse, hee was furthermoze warned by whomsoever he met first the next day, him he shoulde make his companiō in all his enterprises. Wherefoze as he went into the cuntry befoze the dawninge of the daye, he met with a seruante called Sibaris, that had escaped out of prison from a certaine man of Media, And enquiringe what countreyman he was, when he vnderstoode that he was borne in Persia, he pulled of his fetters, toke him to be his companion, and returned to the Citte Persopolis. There callinge the people together he commaunded them euerye man to take his Axe, & to cut downe the wood that grew by the hygh way side which thinge belonge lustely done: the next day he made a feast and hade them all to it. When he sawe them the merrier for their good there, he demaunded of them (yf they were put to the choyce,) whether they had rather choole to liue in labour and toyle as they had doone the daye befoze, or in mirth and feastinge as they dyd that present. After that, They had cryed all with one voyce, in mirth and feastinge as we do to day. Then (quod he) as long as ye be in subiection to the Medes, so long shall yee leade all your liues in labour and toyle like vnto Yesterday, but if you will follow me, yee shall liue in pleasure as you haue doone thys daye. And so with consent of them all hee made warre againste the Medes. Astyages forgettinge the great displeasure done to Harpagus, made him lieutenant generall of the warres. Who immediatly vpon the receipt of his armye, yelued the same vnto Cyrus, and so throughe disloyaltye, requied the Kinges crueltye. When word therof came vnto Astyages, he raysed another power with all speede possible, & went him selfe into Persia: where fierly renuinge the battell, as his men were fightinge, he set a company at their backes, and commaunded them to beat them perforce vpon their enemies, that made anye countenaunce to flye away, causing it to be playnely tolde them

The pollicie
of Cyrus to
cause the
Persians to
rebell.

Cyrus rebel-
lyth.

The crueltye
seuenged.

Accessary
gueth hart.

them, that if they wanne not the victorie, they shoulde finde as good men behinde their backes as befoze their faces. And euerfoze aduise themselves wel, whether they woulde break thorough & one by flying cowardly, or throughe & other by fighting manfully. His souldiours perceiuing there was none other remedy, toke courage to them and stood to it stoutly. By meanes wherof, when the host of the Persians, being ouercharged began somewhat to geue backe, and by litle and litle to lose ground: their mothers & wiues came running out against them, desiring them to returne into the battell: and perceiuinge that they made no haste, they lifted by their clothes, and shewing the priue partes of their bodies, asked them if they would run into their mothers and wiues wombes for succour. The Persians being staid with this reproch, returned into battell, and making ptease vpon their enemies, compelled them to flie, from whom but euen now they fled themselves. In this battell Astyages was taken prisoner. From whom Cyrus toke nothing saue the kingdome, behauing him selfe in this conflict rather like a nephew, then like a conquerour. And hee made him ruler ouer the Hircanians, which are a very great nation. For he would not returne vnto the Medes. This ended the Empire of the Medes, which endured 350. yeres. In the beginning of his raigne Cyrus made Sybaris (who according to his vision in the night, he had deliuered out of prison, and taken as companion in all his enterprises and affaires) lieutenant ouer the Persians, & gaue him his sister in marriage. But the cities which were tributary befoze to the Medes (forasmuch as the empire was chaunged, supposing their estate to be changed also) fel from Cyrus: which thing was vnto him a cause & beginninge of much warre & many battels. At the length, hauing brought many of them to their accustomed obedience, when he made warre against the Babiloniās, Cræsus king of Lydia (whose wealth & riches were at those daies very notable) came to succour the Babiloniās. Where being banquished, & nowe

Force and vvif
dome geue pla-
ce to fortune.

The modesty
of Cyrus.

The myre of
the Persians.

Babilon rebel-
lyth and is sub-
dued.

W. j.

carefull

Cyrus.

Cyrus is taken
prisoner.

The Princeli-
nes of Cyrus.

The Lydians
rebel and are
subdued.

The rervarde
of rebellion.

The foolish
loue and de-
meanour of
Candaules.

careful what should becom of hymself, he retired into his
owne kingdom. Cyrus also after his victoꝝ hauing set al
things at a stay in Babylō, passed frō thēce w his host in-
to Lydia. where he overcame y power of Cræsus with no
ado to speake of, being already dismayed with the discom-
fiture taken befoꝛe at Babylon. Cræsus hymself was takē
prisoner, but the lesser danger the battel was, of the gent-
lier was the victoꝝ vled. For besides that, he pardoned
Cræsus of his life, he gaue him also y most part of his In-
heritance, and the citie of Warce. In the which although
he liued not a kinge in deede, yet mighte hāe liue as lyke a
king as might be deuised. This mercy was no lesse profit-
table to the conquerour, than to the conquered. For after
it was once known that war was made against Cræsus,
thꝛoughout all Greece, souldiours were mustred and sent
foꝛth to his aide, as it had bene to quenche some common
fire. So wel was Cræsus beloued of all the Citie, y the
Greekes woulde haue made sharpe warre vpon. Cyrus if
he had dele with Cræsus any thing cruelly. Afterward in
procelle of time, while Cyrus was occupied in other wars
the Lydians rebelled. From whom being vanquished a
gaîne, he toke away their hoxles, armour, and Weapon,
commaunding them to vse victalling, minstrelsie, gaming
and al kinde of ribaudy and wantonnesse. And so by this,
meanes the people which sometime were of great pꝛow-
esse, puissant, and redoubted foꝛ their chualrie, haue now
thꝛough effeminate tendernes and riote, lost al their pu-
issance and strength: and they which befoꝛe Cyrus time
could by no warres be vanquished, now falling to al kind
of riote & excesse, are overcome with slouth and idleness.
There were befoꝛe Cræsus many kinges in Lydia, foꝛ di-
uers aduētures woꝛthy to be spoken of, but none had like
fortune as had Candaules: who hauing a wife whome foꝛ
her excellent beauty he loued out of all measure, and be-
ing not cōtent with the secret knowledge of his pleasures
but he must prayse hir to euery body & bewray y priuities
of

of wedlocke, as though silence had bene an hinderance to
hir beautie: at the last, to make good his woꝛdes, shewē
hir naked to his companion Gyges: By which deede, enet-
ring his frende to commite aduoutrie with his wife, hee
made him his enemy, and also as it were, deliuering ouer
his wiues loue vnto another man, he estranged her from
hymself. For ere it was long after, Gyges slue Candaules
and married his mistresse foꝛ his labour. The wife beyng
endowed with the bloud of her huspande, pelded both her
selfe and her husbundes kingdome into the handes of the
aduouterer. Whē Cyrus had cōquered Alie, and pacified
the whole East, he made war against the Scythians. The
same tyme rayned ouer the Scythians Quene Thomiris:
who not abashed lyke a woman at y comming of her ene-
my whereas she myght haue stopped the passage ouer
the riuer Araxes, suffered the to come ouer, thinking that
she shoulde fight moꝛe to her own aduantage within her
own cōuntry, and that her enemyes shoulde the hardier
escape if they were put to the woꝛse, because of the riuer
betweene them and home. Cyrus therfoꝛe hauing ferried
ouer his army, whē he had gone a litle way into Scythia
pitched his campe, & the next day pꝛetēdyng a fear, as though
he woulde haue retꝛyed back again, forsoke his campe, the
which he left sufficientlꝛ furnished with plenty of wyne,
and all kynd of delicate byandes mete foꝛ feasting. When
newes hereof came to the Quene, she sent her yong sonne
with the chꝛyde part of her host to followe after Cyrus.
When they came to Cyrus campe, the younge man being
ignozant in feats of war, as though he had come to ban-
quet and not to battayle) left the pursuit of his enemyes,
and suffered his barbarous countreyemen which were not
accustomed to wine, to ouercharge themselves. And so the
Scythians were overcome, first with wine, & after ward w
weapon. For Cyrus hauing knowledge therof returned by
nyght and falling vpon them vnwares, put them al to the
woꝛse, and the Quenes sonne among them.

Gyges sleeth
Candaules,
and makeh
hymselfe kinge.

A manly woo-
man.

His name was
Spargapises.

Ignorance
pernicious in
a captayne.

The invincible
courage of
Thomyris.

The great
slaughter of
the Persians.

The death
of Cyrus.

Cambyfes
succeedeth.

Power will
haue no piete.

Tyrantes can
not continue
long.

Thomyris hauing lost so great an army, & which was worse (her onely sonne, powred not out the griefe of her losse into teares, but comforted herselfe with purpose of reuenge, and begiled her enemies in their chiefe ruffe for their new gotten victorie. For, lepyning a mistruste for the slaughter in the last ouerthrow, she gaue backe so long tyl she had brought Cyrus into a strait, and there enuironyng him with a bushment of souldiours, laid befoze in the most certaynes for the same purpose, she slew 200000. Persians and the king himselfe. In which conflict, this thing is worthy to be noted, that there was not so much as one man left, to beare home tidings of so great a slaughter. The Queene commaunded the head of Cyrus to be cut of, and throwen into a boll of mans bloud, casting him in the teeth in thys wise with his crueltie: Now fill thy self with bloud, which thou hast euer thirsted. Cyrus reigned thirty yeares, being meruallous notable, not only in the beginning of his raigne, but also during all the continuance of the same, After him succeeded Cambyfes, who to his fathers empire by conquest annexed Egypt. But being offended with the superstition of the Egyptians, he commaunded the Temples of Apis and other their Gods to be beaten downe. Furthermoze also, he sent an army to destroy the renowned Temple of Ammon, whych army beinge ouerwhelmed with tempestes and heapes of sand, was utterly destroyed. After this, he dreamed that his brother Smerdis should raigne after hym, whiche dreame made him so afrayed, that he sicked not after sacriledge to committe most vnnaturall murder in killynge his owne brother. For it was a harde matter, that he should spare his owne kinne, who in spight of religion did violently set bypon the Goddes. As an instrument to bying this cruell acte to passe, he chose a frende of his, one of the Magies, called Comaris. In the meane while he himselfe beinge sore wounded in the thigh with his sworde falling out of the sheath by it selfe, died, and so suffered worthy punishment, whether

whether it were for the murder commaunded, or for the sacrilege already committed. When tidings hereof came to the wyle man, or euer it was openly knowen that the kinge was deade, he dispatched his purpose, and hauinge slayne Smerdis who by right should haue bene kynge, set up his owne brother, Oropastes in his steede. For he was very like the kinges brother in making & fauour. By reason whereof (no man misseeming any such treason to be wrought) in steede of Smerdis, Oropastes was made king. The which thinge was the easier to be kept from knowledge, because that amonge the Persians (for the moze honour & reuerence of his person) the king sheweth not hym selfe barefaced. The wise men therfore (thereby to win the fauour of the commonalty) released vnto them thre yeares tribute, and exempted the from the warres duringe al the sayd terme, to the intent they might establishe, by bribery, and flattery the Kingdome that they had gotten by treason & pollicy. Which thing was first suspected by one Orphanes a noble man, right sage in coniecturing. Therfore he sent to his daughter (which was one of the kinges Concubines) to know if he was kinge, were the sonne of kinge Cyrus or no? She sent him word that shee hir selfe could not tel, nor yet learne the truth at any of her fellowes, because euery one of theym were kepte alone by themyselfes. Then he sent her worde agayne, that shee shoulde teele about his head when he were a sleepe. For Cambyfes had cut of both the wise mans eares befoze. Her father beinge certified that the Kinge had no eares, bewrayed the matter to the noble Men of Realme, and compelled them to binde themselves with an Othe, that they should confounde the wrongfull kynge. There were but seuen ppyper to thys conspiracy, who incontinently (leaue if they had tyme and space to bethinke them, the matter might be by some of the company bewrayed) with euery man his weapon vnder his goun, went strait to the Palace: where hauinge slayne such as withstode them, they

Wij

came

The great
treason of
Comaris.

Oropastes
raygneth
steade of
Smerdis.

The treason is
mistrusted.

The treason
commeth to
light.

Counsell can
not bee kept
long in a mul-
titude.

Necessity ge-
neth courage.

The zeale of
Gobryas to
his Countrey.

The end of y-
fessed autho-
rity.

A singular ex-
ample of mo-
desty in great
estates.

The policy of
Horsekeeper

came to the place where the wise men were, who wanted no courage to defende themselves. For they drew their weapons and slue two of the conspiracie. Neuerthelesse, the other beinge mo in number, caught holde of them. Of which, Gobryas hauinge one of the wise men fast in his armes, & percepuinge þ his Fellowes staid their handes, for doubt of striking him through in stead of the wiseman, because þ matter was done in a darke place) bad the thrust their swordes into the wise man, though it were through his body. Notwithstandinge fortune so ruled the matter, that the wise man was slayne, and he escaped unhurt. The wise men beinge thus slayne, þ noble men attayned great honour for recoveringe the kingdome, but much more honour did they attayne, in that when they were in contro- uersie for the kingdome, they could agree amonge them- selves. For both in promesse & estate they were so equall, that it should haue bene a harde matter for the people to haue sayd which of them was worthiest. Therfore they in- uented a way among themselves, whereby to commit the determination of their matter to God and good Fortune. They agreed among theselues that at a tyme appoynted, euery one of them should come before the Palace on horse backe, by the breake of the day: & he whose horse nept first before the risinge of the sonne, should be king. For the Per- sians beleue, that there is no God but the Sonne, and that horses are hallowed unto him. There was among the co- spiratours, one Darius the sonne of Hissaspis. To whom takinge thought, how he might make himselfe kinge, his Horsekeeper sayd, that if there were nothing else to let his purpose, he should take no thought for the matter, for the day should be his. Whereupon, the night before the day appoynted, he brought his Masters horse into the same place, and there put him to a Mare, thynkinge that for de- sire of the Mare, the thynge would come to passe, as after warde it did in deede. The next morninge (euery one of them beinge come at the hower appoynted) Darius horse

(know.

(knowinge the place) of courage to the mare, forthwith nept alowde, and (the residue beinge slowe) spurrd al the company gaue his master a token of good lucke. The rest of the lordes were of such modesty, that as soone as they heard the token of good lucke, by and by they lept of their Horses and saluted Darius by the name of king. All the people also following the iudgement of the Princes, toke him for the king. And so the kingdome of the Persians, recovered by the promesse of seven of the nobleste men of all the realme, was in the twinklinge of an eye broughte into one mans hand agayne. It passeth credite that they should deale in this matter, with so great reuerence and lowlinesse consioringe that they spared not their liues to wrest it out of the wise menes handes. Although (to save the truth) besides manhoode, personage, fauoure and pro- messe, mete and worthy so great a kingdome, Darius was also neare of aliaunce unto the auncient kinges of Persia. Therefore in the beginning of his raygne (to the extent to establishe his kingdome by matching with the bloud roy- ally) he toke in marriage the daughter of king Cyrus, wher- by it myght seme that the kingdome was not so much be- stowed vpon a straunger, as rather reduced into the fami- ly of Cyrus. Within a while after when the Assyriās had rebelled and taken the citty of Babilon and that the Cirtie was harde to be recovered by force: as the kyng was in a great rage, one Zopyrus, one of them that helped to slea the wise menne, caused himselfe to be piteously toyne all his body ouer with whipping at home at his owne house and his nose, lippes and eares to bee cutte of, and in the same plyght sodaynly came into the kinges presence who thought nothing lesse then anye suche matter. Darius be- yng amased, and demaundyng who hadde so shamefullye mangled hym, and vpon what occasion, he informed him secretly for what purpose he hadde done it, and af- ter he had sufficiently and thoroughly establisshed his pur- pose, and told the kyng how he would deale, he fledde like

Darius is ma-
de king by the
neying of a
horse.

Darius taketh
to veyse the
daughter of
Cyrus named
Arota.

The loue of
zopyrus to his
king and to
his countrey

B.4.

a ren

a ronnagate unto Babilon. There bee thewed the people
his mangled bodye, making exclamation of the kinges cru-
eltye, though whom he lost his part of the kingdome, not
by prowesse and manhoode, but by lucke: not by the iudge-
ment of men, but by the nying of a horse: her counsayled
them to take warning by their frendes, how to beware of
their foes, exhorting the not to trust moze to their walles,
then to their weapons, & that they would geue him leane
to take theyr part in this war, now whyle his anger was
freshe in his remembraunce. The nobility and prowesse
of the man was wel knowne to them all, and as for his
credite they doubted not, as whereof they thought his
woundes and wrongfull maymes to be as it were a suffi-
cut warrantize. Therfore by common consente they made
him their captayne, and he with a smal company did twise
or thryse get the better had of the Persians who gaue him
way for the nones. At the last being put in truste with the
whole army, he betrayed it to the king, and brought
the city agayne vnder his obediēce. After this
the king made warre agaynst the Scythians,
whereof wee will entreate in
the nexte Booke
followinge.

zopyrus deli-
uereth Babilō
to the kinge.

The second Booke of

Iuliane.

The contentes of the second booke.

SHe Scythians and Egyptians contēd for thātiquity of their
countrys. The descripcion of Scythia vwith the maners and
customes of the people, their fortunate enterprises, and the
Empires founded by them. Plynos and Scolopithus are dri-
uen out of Scythia vwith a greate number of youth and are
slayne by a pollicy, their viues reuenge their deathes and set vp the
pyre of Amazony. The maners and customes of the Amazones the
succession of the Queenes of Amazony. Hercules exchangeith Me-
nalippe for the Queenes armor. Penthesilea rayseth the Troyans a-
gaynst the Grekes. Thalesiris hauing obtayned the cōpany of great
Alexander, returneth and dyeth, vwith vvhom the name of Amazons
decayeth. The Scythians are recyued vwith vvar by their bondmen.
Darius vvarreth vpon them, and flyeth shamefully, he cōquereth Asia
and Macedony, and bendeth himselfe a gaynst the Atheniens. Thori-
xinal of Thatheniens, their inuentions, the succession of their kinges
the chaunge of their gouernement, the lawes of Solon and his pol-
licy. Pyssistratus vsurpeth. Hippias is deposed and fleeth to Darius.
The notable battell of Marathon, vvherein Hippias is slayne. Darius
dyeth, and Xerxes succedeth, vvhō renevveth the vvarres agaynst
Grece and is ouercome the notable provesse of Leonidas. Xerxes re-
tireth fearefully and dishonovrably into his kingdome. Mardonius
is vanquished in Boetia. Themistocles hath the prerogatiue for his
provvess: Athens is builded agayne, the Lacedemonians make vvar
vpon the Persians. Pausanias is condemned of treason. Xerxes procla-
ymeth open vvar agaynst Grece, he is ouercome by Cymō Duke of
Athenes, both on sea and land, and returneth into his kingdome.



N MAKING REPORT OF
the dooinges of the Scythians,
which wer both great & hono-
rable: their beginninge must bee
setched frō the very original. For
their first beginning was no lesse
famous then mas theyr Empire
neither were they moze renou-
med for the chualty of their mē,
than for the prowesse of their women. For whereas their
men

The second Booke.

men were the founders of the Parthians, and Bactrians, they women also didde sette up theyr Queendome of the Amazons, so that if a man compare the doinges of the men and the doinges of the women together, he shal finde it a doubtful matter to iudge, whether here were more renowned among them. The Scythian Nation hath ever bene counted of greatest antiquity. Howbeit betwene them and the Egyptians hath bene strepse a longe time concerning the antiquity of their nations. The Egyptians alledging that at the first beginning, whereas some countreies did so burne through excellue heat of the Sunne, and other some so fryle through vnmmerciful colde, that not ouely they were not able to engender menne, but also not able to receyue and kepe men that came out of other countreies, before that garments were inuented to defende the body from heat and colde, or that the faultes of places were eased by remedies founde by cunninge and experyence: Egypt was alwayes so temperate, that neyther the cold in the winter, nor the heat of the Sunne in the Summer greued the inhabitants thereof, and the soyle of the ground so fructefull that there is no lande that bringeth forth mo thinges mete for mannes vse: And that therfore of right, men ought to be bred fyrst there, wherewith most ease they myght be best broughte up, on thather side, the Scythians denyed þ the temperatnesse of þ ayre was ane pprooe of antiquity, for as much as nature accordyng as she had distributed to ech countrey encrease ment of heate or colde, did also forthwith engender liuinge creatures able to endure in those places, and thereunto sundrye sortes of trees and frutes in theyr kindes accordyng as the estate of the countrey requyred. And loke how much the weather was harder in Scythia, then in Egypt, so much were the Scythians harder of Body & of nature then the Egyptians. But if the world which is now deuided in partes, were sometyme all one, whether water at the first beginning ouerwhelmed al the perth, or els fyrst possessed al thinges.

wherof

Of Iustine.

whereof also þ world it selfe was made: the Scythians in both of them must needs bee the auncienter. For if fyrst possessed all, which by litle and litle being quenched, gaue place to the Earth, no parte was sooner separated from the fyre by the colnesse of the winter, then þ North: in so much that at this present day, there is no parte that feeleth more excellue cold: where as Egypt & al the East, were a longer season ere they coulde come to any temperatnesse, which well appeareth by them euen yet, in that the vnmensurable heate of the sunne scorseth them at this day. But if all the world were sometime drowned in the deepe, it must needs followe, that the higher that any place is, the sooner it must be discovered: forasmuch as the waters withdraw them selues from thence into the lower groundes, and there remayne a great while. And the sooner that any place was dyled up, the sooner it began to engender liuinge creatures. Now is Scythia so much higher than al other Countreys, that al the Ryuers that springe there, rine downe into the Sea Mæotis, & from thence into the Sea of Pontus, & so into the Egyptian Sea. But as for Egypt it selfe, (which being by the carefulnes & charges of so many Kinges, so many hundred yeares, with so huge and stronge dammes and bankes agasust the violence of the waters running therein, strengthened and fortified, cut, and deuided with so many ditches and trenches, to the intent, that the waters being in the one receyued, might by the other be kept of, from goinge any further, could not rather be inhabited, except the riuer Nilus were shut out) cannot seeme to be auncienter than al other Countreies, but rather (what for the great cosses that the Kinges haue bestowed thereupon, and what for the great heapes of mude that the Riuer Nilus leaueth behinde him) may seeme the last inhabited of al countreies. The Egyptians were vanquished by these argumentes, and the Scythians were euer counted most auncient. Scythia stretched into þ east, & is enclosed on th one side w Pontus, on th other side with

The situation of Scythia.

Copention concerning antiquity.

The temperatnesse of Egypt and the fruitfulness

The replicatio of the Scythians.

with the mountaynes Rhiphxi, on the Backe with Asia, and the riuer Tanais, and it is very longe and very wyde. The people of that Countrey haue no boundes betwene man and man. For they occupie no Tillage, neyther haue they any House or home to resort to, or any certayne dwellinge place.

As they feede & graze theyr cattell, wandering throught the desertes and wilde Forrestes, they carie theyr Wyues and chyldren with them in Wagons & Chariottes, couered with Wydes, to kepe out the winde & Weather, the which they vse in steade of houses.

They vse Iustice and Equity of a naturall disposition, and not for feare of any lawe. No offence is counted so heynous amonge them as stealinge. For consideringe they haue no houses, nor any place of saulsegarde, & that all theyr riches consisteth in Cattell, what shoulde they haue in saulsety, if it were lawfull for the to steale? Golde and Siluer they do as much despise, as other Nations do couet it.

They liue by Milke and Honey, they knowe not what to do with Woolle, nor how to make them selues Garmentes thereof. And although they be vexed with continual colde, yet haue they nothinge to clothe them selues wyth, but the skynnes of wilde Beastes and of Fische. This temperance causeth them to bee so bygghte in their liuinge, and is an occasion, that they couet not other mens goods. For where as riches be, there also is couetousnesse: would God that al other nations could vse the like Staydnesse and forbearinge of other mens goods. Certes then shoulde there not be so much warre and manslaughter of so longe continuance as there is in all landes. Neyther shoulde there dye more of the sword, than of naturall destinie. It is a wonderfull thinge, that they shoulde haue that thinge geuen them of nature, which the Greekes by the instructions of theyr wise men, and the preceptes of their Philosophers so long time together, could neuer attayne vnto, and that the fine

The customes
and manners
of the Scythi-
ans called No-
mades or Gra-
ziers.

The pouer
and force of
nature.

ciuile maners of the Greekes shoulde bee surmounted, in comparisou of the rude & barbarous Scythians. So much more profited in these the ignorance of vice, than in the other the knowledge of vertue. Chylyse the Scythians gate the empyrie of Asya, they themselves remayninge all the while, either vtouched, or at the least vnsuadored of any foreyne power. They put Darius kynge of Persia to shamefull flighte, and dyae him out of theyr countrey. They slew Cyrus and all his army. After the same sorte they vtterly destroyed Zopyrus one of great Alexanders, chiefe captaynes with al his hoste: As for the warres of the Romaines, they heard of them, but they neuer felt them. Within a whyle they founded the empyres of the Parthians and Bactrians. They are a people geuen to endure labour and stout men of warre, of strength of body wonderfull, desiring not to win the thing they thought they could not keepe, and in their conquestes seekinge nothinge but honour: The first that euer offred warre vnto the Scythians, was Vexores King of AEgypt, who sent his Ambassadors befoze to enioyne them articles of obedience: But the Scythians beinge aduertised a good whyle befoze by theyr neighbours, of the kings comming: answered the Ambassadors in this wise: We maruell that the ruler of so welthy a people, will so foolishly moue warre againste beggars, which thing he shoulde rather haue looked for at his owne doores, consideringe that the ende of warre is doubtfull, and no rewarde of his victorie, but apparante losse if he were overcome. Therefore the Scythians will not wayte for his comming hither, seying there is in their enemye so muche worthe the fetching, but will with all theyr hartes go meete him. As they had said, so did they in doo. When the kynge vnderstoode that they made no wardes him with such speeche, he flew for feare, and leauinge behinde him, his hoste and all his furniture for the warres, retired fearfullye into his kindome. The Scythians coulde not pursue him into AEgypt because of the

Asia tributary
to the Scythi-
ans.

Their fortūat
successe.

The nature of
Scythians.

Who first ma-
de war vpon
the Scythians.

fences.

The Scythians
are reuoked
out of Asia by
their Wyues.

In this place he
greatly erreth.

Example of
manly nelle in
Women.

The Queene-
dome of the
Amazones.

fenne 3. As they returned from thence, they conquered al-
Asia, & put them to a litle tribute, rather in token of their
conquest, than in reward of theyr victorie. Hyfene peres
they caried about settinge a stape in the Countrey. From
whence they were called home by ymportunate requests
of theyr Wyues, who sent them worde, that if they byed
them not home the sooner, they would seeke to theyr neigh-
bours to haue them by them and not suffer the Nation
of the Scythians, to decay through theyr default.

Thus was Asia tributary to them by the space of 1500.
peres. Ninus Kinge of the Thassyrans made an end of pay-
inge this Tribute. But in the meane time amonge the Scy-
thyans, two yonge Gentlemen of the bloud Royal, named
Plinos and Scolopythus, beinge through debate among the
Noble men, driuen out of theyr Countrey, led with them
a greates numbre of Youth, and settled theymselfes in the
borders of Cappadocia, about the Riuer Thermoodon,
and kept all the fields about the city Themiscyra. There,
many peres together, beinge wont to robbe their neygh-
bours, at the laste, the people priuily conspired together
and set vpon theym vnwares, and by a trayne slew them
euerychone. The wiues of these men, perceyuinge that
besides their banishment, they were also made Widowes,
armed theymselfes, and defended theyr Borders: first by
standing in their owne defence, and after ward by making
warre vnto others. Moreouer they had no mind to marry
any more with their neighbours, callinge it a Bondage &
not Marriage. A singular example for all ages to looke vpon.
They increased theyr commonwealthe without men,
and defended them selues even in despight of men. And
least some of theym might thinke theymselfes, in better
case than the rest, they killed theyr Husbannes that were
left aloue at home. Furthermore, in reuengement of the
deathes of theyr Husbannes, they destroyed theyr Neigh-
bours also. Then hauing by warre gotten peace, they sent
for theyr Neighbours and companied with them. If any
Male

male childzen were bozne, they were killed. The women
childzen in like wise were broughte vp, not in ydolnesse,
nor to spinning & carding, but in feates of armes, & poyng
of horses, and hunting as the custome is to bying by men.
And bycause their shooting & throwing of darts should
not be hindered, their right pappes were scared of wyle
they were child, wherupon they were named Amazons.
They had two queenes, the one called Marthesia, the other
Lampedo, who deuising their holle in two partes, & gro-
wing famous for their wealth & riches, made warre by
turnes, y one strictly defending the countrey at home,
while the other made warre abroad, as their turnes came
about. And to thinke to be the more renowned in al theyr
enterprises and affaires, they proclaimed them selues the
doughters of Mars. Wherfore hauing conquered the grea-
ter parte of Europe, they subdewed also manye cities of
Asia. After hauing builded Ephesus & diuers other cities
they set part of their army hom w a great bootie. The rest
which caried styll to defend theppre of Asia, were by a so-
daine assault of the barbarous people al slain, & their queene
Marthesia with the. In whose roome succeeded in theppre
her daughter Orithya. Who besides her singular activity
in feates of war, was as a myrrour to al womē for prefer-
ring of her maydenhead while she liued. Though she pro-
uuelle of hir, y honour & renowne of the Amazones was so
greatly aduanced, the King for whose pleasure Hercules
achioed the dangerous aduētures, commised him as a
thing impossible, to fetch him harmour of the Queene of A-
mazonie. Hercules therefore accompanied with many of the
yong lordes & noble mē of Greece, arriuing withix gal-
leys assailed the vnwares. At the same time the queendome
of the Amazones was gouerned by two of the four sisters
Antiope & Orithya, of whom Orithya was making war
in forreyn collieries. By reason wherof, there was but a
slender company about the queene Antiope, when Hercules,
arriued at the shore of Amazonie, bycause there was no
suche thing mistrusted, nor any enemy thought vpon.

The custome
of the Ama-
zons.

The Queenes
of Amazones.

The buildinge
of Ephesus.

A myrrour of
Virginitie and
prouelle.

Every where sen-
deth Hercules
for the Queene
of Amazones
Armour.

The second Booke.

Wherefore it came to passe, that those few beinge raysted with the sobayne alarme, armed themselves and gaue thepp enemies an easie victorpe. For many were slayne & many taken, among whom were two of Antiopes sisters, Menalippe taken by Hercules, and Hyppolite by Theseus. Theseus married his prisoner, of whō he begat Hyppolitus. But Hercules after the victorpe, restored Menalippe to her sister, and for her raunesome tooke the Queenes armoure, & so hauing accomplished his charge, retourned to the king.

Hercules exchanged Menalippe for the Queenes armour.

Orithia hauing knowledge that warre was made againste hir sisters, and that the Prince of Athens had led away one of them perforce, exhorted her company to bee reuenged, affirming, that all thepp conquestes in Pontus and Asia were to no purpose, if they shoulde take suche a foyle at the handes of the Greekes, as to suffer, not so much the warres, as the rauishments of The Atheniens.

Orithia sent for ayde to the king of Scythia

And thereupon she sent for succour vnto Sagilius kynge of Scythia, alledging that she and hir people were the offspring of the Scythians, & declared the slaughter of their husbands, their wante of armoure and artillerie, and the cause of the warres, saying: how throughe thepp prowesse they had brought to passe, that the Scythians might seeme to haue as valiaunt women as men. The king beinge moued with the honoure of his house, sente to her ayde, hys sonne Penaxagoas with a great number of boxeniers.

She is forsaken of her succour, and overcome of the Athenians

But before the batell, beinge (by meanes of dissention so-dainly fallen betwene them, forsaken of their succours) the Atheniens put them to the worse. Nevertheless the campe of the Scythians was a refuge vnto them, by whose helpe they returned into thepp countrey batouched of other nations. After Orithia, Penthesilea, obtained the Souerainetie, who lefte behind hir a noble remembraunce of her worthie actes, in that famous assemble of valiaunte men in the defence of the Troyanes against the Greekes.

Penthesilea, was,

Finallpe Penthesilea beinge slayne, and her army wasted those

Of Iustine. Fol 18

those few that remained (with much a doe scarlepe defending themselves againste their neighbours,) continued vnto the time of great Alexander. Whose Queene Minotha, other wise called Thalestris (after she had obtained the company of Alexander by the space of xiiii. dayes, to haue pssae by him) returned into hir Realine, and within a while after deceased, with whom the name of the Amazones vterly decayed. The Scythians in their third biage into Asia, when they had bin a leuen yeares from thepp wiues and childezen, were welcomes home with warre by thepp owne seruauntes. For thepp wiues beinge werped with longe tarieng for thepp husbands (supposinge that they were not so long decayed with warres, but rather all slaine) married themselves to their slaues whom thepp maysters had lefte at home to looke to thepp cattel, who hearing of thepp maysters returne with conqueste, mette them in armoure, to kepe them out of their countrey, as if they had bin straungers. The Scythians perceuyng that by battell they lost as muche as they wonne, aduised the selues to vse an other kind of fight, and remembryng that they had not to do with their enemies, but with their slaues (who ought to be overcome not by the law of armes, but by the law of bondage, they thought it most mete to bring whippes into the fielde and not weapons, and euery man to lay away his sword, and to furnish himselfe with rods and whips, and such other kinde of stiffe, whereof slaues and bondmen are wonte to be afrayd. This counsell was well allowed, and therfore euery man being furnished as was before appointed, when they approached to their enemies, sodenly they shooke thepp whippes at them, where with they so amazed the, that whom they could not overcome by battell they ouercame with feare of beatinge, and made them run away, not like enemies overcome by battell, but like runnagate slaues. As many of them as were taken, were hanged by. The women also that knew themselves guilty of the matter, partly by weapon, partly by ba

The decay of Thamazons. He returneth to he staye of the Scythians.

The policye of the Scythians against their bondage.

Here ended
the first
booke

Here be-
ginne the
second booke
of Iustine

Here be-
ginne the
third booke
of Iustine

A digression
to the lives of
the Atheniens.

The noble-
nes and anti-
quity of
Athens.

Of what
things the
Atheniens
were the
first inven-
tors.

ing, wilfully dispatched them selves. After this the Sci-
thians lived in peace until the time of Lathine their king,
upon whom Darius king of Persie made warre (as is be-
fore mentioned) because he would not geue him his daugh-
ter in marriage: and with seven hundred thousand men in
armour, entring into Scythia, when he saw his enemies,
would not come and geue him batteill, fearing that if the
bridge over the river of Danow should chance to be bro-
ken, he should be enclosed, from returning home agayne,
fearfully retired over the water with y^e lode of four shooe
and r^e men. The which neuerthelisse was counted as
no losse, for the exceeding greate number of men, that he had
in his host. Afterward he conquered Asia and Macedonie,
& vanquished the Ionians vpon the sea. Finally under-
standing that the Atheniens had ayded the Ionians against
him, he turned the whole hunt of the warre vpon them.
Now soasmuche as wee be come to the warres of the A-
theniens, which were compassed, not only beyond expecta-
tion of atchauning, but also beyond credit when they were
atchauned: and soasmuche as the deedes of the Atheniens,
were greater in effect, than in hope wished: their exgy-
nall is to bee reported in few wordes, because they encrea-
sed not from a base beginning, to theyr lygh state, as all
other nations haue done. For they alone make their vaunt,
as well of theyr verpe first exgyrnall as of theyr increa-
sement. For it was not slaungers, nor a sorte of raskalls,
gathered here and there together, that sounded that cry:
but they were bred in the same soyle where they inhabyte,
and the place of theyr dwellinge, is the place of theyr bee-
ginning. They first taught the making of cloth, of Oyle,
and of wine. And whereas men in tyrry past were wonte
to live by eating Acorns, they taught to plowe the
grounde and to sowe the seede. And certainly learninge, elo-
quens and all ciuill pollyce, and order of gouernance,
maye without helpe take Athens for theyr Temple. Before
the time of Deucalion, they had a king called Cecrops,
who

who according to the report of all the auncient fables, had
two faces, because he first ioyned man and woman toge-
ther in marriage. After him succeeded Crandus, whose
daughter Acthis gave the name vnto the countrey. Next
him reigned Amphitruon who first consecrated the City
to Minerva, and called it by the name of Athens. In this
time a flud of water, owerflowed the greater part of Grece,
vnely such escaped, as could recouer the tops of the most
taines, or els suche as could gette shippes and sayle vnto
Deucalion King of Thessalie, who by reason therof is re-
ported to haue rejayged mankind. Afterward by order of
succession, the kingdome descended to Erichtheus, vnder
whome the towyn of coyne was founde out at Eleusis by
Triptolemus. In reward of which dede, the night sacrifici-
es were instituted in the honour of Ceres. Aegeus also
the father of Theseus reigned in Athens, from whō Me-
dea being disuoyed because her sonne in law Theseus was
mangrowne, departed to Colchos with hir sonne Medus,
whō she had by Aegeus. After Aegeus, Theseus enioied
the kingdome, and next to him his sonne Demophoon,
who ayded the Greekes against the Trojans. Ther was
betwene the Atheniens and the Doriens an old grudge of
displeasure, which the Doriens entending to reuenge by
battayle, asked counsell of the Oracles. Answer was
made that they should haue the vpper hā, so they killed
not the king of Athens. When they came into the fielde,
great charge was geuen in any wise to spare the king. At
the same time the king of Athens was Codrus, who ha-
uing vnderstanding both of the answer of Apollo, & of the
charge that was geuen among his enemies, laid a stoe his
pryncely apparel, & in a ragged cote with a bundle of vine
shedes in his necke, entered into his enemies campe.
There in a throng that stode about him, he was slain by a
souldier whom he had wounded with a boke for the nonce.
The Doriens when they knew it was the king that was
slayne, departed without any stroke strikinge. And so the
C.ij. Atheniens

The first ordæ-
ner of maria-
ge among the
Heathen.

The fludde of
Deucalion.

Sowing of
corne man-
ted.

The succe-
sion of the
kings of
Athens.

An example
of great loue
toward ones
native coun-
treys.

Atheniens though the piewisse of their captain yelding him selfe to death for the sauegard of his countrey) were deliuered from warre. After Codrus was neuer kyng moze in Athens, which thinge was attributed to his high renowne. The gouernance of the common wealth was appointed to yearely magistrats. But the city at that time had no lawes, because that hitherto the commaundement of their kings was accepted as lawe. Therefore there was chosen one Solon, a man of maruailous vprightnesse, who shoulde as it were make the cite new by his lawes. This man bare him selfe so even betwene the people, & the Senate (where as if he made any thing for y^e one estat, he was like to displease the other) that he gat like fauour at both their handes. Amongest the noble actes of this man (which were many) this especially is worthy to be remembered. The Atheniens and Megarenies hadde fought together for the chalenging of the Ile of Salamin, almoste to their bitter destruction. After many great slaughters, it began to be treason among the Atheniens, for any mā to make claime to the Island. Solon therfore bring sorrowful least by holding his peace, he shoulde not so greatly further the common wealth as he ought to do, or by putting forth his counsell bying him selfe in daunger: sodenly fayned him selfe mad vnder pretence whereof he might not only say, but also do thinges forbidden. He runnes abroad in a foles cote like a disard, & in a great company of men gathered about him (the moze to cloke his pretended purpose) in rimes & meters to him vnaccustomed, he began to moue the people to that thing which was vnlawful, wherein he so perswaded the all, that forthwith they proclaimed war againste the Megarenies, in which they vanquished the enemies, and brought the Island vnder theyr subiection. In the meane season the Megarenies being mindfull of the warres that the Atheniens made againste them, and being lothe to leaue without some gaine) tooke shippingg of purpose to surprize the noble women and matrones of Athens

The alteration
of gouernment
in Athens.

The commendation
& charges
of Solon.

The policy of
Solon.

Athens, as they were celebrating the sacrifices vnto Ceres, in the night time, at Eleusis. The which thing being known, Pisistratus, captain of the Atheniens, layde ambushes of men in places conuenient, commaundinge the women to celebrate theyr Ceremonies, with like noyse and hurly burly, as they were wonte to dooe, euen when theyr enemies came, to the entent they shoulde not suspect that their coming to bee heard of. When the Megarenies were come out of theyr shippes, he sodainly brake vpon them, and slewe them euerye one, and forthwith entering into their shippes, (the which he entermedled wth women, to make a show, as though they had ben the matrones taken prisoners) he wente straight to Megara. The townes men seeing their owne shippes, and the women in them (which they supposed to bee the wyfe that they soughte for) wente forth to the hauen to meete them: whome Pisistratus slew, and missed but litle of winnynge the City. So by theyr owne policy, the Megarenies gaue theyr enemies the victory. But Pisistratus as though he had won to his owne behoofe, and not to the behoufe of his Countrey, by treason vsurped the souereintie. For when he hadde of set purpose caused his body to be rent & mangled with scourging and whipping at home at his owne house, he came abroade, and there summoning the people together, shewed them his woundes, making exclamation of the cruelty of the Noble men, at whose handes he suffered himselfe to haue suffered this hurte. As he spake, he wepte, and with his spitefull wordes set the light people on fire, assuringe them that for the loue hee bare to them, he was hated of the Senate, whereupon he obtained a gard for the safetie of his personne, by whose meanes he vsurped the superiortie, and raigned xxiiij. yeares. After hys death Diocles one of his Sonnes as he rauished a maide, was slaine by the brother of the same maide. Hys other sonne named Hyppias possiding his fathers kyngdome, commaunded him that slew his brother to be apprehended.

Deceyt turned
vpon the
workers heads.

An example
of a crafty
and subtle
deceyner.

Diocles slaine
for rape.

A constant
an inuincible
stomacke.

who being cōpelled by cōmēts to appea che such as were
accessarie to y^e murder, named al y^e tyrantes frēdes, which
being put to death, & the Tyran demaūding if there wer
yet any mo a counsell o^r p^reu^y to y^e deede, there is no mo,
(quōd he) alie whome I would gladly see die, sauing the
Tyran himself: by which saying he declared him self both
to haue the vpper hand of the Tyran, and also to haue re-
uenged y^e chastity of his sister. The city thzough his stout-
nesse being put in remembzaūce of their liberty at length
deposed Hyppias from his kingdom, & banished him their
countrey. Who taking his iourney into Persie, offred him
self to Darius, making warre against the Atheniens, (as
is befoze specified as a captain against his own countrey.
Wherefoze the Atheniens hearing of Darius appzoch, sent
foz aid to y^e Lacedemonians, who at y^e time were in league
with them. But percepuing that they were busied about
matters of religion foz the space of 4. daies, they thought
not good to tary y^e cōming of their succozs, but with .x. M.
wel apointed of their owne citezens, & one thousand of the
Plateans which came to their aid, they went fozth to batel
against vi. C. M. of their enemies in y^e plains of Marathon.
Milciades was captaine of this war. & cōsilled not to ta-
ry foz their succozs. Who was of such cozage y^e he thought
ther was moze aduantage in sped by setting fozward, then
in lingering foz succoz. Therfoze they ran into the battel
with wonderful cherefulnesse. In so much that when the
ii. armies were a mile a sondre, they hasted fozward as fast
as they could run, to ioyne with their enemies befoze they
might discharg their arrowes. Neither wanted this bold-
nesse good successe. Foz the battell was foughte with suche
cozage, that a mā wold haue thought the one side to haue
bin men, and the other to haue bin beasts. The Persians be-
ing vanquished fled to their shippes, whereof many were
drowned and many taken. In that battel the p^rowesse and
manhoode of euey man was so great, that it were harde
to iudge who deserued most prayse. Now be it amongst al
other

He returneth
to the history
of Darius.

The noble en-
teiprise of
Milciades.

The courage
of the Athe-
niens, and the
cowardise of
the Persians.

Successe
goeth with
courage,

other, hzast fozth the gloz of a yongeman called Themis-
tocles, in whom euen then appeared such towardnesse, as
it was like he should foz his baliannnesse become the y^e
chief captaine hereafter. The gloz of one Cynægirus al-
so a Shoulidour of Athens, is highly commended, and set
fzorth with great prayses among wziters, who after innum-
erable slaughters in the battel (when he hadde pursued
his ennemies to the y^e shippes as they fled) caughte holde
of a shippe that was laden, with his right h^and, & would
not let it goe, till he had losse his hande. His right hande
beyng cutte of, he layd holde on it with his left hande,
which also beyng losse likewise, at the laste he held the
ship with his teeth.

Such was his courage, that being not wearied with so
manye slaughters, noz discouraged with the losse of both
his hands, at the last beyng vterly maimed, like a sauage
beast he fought with his teeth. The Persians losse in that
battell two hundred thousand men beside the y^e shippes.
Hyppias also the Tyrant of Athens, the autho^r and stirrer
of this warre was slayne there, thzough the iuste venge-
aunce of God, whypche punished him foz hys countreye
sake.

In the meane time Darius as he was about to renewe
the warre, died in the preparation thereof, leauyng many
sonnes behinde him, of which some were begotten befoze
he was king, and other some in the time of his reigne. A-
mong these, Artobazanes the eldest, claymed the Crown
by prerogatiue of his age, alledging that by order of law
by order of birth, by order of nature, and by custome of
all Countreyes, he ought to haue it. Xerxes replied and
sayde: that their controuersie was not concerning the or-
der of the y^e birth, but concerning the nobilitie and woz-
thinesse of the y^e birth.

Foz he granted that Artobazanes was indeede the
first y^e was bozne vnto Darius. howbeit Darius was the a
p^riuat person, but he him selfe was the firste, that was
C. liij. bozne

The prayse of
Themistocles

The commenda-
tion of Cy-
nægirus

This slaughter
of the Per-
sians.
The venge-
aunce of God
vpon Ty-
rants and
traytours.

The death of
Darius.

A brotherly
conention
for the king-
dome.

bozne to Darius being King.

Wherefore his brothers that were bozne duringe the time his father was a subiect, might lawfully claim such priuate inheritance as Darius then had, but not the kingdom, which appertained to him being the first, whom his father begat in the kingdome. Besides this Artobazanes was bozne a priuate person, not onely by the fathers side, but also by the mothers side, and also by his graundfathers side by the mother. Whereas he himselfe had a Quene to his mother: and he neuer saw his father but king, and hee hadde a king to his graundfather by the mother, namely king Cyrus, who was not inheritour, but firste founder of that greate Emppire. And therefore if they father had left the bozh like right to the crown, yet notwithstanding in consideration of his mother and his graundfather hee ought to be preferred. They putte this controuersy quietly and with a good will, to the discretion of theyr vncle Artaphernes as to a household iudge, who discussing the matter at home preferred Xerxes. And this contentiō betwene them was so brotherly, that neither he that had the upper hand haunted himselfe, nor he that was overcome was sorre for the matter. And even in the chiefest time of all their strife, they sent gifts and presentes one to another, and merely banketted together, without mistruste of treason or deceit, and the matter was ended without daies men, or without reprochful wordes betwixte them. So much more modestly could brothers in those daies deuide the greatest kingdomes then they can now deuide a small inheritance. Xerxes therefore by the space of five yeares together, made preparation for the warres, which his father had begun agaynst the Greeks. Which thing when Demeratus king of the Lacedemonians, (who at that time was a banished man, & liued in king Xerxes Court) vnderstode being more friendly to his Countrey after his banishment, than to the King for all his benefites, so the intent they should not be oppressed with sodayne warre, wrote

Xerxes succeedeth Darius in his kingdom.

The loue of Demeratus to his country,

wrote all thinges in tables of wode to the magistrats of Sparta, and couered the letters ouer with wax, least that either the writing without a couer might be way it selfe, or the new wax discloze his deuise. When they were finished, he toke them to a trusty seruaunt, to deliuer to the magistrats of the Spartanes. When they came to Lacedemon, the matter hange long in question, what it should meane, because they sawe no writinge, and agayne they thought the tables were not sent for nothing, and the closer the thing was, so much they iudged it to be of greater importance. Whiles the men with sondry opinions slack in the matter, the sister of king Leonidas, found out the meaninge of the writer. The wax beinge skraped of, it appeared what was wrought agaynst them.

By this time had Xerxes armed seven hundred thousand of his owne kingdom, and hired three hundred thousand straungers. So that it hath not without good cause bin reported, that his army dronke the riuers dry, and that at Grece was scarce able to receiue his host. It is also said that hee had tenne hundred thousande shippes. To this huge host wanted a meete Captaine. For if ye haue respect vnto the king, ye may praise his riches, but not his captain ship, for of riches there was so great aboundaunce in his realme, that when riuers were not able to find by the huge multitude drinke, yet had he treasure more then could be spent. But he would be sure to be always last that should fight, and the first that should runne away. In daunger he was feareful, out of daunger proud and full of boasting. Finally, before he should come to the triall of battell, he gloried so much in his own strengch that (as if he had bin Lord ouer nature) hee brought mountaynes to playne ground, & filled by the valleis, made bridges ouer certayn seas, and cut through the maine land to make nearer way for his shippes to passe. Whose comming into Grece as it was terrible, so his departure was as shameful and dishonourable. For when that Leonidas king of the Spartanes with

The huge host of Xerxes.

His riches and want of good gouernance.

with foure thousand men had taken the streighes of Thermopylae: Xerxes in disdain of this smal number, commaunded that none should assaile them, but they whose kinfolk were slaine at the battell of Marathon: who whyle they soughte to reuenge the deathes of their frendes, were the beginning of the slaughter.

In thir places succeeded still mo and mo to the great increase of their owne slaughter. Thye dayes the Persians, fought there to their great anguish displeasure & sorow. The fourth day when word came to Leonides that twenty thousand of his enemies had taken the toppe of the hill, than he began to exhort his pertakers to depart, and to reserve themselves till some better time might come, where in they might do seruice to thei countrey: for he and his Spartanes would stand to the aduerture of fortune, saying he set not so much by his life, as by his countrey, and that the residue ought to be spared for the defence of Greece: when the kings pleasure was published, the rest departed al sauing the Lacedemonians who taried still with him. In the beginning of this warre, when counsell was asked of Apollo at Delphos, answer was geuen by either by king of the Spartanes must be slaine, or els the city be destroyed. And therfore whē the king Leonides should go forth to the war, he had so encouraged his soldiers, that euery man went with a willing hart to die with their maister. He toke by straites for this purpose, by which his smal nōber he myght either win with moze honoꝝ, or by with lesse damage to his common welth: wherfore when he had dismissed his pertakers, he exhorted his Spartanes so remember themselves, that how so euer they fought they must be slaine, warning the to take heed that they gaue no cause to haue it reported of them hereafter, that their hartes serued them better to tarie, than to fight: saying, that it was not for them to stand till their enemies should enclose the about, but as soone as night should serue their turne, to set upon their enemies making mery without care in their tents. For conquerors

The loue of
Leonides to
ward his
country.

coude

coude no where die moze honozably, then in the camp of their enemies. It was no hard matter to perswade the they were al redy bent to die. Forthwith they armed themselves & being but vi. C. men in all, brake into the campe of D. C. M. & forthwith went vnto the kings paulion, of purpose either to die with him, or els if they were ouerlaid, to die in especially in his tent. All the campe was on a roze. The Lacedemonians when they could not find the king, raiged through al the camp like conquerors, slaying and throwing downe al things, as men that knew that they fought not in hope of victoꝝ, but to reuēge their own death. The battell was prolonged from the beginning of the night, vntill the moze part of the next day. At the last not vanquished, but wery of vanquishing, they fel down dead among the heapes of their dead enemies. Xerxes hauing receiued two losses in battell on the land, intended to try his fortune vpon the sea. But Themistocles the captain of the Atheniens, whē he understode by the Ionians (for whose quarell the king of Persie made al this war) were com to the aid of his Persians with a navy of ships, intended to draw them to his part if he could. And because he coude haue no opportunitie to talke with the, he caused these wordes to be engraued in stones: & set at the places where they should asue. How mad are ye, O ye Ionians: what mischief mēd you to do: purpose ye to make war against your first founders, & now of late, your new reuēgers: haue we builded your walles, to the intent they should destroy oures: what if wee had not had this occasion of war, first with Darius, and now with Xerxes: seing we forsoke you not whē ye rebelled, why do ye not come out of that siege into this our campe: Or if ye thinke ye may not do so without danger, when the battell shal be toynd, step you asid, draw back your ships & depart out of the battell. Before they should encounter vpon the sea, Xerxes had sent iiii. M. men to Delphos to spoyle the temple of Apollo, as though he had made war not onely with the Grekes, but euen with the gods immort al, which had

The noble
proverbe of
Leonides & the
Spartanes.

A politique
prouison of
Themistocles.

Man hath no
pouuer against
God.

of

of me was betterly destroyed with tempest and lightning, to the intent he might understand, that the more that god is wroth and displeased with man, the lesse power, or rather none at all, hath man against God. After this he burned the cities of Theſpie, Plate & Athens, but there were no men in them, and because he could not destroy the me with the sword, he wreken his teene upon they houses with fire. For the Atheniens after the battell of Marathō (by the counsell of Themistocles, who gaue them warning that that victorie wonne of the Persians was not an ende, but rather a cause of greater warre) made the a fleet of two hundred shippes. Therefore when Xerxes was coming towarde them, they asked counsell of the Oracle at Delphos, where it was answered that they must prouide for theyr sauegard in wooden walles.

The answer
of the Oracle

Themistocles
interpreteth
the same.

Themistocles deeming it to be spoken and ment of shippes, perswaded al the people that their Countrey was not the walles, but the men: and that the Citty was not the houses and buildings, but the Citizens and inhabitants. Therefore it was more for their sauegard, to betake themselves to shippes than to abide in y town, & of this counsell god himself was the author. The counsell was wel liked, & therupon abandoning the city, they conueied their wiues and children with all theyr precious stuffe andiewels into secrete Isles, and there bestowed them in safetye, which done, they armed themselves and took shippynge. Other cities also followed the example of the Atheniens. Therefore when al the whole fleet of their complices and partakers were assembled together in the narrow seas by the Isle of Salamine to the intent they might not be enclosed of Xerxes great multitude, as they were consulting how to maintain the warres upon the sea, suddenly sprang a variaunce betwene the princes of the Cities, every man deuising how to breake by privacy, and to steale home to defend his owne. Themistocles fearing least by the departure of his companions, his strength shoulde be abated,

sent

sent wordes vnto Xerxes by a trusty seruante, that now was the time that he might easely take all Grece together in one place: whereas if every man were dispersed home to his owne citie (as they were about to do, it shoulde be more to his paine to pursue them one by one. Throug this policie, he caused the king to geue a signe of battell. The Grekes also being preuented with the appche of their enemies, laid their power together and ioyned battell. During the time of the encounter, the kinge as a looker on and no medler, with certaine shippes lay still at the roade: But Artemisia the Queene of Halicarnassus who came to the aide of Xerxes, fought fierly euen among the foremost Captaines in the battell. So that as in Xerxes was to be scene a seminy fearfulness, so in hir was to be scene a manly couragiousnesse. In the whorrell of the battell, the Ionians according to the counsell of Themistocles began by little and little to withdrawe themselves out of the prease, whose departure discouraged all the rest. The Persians looking about which way to scape, were put out of aray, and some after being vanquished were put to open flighte. In which discomfiture many shippes were sunke and many taken. Vnto no fearing no lesse the kyngs crueltye than theyr enemy, stole away and went home. The Xerxes being striken in great feare, by reade of this slaughter, wist not what to do, Mardonius came vnto hym and councelled him to depart into his kingdom with as much speed as myght bee (least the byrte of discomfiture which commonly he went to make more of thinges then they be in drede) myght cause any insurrection or he came there, and to leaue him CCC. thousand of the tallest and most picked souldiours of al his best, with which company he might either (to his honour) subdue all Grece, or it it fell out otherwise) without dishonour to his name, geue place to his enemies. The counsell of Mardonius was wel allowed. And therupon the setten dayes of war were to him deliuered, and the king himselfe went about to renewe

The devise of
Themistocles
to make his
federates able

The courage
of Xerxes
The valiantnes
of Artemisia.

The Persians
are discomfited
in the Sea.

The counsell
of Mardonius

uise

they home the rest. But the Greekes hearing of the kings flight consulted together to breake the bytoge which he (as lord of the sea) had made at Abydos, to the entent that bys passage being cut of, he might either with his army be utterly destroyed, or els be brought to suche an exigent, that as theyrely overcome he should be compelled to desire peace at their handes. But Themistocles fearing least bys enemies being stopped of their passage, should turne theyr despaires into hardines, and (seeing none other remedy) make themselves way with theyr swordes, told them that there were enemies inough, and to many already in Greece, the number wherof ought not to be increased by keepinge them against theyr wils. But when he perceiued his counsel prevailed not, he sent the same seruant againe vnto Xerxes, aduertising him of their entent and purpose, and willing him to get him away with speed if he intended to escape. The king being stricken in feare with this message, bespue red his souldiours to be conueied home by their captaines, & he with a few wente toward Abydos: where findinge the bytoge broken with the tepests of the winter, he ferried ouer fearfully in a fishers boate. It was a thing worth the beholding & as for consideration and valuing of mans fragile wealch & prosperitie, a thing to be wondered at, to see him now lurking in a litle boate, whom lately before, scarce all the sea was able to receiue, & to see him destitute of all attendance & seruice, whose army by reason of the huge multitude therof, was euen a burde to the earth. Neither had the army whom hee had assigned to captaines, any lucke per iourning by land. For besides their daily trauail (as surely there is no rest to such as be in feare) they were also afflicted with hunger. Furthermore, the want of victuals brought vpon them the pestilence, by meanes wherof they died so thicke, that the wayes were couered with their dead carcases, in so much that the beasts & foules allured with desire of praye followed the host. In the meane tyme Mardonius toke Olynthus in Greece by assault. Also he entre-

Themistocles sent forth againe to Xerxes.

Xerxes fleeth for feare.

A worthy example of the frailties of mans estate.

The afflictions of the Persian host.

Mardonius Olynthus.

ted with the Atheniens to sue to the king for peace & freede ship, promising to build vp their citie which he had burnt, larger and fairer then euer it was before. When he saw they would not sel their libertie for any worldly good, he set on fire that which they had begon to build againe, & from thence passed with his army into Boetia, thither followed also the host of the Greekes, which was a C. M. men, and there was a battell fought. But the changing of the captain changed not the kings fortune. For Mardonius beinge ouercome, escaped with a fewe as it were cut of shipwreck. His reys replenished with all kind of riches, after the princelyest sort that could be, were taken and riden. Whereupon first of all among the Greekes (wher they had parted the gold of the Persians among them) grew excise and riote. By chaunce the same day that Mardonius host was destroyed, there was another battell fought vpon the sea against the Persians in Asia, hard by the mountaine Micala. There before the encounter, as the two fleets stode in order of battayle one against another, a same came vnto both the armies that the Greekes had gotten the upper hand, and utterly slayne all Mardonius hoste. So great was the swiftnesse of fame, that the battell being fought in Boetia in the morning, by none tydings was broughte of the victorie into Asia ouer so many seas, and ouer so much grounde in so short a moment of tyme.

A battell betweene Mardonius and the Greekes.

Excesse of riches.

The swiftnesse of fame.

When the warres were finished, and that consultation was had how euer Citie should be rewarded, by iudgement of them all, the Atheniens were deemed to haue done most valiantly. Among the Captaines also Themistocles beinge by the verditte of all the Cityes iudged chiefe, increased the renowne of his countrey. The Atheniens, therefore being increased as wel in riches as in honour, beganne to buyde theyr Cypre out of the grounde. When the Lacedemonians heard how they had enlarged the waller of their Cypre, and sette them further out then they were before, they began to haue them in a Tethie myselye

wisely forecasting what they were like to grow unto ha-
ving once made their citie stronge and defensible, who by
the destruction of it had gotten so much. Wherefore they
sent Ambassadors to admonish them not to build fortref-
ses for their enemies, and holdes for the warres that were
like to ensue hereafter.

The wyse do-
moner Themis-
tocles.

Themistocles perceiuing them to repine at the raising
of his citie, and considering howe it stode him in hande to
do nothing vnadvisedly, answered the ambassadours, that
certayne shoulde goe with them to Lacedemon, to consulte
with them concerning that matter.

So when he had dispatched the ambassadours of Sparta,
he exhorted his Citizens to make spæde in theyr worke, &
himselfe within a while after went of Ambassade. In the
which iourney what by sayning himselfe sicke, and what
by putting faulte in the slackenes of such as were in com-
mission with him, without whome hee said he was able to
do nothing by vertue of his commission, hee draue of still
from day to day, and al to the entent that they might haue
leisure to finish their worke. During which tyme it was
reposed at Lacedemon, that the worke went forwarde a-
pace at Athens. Whereupon they sente Ambassadors a-
gaine to see if it were so or no. Then Themistocles by a
seruaunt of his sent a letter to the magistrates of Athens
willin gthem to hold the Spartane ambassadours in safe
keeping as pledges, lest they might deale otherwys than
well with him at Lacedemon. Then he went boldly before
the counsell of Lacedemon, declaringe that Athens was
now througely fortified, and that it was able to withstand
the force of enemies, not onely by the sworde, but also by
the strengthe of their walles, and if they entreated him o-
therwise than well for the matter, their ambassadours were
kept as pledges for the same purpose at Athens. Then hee
gaue them a great rebuke, in that they sought soueraign-
tie, not by their owne power, but by the weaknes of their
confederates. So being dismissed, in maner triumphing o-

Themistocles
cometh hyn-
to Lacedem.

ouer the Lacedemonians, he was ioyfully receiued of hye
owne citizens. After this the Spartanes (lest their strength
shoulde decay through idleness, and to reuenge themselves
vpon the Persians, which twise before had made warre v-
pon the Grekes) of their own accord inuaded the borders
of their empire. They chose for captaine both of their own
army and of the army of their adherentes, one Pausanias,
being not content with the Captainship, but couetynge in-
strade thereof to make himselfe king of all Grece, ptylly
conspired with Xerxes. In reward wherof he shoulde haue
the kings daughter in marriage, and because the kynge
shoulde haue the more confidence in him, he sent home the
prisoners skoffree without rancome. Moreover he wrot
vnto Xerxes, that what messengers so euer hee sente vnto
him, he shoulde put them to death, to the entent their pur-
pose shoulde not by talke be bewrayed. But Aristides the
captaine of the Atheniens, elected his fellow in the warre
(what by working against his enterprises, and what by
foreseeing wisely what was like to ensue) disclosed the en-
tent and purpose of his treason. Whereupon it was long
after, Pausanias was arraigned & condemned. Xerxes ther-
fore when he perceiued that his secreete conspiracies were
disclosed, determined to proclaime open warre again. The
Grecians also appointed for their captaine, Cymo of A-
thens the sonne of Milciades their graundcaptayne at the
battel of Marathon, a noble yong gentleman whose natu-
ral and godly disposition, declared before hand what honoz
he was like to come vnto. For when his father, being cast
in prison for robbing of the common treasure, was there
departed and could not be buried, he by taking his fathers
trons vpon him, redeemed his body and buried it. Neither
were they any thing at all deceiued, that chose him to bee
theyr soueraigne Captaine. For beinge a man of no lesse
prowesse then was his father, he vanquished Xerxes both
vpon sea, and land, and compelled him to retire fearefully
into his owne kyngdome.

The Spar-
tanes make
warre against
the Persians

Pausanias
worketh trea-
son against
his country.

Aristides pre-
uenteth his
treason.

Pausanias is
condemned,

Cymo is made
graund cap-
taine against
the Persians

The natural
loue of Cymo
to his father.

Xerxes is
vanquished.

The Conteintes of the third Booke.



XERXES and his sonnes are slayne, by the treason of Artabanus, Artaxerxes reuegeth the death of his father. The Lacedemonians & the Athenians fall at variance: Licurgus maketh lawes, & vwillingly bauld heth him selfe, the Lacedemonians make Warre vpon the Messeniens, the Parthoniens place themselves at Tarent in Italy, Messene rebelleth and is subdued, Warre is renewed betwene the Lacedemonians, and the Atheniens, the Lacedemonians brake the truce: the notable demenor of Pericles: truce is taken againe, and broken by the Lacedemonians.

Xerxes is
slaine by his
ovvne subject.



ERXES KING OF Persia, of whome al nations a little before stode in feare, after he had sped so vnfortunatly in hys warres in Grece, began to be had in contempte even of his owne subiectes. For Artabanus a

licutenant of his, perceiuing the kinges estate dayly to decay, and being therewith brought in hope of the kyngdome, one euening with his seuen sonnes, who were verie stout men, entered the kinges palace. For he was so well trusted, and beloued with the kyng, that he might come in whensoever he would. Wherefore when he had slayne the kyng, he wrought by policy to destroy his children, whom he knew to be a let to his enterpryse. As for Artaxerxes who was but a very child, he thought he might abuse hym as he listed, and to the entente the sooner to compass the kyngdome, he bare him in hande that the kyng was murdered by Darius, who was man growen. Whereby he compelled Artaxerxes to reuenge murder with murder. When they came to Darius lodging, they founde hym as if he had made himselfe a slepe, and there killed hym. Afterwarde Artabanus perceiuing that for all his mischief, there was yet one of the kynes sonnes alive, and fearing that

The cautele
and treason
of Artabanus

that the Piers of the realme would stande in contention with him for the kyngdome: made one Baccabassus of hys Councell, who being content with his present estate bewrayed the whole matter to Artaxerxes, how his father was slaine, how his brother vpon false presumption of murder was put to death, and finally how there was treason a working against his owne person. When Artaxerxes knew that, fearing Artabanus, because he had so many sonnes, he commaunded his army to muster before him in armour the next day, for he would take a view both of their number and of euery mans actiuite in handlinge his weapon. Therefore when as among the reste Artabanus also stode by in armour, the kyng sayynge that hys Caret was to hope for hym, commaunded Artabanus to chaunge with hym. As he was putting it of, the kyng espieng hym naked, thruste hym thorowe with hys sworde, and there withall commaunded all hys sonnes to be apprehended. And so this worthy younge Prince reuenged the deathe of hys father, and the murder of hys brother, and saued himselfe from the treason of Artabanus.

The treason
disclosed.

Treason po-
litely re-
uenged.

Whyle these thynges were a doying amonge the Persians, in the meane season all Grece deuoyng it selfe in two partes, (wherein the one followed the Lacedemonians, the other the Atheniens) turned their weapons from foraine enemies, as it were against theyr owne bowels. Of one people was made two bodies, and the souldiours of one Campe were parted into two hostes of deadly enemies. On the one side the Lacedemonians, drew to theyr parte, all suche as were before tymes waged at the common charges of all the cities, for the defence of the whole countrey. On the other side the Atheniens standyng vpon the renowne as well of their auncestors as of theyr own deedes of chualtrie, trusted to all their own strength. And so two of the mightiest people of all Grece, equall for the statutes of Solon and the lawes of Lycurgus fel to

The discorde
of the Greekes
among them-
selues.

D. is. warre

Righteous-
nes is to be-
preferred be-
fore a king-
dome.

warre among themselves thought any one at an other's estate. For Lycurgus succeeding his brother Polybita in the kingdome of Sparta, when as he might lawfully haue chalenged it to himselfe, surrendered the same with as much faithfulness as might be, vnto his sonne Charilaus (who was bozne after the death of his father) as soon as he came to mans estate. To the entente all men myght vnderstande how much good men do set more by rightfulness, then by all the riches in the worlde. In the meane tyme therefore while the chyldre grew (of whome as I haue before sayd hee had the gouernment) hee deuised lawes for the Spartanes who hitherto had none, in whych dowryng he deserued no more renowne for inuentynge them, than for geauynge example in keepynge them. For certaynly he ordayned no law for any other man, wherof he gaue not example first of al by hymselfe.

The notable
lawes of Li-
curgus.

He taught the people due obedience to their Prince and the Princes to minister iustice indifferentlye to their subiectes. He perswaded all estates to sparsenesse of dyete, for he thoughte the paynes of warrefare would beecome the easier, though continuall enduraunce vnto thys tynes. He commaunded all things to be bought, not for money but for exchange of wares. The vse of gold and siluer and the occasion of al mischief, he utterly toke away. The gouernment of the publike weale he distributed into certayne estates and degrees. Vnto the kinges he gaue power absolutely in all matters concerning the warres: vnto the magistrates, authoritie in iudgements and matters of law, whom he would to continue in office but one yere at ones: vnto the Senators, to see the lawes executed and kepte: to the commons power to chuse the Senators, or to create what officers they listed. He parted all theyr Landes amongest them, portyon and portyon like, to the entente euery mā hauing like liuethode, no man should take more vpon him than other. He ordained that they should al eate and drinke together openly, to the entente that no man should

should secretly vse any excellence or superfluitie: hee permitted the yong men to weare but one garment all the yere longe, nor one to gooe gayer then another, nor one to fare better then an other, least by followinge one anothers example, they should fall to riote. Chylidren vnder x. yeares of age, were not suffered to come into the Court, but were commaunded to keepe in the Countrey, to the entent they might spende their first yeares, not in riotousnes, but in labour and trauaile. And when they slept, they myght not lay any thing vnder them to rest vpon, nor eate any dayntie meate, nor retorne into the citie before they were men growne. He made a law that maidens should marry wth out dowry, and gaue commaundement that men should chuse their wiues for loue and not for money, thynkynge by that meanes men would be more straightly obserue the duties of wedlocke, when there was no dowry to lette them. The greatest reuerence, he would should bee asyg- ned, not to ryche men and men of authoritie, but to aged men accordyng to the degre of their yeares. And to say the truth, there is no place in al the worlde, where age is more honored then in Sparta. Howe forasmuch as these things at the first, seemed hard to them that before tymes were wont to liue as they liued, he fained Apollo of Delphos to be the authoz of them, and that he had fetcht them from thence at the commaundement of God, to the entent that the feare of God mighte enure them vnto it, till custome had giuen away all wearinesse. Afterwarde to the entent he myght establishe his lawes for euer, he caused all the Citie to be sworn, not to alter or breake any part of his lawes, vntill he returned againe, bearyng them in hande he was goyng to the Oracle at Delphos, to take counsel what was to be altered or added in his lawes. But in very verbe he sailed vnto Candy, where gladly he liued the residue of his life in banishment. And when he should die, he commaunded his bones to be throwne into the sea, least if they were caried againe to Lacedemon, the Spartanes

The bring-
ing vp of
children.

The marriage
of maidens.

Reuerence
vnto old age,

The deuise
of Licurgus
to make his
lawes eter-
nall.

Licurgus ha-
nisteth hym-
selfe to do his
countrie good

The vvaies
of the Spar-
tans against
the Messen-
ians.

might thinke themselves clere of their oth in disanulling
of his lawes. By meanes of these ordinaunces, the City
grew so strong within a while, that when they made war
against the Messenians for rauishing certain of their ma-
dens in a solempne sacrifice of the Messenians, they bound
themselves with a greuous curse, not to returne home,
before they had won the citie of Messenia: so much did they
trust either to their owne strengthe or to theiꝝ fortune.
Which thing was the beginning of discorde, and the chiefe
cause and occasion of cruell warre in Greece. Therefore
when contray to their presumption, they had besieged the
towne .x. yeres, and could not take it, and that their wyues
after so long widowhead, sent often to them, requestyng
them earnestly to come home: At length fearyng leaste by
their holding out, they might do themselves moze harme
then the Messenians (for wke how much pouth the Mes-
senians lost by the warres, it was supplied agayne by the
frutefulnesse of theiꝝ wyues: but they themselves ranne
in conynuall losse, bothe by the warres, and also for that
theiꝝ wyues were as barren durynge the absence of theiꝝ
husbandes) They chose certaine young men out of that
number that came to their supplie after the othe was ta-
ken, and sente them home to Sparta with free liberty to
company with whome soeuer they woulde, supposing
their wyues shoulde sooner conceiue, by attemptyng it
with dyuers men. They that were so begotten in respecte
of their mothers dishonour, were called Partheniēs: who
when they came to the age of xxx. yeres for feare of po-
uertie, (for none of them coulde say who was his father,
by whome he myght loke for any inheritaunce or luyng)
toke to bee their Captayne, Phalanthus the sonne of A-
racus, which gaue the Spartans the foze sayde counsell to
sende home these younge men for issues sake. Like as of
late bys father was the authour of their begettinge, so
might they haue the sonne the authour of their hope and
prosperitie. Therefore not so much as once bidding their
mothers

The original
of the Par-
thenians.

Thane to
by Maiden-
brides.

Phalanthus.

mothers farewell, whose aduourte they thought sounded
greatly to their shame and reproche, they took their way
to seeke them a new dwelling place, and after dyuers ad-
uentures, being long tossed from post to pillar, at length
they came into Italy, where they besieged the fortreffe of
Tarente: whiche beinge wonne by assaulte, they drave
out the auncient inhabitants thereof, and there settled them-
selves. But many yeres after, their Captayne Phalan-
thus being by a tumult dyuen into exile, went vnto Brun-
dadium whither as the auncient inhabitants of Tarent
beinge expelled thier native countrey hadde wythdrawen
themselves, When he shoulde die, hee perswaded them to
take yss bones, and the residue of his body and beat them
into poulder, and secretlye cause them to be strawed in the
market place of Tarent, saying that Apollo at Delphos,
had tolde hym that in so doyng they shoulde recouer theiꝝ
countrey agayne. The Tarentines supposing that to re-
uenge the displeasure done vnto him, he hadde bewrayed
the vestenis of his Citizens, obeyed his counsell. But the
meanynge of the Oracle was cleane contrary. For it pro-
mised by so doyng the continuall possession of the towne,
and not the losse of it. And so through the counsel of theiꝝ
banished captaine and the working of their ennemies, the
Parthenians were stablished in the possession of Tarent for
euer. In remembrance of the which good turne, they euer af-
ter honored Phalanthus as a God. In the meane tyme the
Messenians being not able to be ouercom by plaine force,
were ouercome by policy. Afterward whē by the space of
lxxx. yeres they had suffered soze punishments of bondage,
with imprisonment & other miseries of chaldō: after longe
sufferaunce of these miseries, they renued the warre a-
gainst the Lacedemonians also came to the field so much
the moze earnestly, because they seemed, to fight agaynst
their bondemen. The courages of both parties therefore
being quickned, the one with inurpe, the other with dys-
paine the Lacedemonians demaunded counsell of the O-
racle

The Parthe-
nians seeke
them a new
dwelling pla-
ce.

They place
themselves
Italy.

The bone of
Phalanthus
toyward the
countreys

Phalan-
thus
is honoured
for a God.
The Mes-
senians are lib-
erated & after-
ward rebell.

racle at Delphos to what end the war should come. Ther they were commaunded to send to the Atheniens for a cap-
sayne. The Atheniens hauing intelligence of the answer
of Apollo, in despite of the Lacedemonians set the a Poet
called Tyrteus, lame of one foote, who beinge vanquished
in 3 battels, brought the Lacedemonians to such afterdele
that to supply their army they were fayne to make their bond
men free, & promised to geue them the wiues of them that
were slayne, so that they should succede such as werelost,
not onely in number but also in estate and worship. But the
kings of the Lacedemonians lest by strising agaynst for-
tune they might bring moze damage vpon the country,
were minded to haue conueyed home their host, if Tyrteus
had not come in the meane season: who sumoning his ar-
my together, reherfed vnto them certayne verses that he had
compiled wherein, he had written Encouragements of
prowesse, comfortes of losse, and policie of war. Where
throughe he set his souldiers on such a courage, that takinge
moze thought of the burial then for their liues, euery
man put about his right arme a bracelet, wherein w-
uen his owne name and the name of his father: & con-
tente that if they had so ill fortune as to be slayn in the bat-
tell, and that by continuance of time the bodyes should
rot out of fashon, they might by the markes of the bracelet
lets be knowne and buried.

When the kings saw the host so mynded they caused
the matter to be shewed to their enemies. The Messeni-
ans wer therewith nothinge abashed, but rather made moze
earnest. Therfore they met with such courage, that there
hath not lightly a bloudier battayle bin heard of. Neuer-
thelesse at last the Lacedemonians gotte the vpper hande.
In proceesse of tyme the Messenians made insurrection the
third tyme. In the which, among other helpes, the Lac-
edemonians sent for aide to the Atheniens. Of whose faith-
fulnes conceiuing some mistrust, they made countenance
as though they shoulde not neede them, and so sent them
home

Tyrteus bring-
eth the
Spartans in
despaire.

The force of
Poetrie.

The courage
of the Messe-
nians,

Occasion of
war betwene
the Lacede-
monians and
the Atheniens

home againe. The Atheniens takinge this matter in dis-
pleasure, fetched from Delos to Athens, the money whiche
was laide there by all Greece, for the maintenaunce of the
warres against the Persians: least if the Lacedemonians
should breake the league, they might take it as a butte, &
make a spoyle of it. But the Lacedemonians could not be
in quiette. For beinge entangled in the warres with the
Messenians, they waged the Peloponnesians to make
warre againste the Atheniens. The Atheniens were as
then but of small power, by reason they had sent a nauy of
ships into Egypt. Therfore encountering vpon the Sea,
they were vanquished with small aduantage. Within a while af-
ter, when their flete was come home, beinge encreased both
in number of shippes and in strength of men, they reared
the warre anewe. And at that tyme the Lacedemonians
leauing the Messenians, tournd themselves againste the
Atheniens: Longe tyme the victorie hong in doubtfull ba-
launce. At the last they departed of euen hande. The La-
cedemonians beinge called agayne to the warres of Mes-
senia. (because they were to that the Atheniens shoulde
be idle the meane while) couenaunted with the Thebanes
to restore to them the kingdome of Beotia, which was ta-
ken from them in the time of the Persian warres, vpon
condition that they should make warre to the Atheniens.
So mad were the Lacedemonians, that beinge all readye
entangled in two warres at once, they sticke not to take
the thirde in hande, onely to stirre by enemies to the
aduersaries, The Atheniens therfore to withstande this
great tempeste of warre, chose two captaines. Pericles a
man of tryed verue, & Sophocles a writer of tragedies,
who with two sondry armies, wasted the territories of the
Spartans, and subdued many cities of Achaia to the empire
of Athens. The Lacedemonians beinge all broughte, lowe
with these misfortunes, toke peace for xxx. yeares. But
the grudge could not suffer them to abide so longe
in rest. Therfore ere xx. yeares were fully accompyshed,
they

See the na-
ture of enuy.

The noble
doings of
Pericles.

The Lacede-
monians take
a truce and
brake it.

The fourth Booke.

The Contentes of the fourth Booke.

SHe description of Sicill, vvith the vvonders thereof. A Folus
takerh vpon him the crowne of the same, after vvhose de-
cease euery city hath his Tyrant, amonge vvhom Anaxilaus
contended against thothers crueltie, vvith Iustice and Iqui-
tie. The menne of Rhegium are cruelly dispossessed of their
Citie by their confederates. The Catanenses and Syracusans fall at de-
bate: the Atheniens ayde the Catanenses, truce is taken by the Syra-
cusans. Thatheniens succor the Catanenses, againe: Gylippus recou-
veth Syracuse, vanquisheth the Atheniens, both by Sea and by land,
and vterly destroyeth both theyr men and shippes.



MEN SAY that Sicil cleaued sōtime
very nāre vnto Itālye, and that it
was (as it were rent from the grea-
ter body, by violence of the hypper sea,
which wīthal the force of his waues
cometh thither. The earth of it selfe
is fine & brittle, so holow vvith holes
& pipes in the ground, that in man-
ner it lies vvīde open to euery blaste of vvīnde. And besī-
des that, the nature of the soyle is suche, that of it selfe it
engendreth and nourisheth fire. For the molde vvithin, is
after a bymstone and rosen, by meanes vvhereof it com-
meth to passe, that the vvīnde strīuinge vvith the fire in the
innermoste parte of the earthe, oftentimes and in manye
places casteth out, erewhiles flakes of fyre, erewhiles
vapors, and erewhiles smoke. There vpon also groweth
the fire of the mountaine Aetna continuinge so manye
hundred yeares. And vvhen there is any great vvīnde in the
foresaid holes, great heapes of sand are cast out of the. The
next headland ouer against Itāly is Rhegium: so called by

The descrip-
tion of Sicill,
vvith the na-
ture thereof.

la u se

they brake the truce, and in despite of God and man, in-
uaded the borders of Athens. And because they would not
seme so greatly to haue sought the pray, as the encounter:
they had them battell. But the Atheniens by the counsell
of their captain Pericles delayd the reuēgement of his wa-
ring their country, vntill moze conuenient tīme and oc-
casion, thinkinge it but a follye to trouble them selues as
then, considering they might ere long after, be reuenged
moze to their profit & lesse to their displeasure. Which in few
dayes after, they embarked the selues, & ouer the Lacede-
monians vvith therof, wasted al the country of Sparta, & cari-
ed away a great deale moze, than they had losse before. So
that in comparīson of the damages, the reuēgement was
much greater the displeasure. Honorabē was this bi-
age of Pericles, but much moze honorable was the despising
of his own inheritaunce. For vvhen the Spartanes spoiled al
other mennes landes, they left his vntouched, hopinge ey-
ther to bring him in slaunder thvough enuy, or els in daun-
ger vpon presumption of treason. Whiche thing Pericles
foresyng, told the people how it would come to passe, & to
auoyde the hūnt of enuy, he gaue the landes for a gifte to
the common weale. And so by the meanes the thinge vvhere-
by most hurt was sought against him, turned mooste of all
to his honor. Which in a few dayes after, there was a battell
fought vpon the Sea, in vvhych the Lacedemonians were
vanquished, and fled. And from that tīme forthvvard they
ceased not to flea, and kyll one another both by sea and by
land, after as the fortune of battell fauored either partye.
Finally being wearied vvith so many mischīeses, they toke
a truce for fifty yeres, vvhych they kept no longer than fīre
yeares. For the truce vvich they had taken in their owne
name, they brake in the behalf of their fellows: as though
they should lesse haue committed perjury in fightyng, to
maintein the quarel of their coplices, the in making open war.
After this the warre was remoued into Sicill: but ouer the
entirety thereof, I vvill vvrite somvvhat of the situation of the
The

The vvīsdome
of Pericles
in reuēging
his country.

His vvīsdome
in auoyding
the enuy of
the Lacedemo-
nians.

Battell on
the Sea.

The Lacede-
monians brake
the truce, agai-
ne.

The narrowe
seas of Sicill

cause the Grekes in their language terme things broken
67, by that name. It is no maruel though in old time there
went many tales of this place, in whypche are conueyed so
many straunge things. First and foremost there is no na-
row sea in all the world so raginge as it, not onely by the
swiftenesse of the waues, but also by the violente meeting
of the tides, so that it is terrible, not only to them that try
it, but also to such as beholde it far of. Forouer there is
such a do when the waues mete, that a man shall see some
as it were running away drowned in the whorlpoles, and
falling into the bottom of the Sea: and other some in ma-
ner of conqueroures proulye beare them selues a losse.
And againe yee shall heare in one place the rolinge of the
raging tide, and in an other place as it were the sighing of
it as it sinketh into the gulfe. And to the encrease thereof
maketh also the nere, and continual burning of the moun-
tain Actna, and of Acolusiles, as though the fire were no-
rished with the water. For it is not possible that so great a
fire shoulde otherwise continue so longe season togither in
so small a roome, vnles it were nourished by moisture.
Whereupon therefore grew the tales of Scylla and Charib-
dis, hereupon came it y men heard the barking of dogges,
hereupon men beleeued that they sawe monsters, who in
sayling that way, beyng feared with y noyse of the waues
falling into the great gulfs, imagined the waues to barks
which was nothinge els, but the noyse of the waters bea-
tinge one againste an other as they were swyped by vpo-
lence into the whorlpoles. The like cause is also of the co-
tinuance of the fire of the mountain Actna. For thys vpo-
lent meetinge of the waters, draweth, the winde with y
perforce into the bowels of the earth, and there holdeth it
pent so long, vntill beyng spred into the holes of the earth, it
setteyth the firy matter a burninge. Now Italy and Sicilie
are so neare togither and the headlandes of both so like in
height, that loke howe muche wee now wonder at it, so
much men in olde time were afraide of it, beleeuyng that
the

Scylla and
Charibdis.

the hills met and departed a soder againe, so that whole
nauiies of shippes were swallowed vpp and neuer serue af-
ter. Neither was this thinge deuised in olde time, for plea-
sauntesse of the tale, but through feare and wonderment
of suche a passage that way. For such is the nature of the
place, that they which beholde it a farre of, would rather
take it to bee Baye of the Sea, than a passage. And when
a man comes neare, he would thinke that the Mountaynes
parted and wente a soder. Sicill was fitte of all named
Trinacria, and afterward it was called Sicania. This Iland
from the beginninge was the countrey of Giauntes wth
one eye in their foreheed called Cyclopes, which beyng
roted out, Aeolus tooke vppon him the rule of the Ile, af-
ter whose decease, euery City had a Tyrant by themselves,
and there was neuer countrey that had better stoe of them,
then had Sicile. Of the nuber of these tyrantes, there was
one Anaxilaus that strived againste the crueltye of the o-
thers with iustice, whose modest gouernance profited
him not a litle. For when he was departed out of this life,
leauing his children very ponge vnder the tuition and go-
uernement of a trusty seruant of his called Mysithus, hee
was so well beeloued of all his subiectes, that they were
contented to obey his seruant, rather then to forsake his
children, and that the Princes of the citle forgetting their
estate, suffered the kingdome to be ruled by a bondman.
The Carthaginians assayed to conquer the mynne of Sicill,
and fought a long season with the kings thereof, sometime
to thei gayne, and sometime to their losse.

The names
of Sicill.

An example
of iustice and
good gover-
nance and
the fruite
thereof.

At length when they had losse thei gradnd Captayne
Hamilcar and all his hoste, their hartes were discouraged,
and so they kept them selues in quiete for a while after. In
the meane season the inhabitants of Rhegium fallynge
at debate among them selues, and the City beyng deu-
ided in two factions, the one part thinking them selues to
weake, sent forth the olde souldiours, which were then at
the City of Imcra to come and helpe them, who haupnge
druen

Rede more
here of in the
xxvi. xix. xx. &
xxii. booke.

driven out of the Towne, those against whom they were called, & forthwith slaying them whose quarrell they supported, tooke them. Citty with they wives and children, and all that ever they had, whiche was such a cruel acte as neuer before attempted: in so muche that it had bene farre better for the men of Rhegium to haue bene vanquished, than to haue gotten the victory, for whether they had bin diuyn by the lawe of armes to haue serued the Conquerours, or whether they hadde bin diuyn to forsake they country as banished persons, yet should hee not haue bin miserably murdered betwene the temples & they dwelling houses, and haue left their native countrey with they wives and children as a praye to suche cruell Tyrantes. The Catenenses also being sore oppressed by the Syracusans and distrusting their owne strength, demaunded succor of the Atheniens, who (whether it were for desire to enlarge their Empire, because they hadde all ready conquered all Grece, and Asia, or that they feared least the great naup of Hippes which the Syracusans had lately builded, should encrease and strengthen the Lacedemonians, sent a Captaine called Lamponius, with a naup into Syccil, to the entente that vnder the colour of ayding the Catenenses, they might attempt to get the conqueste of the Realme. And because they had prosperous success in their affaires at the beginning, & the great slaughter of their enemies, they wente to Syccil again with a greater flete and a stronger power, wherof were captaynes Lachetes and Chariades. But the Catenenses (whether it were for feare of the Atheniens or that they were weary of the warres) made peace with the Syracusans, and sente home the Atheniens againe that came to their rescue. Within a while after, when the Syracusans obserued not the peace faithfully, they sent their Ambassadors againe to Athens, who in vnhandsome apparel with long beards & long leardes, framing their countenance & gesture as much as might be to prouoke pitty, came sorrowfully before the people. In making their complaint

Ciuit Warres
in Sicill, by
meanes wher
of the Athe-
niens were
brought to a
fore after dele-

plainte they wept, & with their humble supplication, to moue the sly people to pitty, that the captaynes were condemned for withdrawing their succors from them. Wherfore a great naup was sent forth, wherof were appointed captaynes, Nicias, Alcibiades, and Lamachus, and they entred Sicill with suche a power, & euen they whome they came to defend were afrayde of them. Shortly after Alcibiades being sent for home to answer to certaine entementes that were put against him, Nicias and Lamachus fought two prosperous battels vpon the land, & some after so enclosed their enemies on all sides, that they could haue neither rescue nor victailen from the sea. The Syracusans beinge so sore distressed, desired help of the Lacedemonians. Unto them was sent no more but only Gylippus, Dun he was such a one as was worth all the helpe they had beside. For he bearing of the manner of the war, & perceyuing his complices to be brought to a lowe ebbe, raysed a power partly in Grece, & partly in Sicill, & toke suche a pore of ground as he thought meete for two hostes to encounter in. Wherof beinge wyle putte to the worke, at the first encounter hee slue Lamachus, put his enemies to flight, & raised the Siege. But when Gylippus perceiued that the Atheniens removed from the land, to battel on the Sea, he sent for the naup of Lacedemon to ayd him. Which thing being knowne at Athens, they also to supply the rowme of the captayne that was slaine, sente Demosthenes & Enrymedon with a new furniture of souldiers. The Peloponensians also by a common decree of all the cities, sent great aid to the Syracusans, & all the power that either part could make, was sent thither, as though the warre had bene removed oute of Grece into Sicill. Therfore at the first encounter vpon the sea, the Atheniens were vanquished, their tents also with all their Treasure, priuate and common were taken Besides al these mischieues, when they were overcome vpon the land also, then Demosthenes began to counsel the to depart out of Sicill betimes, before their matters which all ready

Alcibiades
arisech in
Sicill and is
sent for home
againe to
answer to
accusations,

The prayse
of Gylippus,

The thirde
discomfiture
of them.

ready were in great hazarde, were brought to bitter despayre, and not to perseuer in the warre so unluckely begon, there was sorer (and perchance more unfortunate) warre swarded at home in theyr owne countrey, for the defence and withstandinge whereof, that furniture of the citie oughte to be reserved. Nicias whether it were for shame of his ill successe, or for feare of his owne Cyprians disapointed of that they looked for, or that his despayre compelled him there vnto, made all the meanes he might to abide still.

Hereupon estones was renewed the warre by Sea, and for all the stormes of their former misfortune, yet they toke courage to encounter againe. But though the unskillfulnesse of theyr captaynes (that set vpon the Syracusanes keeping them selues in the straights) they were lightly overcome. The Captain Emmyredon fighting very valiantly in the foreward was the first that was slayne. The xxx. shippes whereof he hadde the charge, were set on fire. Demosthenes and Nicias keeping also vanquished, did sette theyr men a lande, supposing by that way the better to escape. The hundred and xxx. shippes which they left behind them, Gylippus invaded, and afterwarde pursuing them as they fled, some he slew and some hee tooke prisoners. Demosthenes when hee had lost his army, deliuered him selfe from bondage by wilfull sleping of him selfe with his sword. But Nicias hauing not the hart to do as Demosthenes did, increased the slaughter of his men by yelding him selfe vnto shamefull captiuitie.

The fourth overthrow of them.

Gylippus followed the victory. Demosthenes slayeth himselfe.

The fifthe Booke.

The Contentes of the fifthe Booke.

Alcibiades vwillingly banisheth himself, and compelleth the king of Lacedemon to Warre vpon Thatheniens: the which Darius king of Persia furthereth also. Alcibiades causeth the cities of Asia to reuolte from Thatheniens: the Lacedemonians lye in vwayt to kill him, he escapeth by the admoniō of the wife of king Agis, and flieth to Tyssaphernes King Darius Lieutenant in Lydia, vvhom he vvithdraweth from the Lacedemonians. The ambassadours of Athens come vnto him, he is reuoked into his countrey and made Admiral, he ouercometh the Lacedemonians and is ioyfully receyued of his Citizens, he receyuethe a losse by ouersight, and bannisheth himselfe agayne. Thatheniens are brought to vtter distresse. Conō theyr Captayne flyeth to Cyprus, the citie is yelded vp to the Lacedemonians, thirty Tyrantes haue the gouernance thereof. Darius king of Persia dyeth, Denis the younger is expulsed out of Sycil. Alcibiades is burned in his lodging, Thrastibulus expulseth the xxx. Tyrantes, enne others are placed in theyr stead: Pausanias King of Lacedemon commaundeth them oute of the citie, and geueth peace to the Atheniens: the Tyrantes making Warre against Athenes, are taken and put to death. Artaxerxes succedeth his Father Darius in the Persian kingdome. Cyrus rebellethe against his brother Artaxerxes and is slayne, the Grekes that came to his ayde, returne into theyr country vnuarquilled.



VHILE THE Atheniēs warred in Sicilie by the space of two yeares, wpth more greedinesse then successe, in the meane season, Alcibiades the stirrer and chief captayne thereof, in his absence was accused at Athens to haue published the misteries of Ceres, & the night sacrifices done in his honour, whiche are by no meanes so highly solemnized as by silence. And being sent from the warres, to answer to his complaint, whether his conscience gaue him to be guilty, or that he could not abide such a reproche to his honoꝝ, he made no woordes, but went as a banished

The poyntes whereof Alcibiades was accused.

Alcibiades
stirreth the
Lacedemoni-
ans against
his owne
countrie

He was the
sonne of Anta-
genes and was
the visiting
of Persia.

The prover
of the Atheniens

Favour folo-
weth fortune

The doinges
of Alcibiades
against his
owne country

banished man to Elis. Afterward when he understode þ he was not only condēned, but also accursed by the prestes of al þ orders of religion, he wente to Lacedemon, & there perswaded the king to warre vpon the Atheniens, nowe vexed and troubled with their misadventures in Sicilie.

Immediately wherupon, ali the kingdomes of Grece gathered them selues togither, as it had bin to quench some common fire, so great hatred hadde the Atheniens gotten thzough theyr vnameasurable desire of dominion. Darius also the kyng of Persians, remembryng the hatred that his father & graundfather bare to this Citie, entred in league with the Lacedemonians, by Tissaphernes lieutenaunte of Lydia, and promised to beare the charges of the warre. This was the pretēce of entraunce in league with þ Greekes, but in very deede he doubted, least when the Lacedemonians had overcome the Atheniens, they would set vpon him. What wonder is it then if the estate of Athens were so flourishing, since that to oppresse that one Citie, all the power of the whoie East bent themselves togither. Yet notwithstanding they were not as cowardest overcome wpythout great bloudshed, but fightynge to the vetermost, and some whyles also getting the vpper hande, they were at lēgth rather by vnstabilitie of fortune consumed, thē by plain force vanquished. In the beginning of the warre not so muche but even theyr owne fellows forsake them: as it is daily sene, that wheras fortune semeth to fauoure, thither a' so, do mennes hartes encline. Alcibiades also farthered this warre that was moued againste his countrie, with al the power he might, not like a common souldier, but like a puissaunt captain. For takinge with him x. shippes he sailed into Asia and there by the authoritie of his name, compelled the Cities that were tributary vnto the Atheniens, to turne to the Lacedemonians. For they knew wel that he was a man of great power in his owne countrie, and they thought he was not the lesse by reason of his banishment: supposing him not so much to be taken from

from the Atheniens, as to be deliuered for a captaine to the Lacedemonians: and so they set his winnings agaynst his losses. But amonge the Lacedemonians, Alcibiades greate promesse wan him moze enuy then thanke. Therefoze when the Princes laid wait secretly to kill hym by treason, as an eunemye to theyr glozy: Alcibiades hauing knowledge therof by the wife of king Agis (with whome he had committed adultery,) fled to Tissaphernes, kyng of Darius lieutenaunte: with whome thzough hys curtesye and lowly behauior he quickly wound him self in. For he was then in the flourishing tyme of his youth, and for hys beautie, personage and eloquence, amonge all the Atheniens was none like vnto him. But he was better in winning frendship then in keeping: because that euer at the firste, his euill condicions were cloked vnder the shadow of eloquence. Therfoze he perswaded Tissaphernes that he shoulde not allowe to muche wages and band to the flecte of the Lacedemonians, and that the Ionians ought to be called to part of the charges, for whose liberty (when they payed tribute to þ Atheniens) this warre was first begon. Moreover that the Lacedemonians oughte not to haue too much helpe, considering he prepared for an other mannes victozy and not for his owne, wherefoze the warre oughte so farre forth to be maintained, that it bee not broken by for want of thinges necessary. For as longe as þ Greekes, were thus at debate among them selues, the kyng of Persia shoulde haue the Lawe in his owne hand to make peace or warre as he liked. And he shoulde overcome them wpyth their owne power, whom he could not overcome with all the power he was able to make of his owne. And allone as the warre were ended, (whiche way so euer the game went) he shoulde be compelled to haue warre with the conquerours. Therfoze Grece was to bee suffered to spende themselves in cyuill warres, that they mighte haue no leysure to make warre abrode to inuade forain Realmes.

He deserued
no lesse.

The nature and
manners of Al-
cibiades.

Mark the
fittle head of
Alcibiades.

C.ij.

To

To the performance wherof eyther part was to be maintained in strength to match his aduersarie, and the weaker to be ayded with newe succours. For it was not to be thought that the Lacedemonians could continue in rest, if they might get the vpper hand, considering they had proclaimed them selues al ready, the defenders of the liberty of Greece. This Oratton liked Tisaphernes verpe wel, wherbypon he allowed them not so liberall expenses, neither sent he forth all the kinges flete, least he should either geue them the victorie out of hand, or els constrain them to breake by the warres. In the meane season Alcibiades did thus much for his countrey men, that when the Atheniens sente their Ambassadors vnto him, he promised to get them the kinges fauour, if so be it that the administration of the common wealth were remoued from the people, into the Senatours handes. Hopinge therby, that yf the Citie agreed well, he should be chosen captaine of the warre by theyr common assente, or els yf there arose any variaunce betwene the two estates, he should be called to the ayde of the one parte. But the Atheniens seing y danger of the war that they were wapped in, had more respect of their safegard then of theyr honour.

Therfore with the good will of the people, the gouernance of the common wealth was put into the handes of the Senatours. Who throughe a certaine pryde, naturally engraffed in that estate, dealinge cruelly wth the people, and euery of them taking bypon him like a Lorde, the souldiours called home the banished Alcibiades, and made him Admirall of the Sea. Wheruppon immediatly, hee sente word to Athens, that hee woulde incontinently come thither with his hoste, and take the gouernement out of the foure hundred Senatours handes, whither they woulde or no, but lesse they surrendred it by of theyr owne accorde.

The greate men of the citie beyng soze troubled with this message, first attempted to betraye the Towne to the

the Lacedemonians, which thing being not able to bring to passe, they willingly forsooke their Countrey, and became as banished men. Alcibiades therfore hauing deliuered his countrey from inwarde sedition, furnished bys ships with all diligence possible, and so proceeded into warfare against the Lacedemonians. Now Mindarus & Pharnabazus the Captaines of the Lacedemonians, with their shippes furnished likewise, awaiting his comminge, the battell beyng fought, the victorie fel to the Atheniens. In this conflict the greater parte of the armye, and almoste al the captains of theyr enemies were slayne, and lxxx. ships taken. Within fewe dayes after the Lacedemonians remouinge from the sea vnto the Lande, were esloones in an other encounter put to the worse. Throughe which dyscomfure beyng greatly afflicted, they sued for peace. The graunt whereof was letted by the trauaile of suche as had gayn by the warres. In the meane season the Carthaginenses made warre in Sicily, by reason whereof the Siracusanes were faine to cal home their succors to defend their own. The Lacedemonians beyng therby vtterly destitute, of all ayde, Alcibiades with his victorious nauy, wasted the coaste of Asia, foughte battells in diuers places, and euery where gettinge the victorie, recovered the Cypres, whiche were turned from the Atheniens, and wynnynge diuers a new, subdued them to the dominion of the Atheniens. And so hauing recovered his aunciente renowne in battell on the Sea, wth augmentation thereof by conquestes on the lande, he returned to Athens to the greate reioyce of all his Citizens. In all these battells were taken of their enemies, two hundred shippes and a greate pray. To beholde this triumphant return of the army all the people came oute of the Citie by heapes, praylinge highly all the souldiours, but in especially wondring at Alcibiades. On him all the Citie gased, on him they earnestly fastned theyr eyes, as thoughe theye could neuer haue scene ynoughe of him, bym they behelde as one

C.ii.

sent

Note his
craffy dealing.

Alcibiades is
called out of
exile, & made
Lieutenant
generall of
the vvaies.

Alcibiades o-
uercometh
the Lacedemo-
nians.

His trium-
phant retorne
vnto Athens.

The foune
of Alcibiades

sent from heauen, and as it were the victorie it selfe, theye
prayed his noble actes done for his countrey, no lesse ex-
tolling the thinges which he did againste the same, in the
time of his banishment, making his excuse them selues,
as that he did them in his anger and prouoked them unto.
It is a miraculous thinge to see, that there should be in one
man such power and vaite, as to bee the only cause of y
ouerthrow of so mighty a kingdome, and of the setting vp
of the same againe, victorie neuer following that side that he
tooke, and fortune wonderfull enclining that waye that
he went. Wherefore they honoured him not as a man, but
as a God, they strived with themselves, whether they had
banished him more spitefully, or called him home agayne
more honorably. They brought the same Gods with them
for ioy to welcome him home, by whiche not longe before
they had accursed him. And who of late they had forbidde
all mans helpe, now and if they could, they would haue set
him in heauen. They recompense his despite with honour,
his harmes with rewardes, and his curses with blessings.
There was no talke among them of the battells that hee
losse in Sicill, but of the victories that he wonne in Grece.
There was no speaking of the shippes that he had lost, but
of the shippes that hee had taken. The Syracusanes were
forgotten, and there was no talke but of his conquestes in
Ionia & Hellespont. Thus was Alcibiades neuer meanly
hated, nor meanly honoured of his countrey men.

While these thinges were a doing, amouge the Lace-
demonians Lyfander was made captaine generall of the
warrs both by sea and by land. And in steede of Tissapher-
nes, Darius King of Persia had made his sonne Cyrus
Lieutenat of Ionia & Lydia, who aided the Lacedemoni-
ans so such wise both with men and money, that he brought
them in hope to recouer theyr former estate. Being there-
fore thus increased in strength, and hearing that Alcibia-
des was gone into Asia with a naup of a hundred shippes,
whyles

whiles he was there spoiling the countrey, whiche was
growne riche by long continuance of peace, and tooke no
breede to his souldiours, but suffered them for couetousnesse
of pray, to disperse theselues where they listed, as though
there had bene no perill to be feared, they set suddenly vp
pon them, and made suche a slaughter amouge them as
they were skatered, that the Atheniens toke more lesse in
that one battell, then they had done to thir enemies in
all the battells before, wherewith they were brought to such
a despayre, that forthwith they put away Alcibiades, and
chose Conon to be theyr Captaine in his stead. Thinking
them selues to haue bin vanquished not by the chaunce of
warres, but through the treason of theyr captayne more
regarding the olde displeasure, then the benefites newlye
bestowed vpon him. And that he had vanquished his enne-
mies in the former battelles, but onely to shew them what
a captayne they had despised, and to selle them the victorie
the deerer. And to say the truth, Alcibiades had so subtle a
head, and was therewith so much geuen to vice and lew-
nesse of behauiour, that it was like inough he wold make
suche a thinge. Fearinge therefore the displeasure of the
people in theyr rage, of his owne will hee banished hym
selfe agayne. Then Conon beyng put in the rowme of Al-
cibiades, hauing before his eyes what a captayne he hadde
succeeded, furnished his naup with all diligence and warp-
nesse that mighte bee. But there wanted men to furnishe
the shippes, for the stoutest and strongest souldiours
were lost in the foraging of Asia. Notwithstanding, olde
menne and yrdlesse boyes were armed, and so filled vpp
the number of souldiours, without anye strength of the
hoste. Yet for all that, they letted not to encounter with
theyr enemies, by whome like weak and unable sould-
diours, they were every where beaten downe, or els ta-
ken runninge awaye. And there was suche a destruction,
what of them that were slayne, and what of them that
were taken, that not onely the Emperre but even the verie

Ouerfighte
pernicious in
a Captaine.

Alcibiades is
banished a-
gaine.

A great sla-
ughter of the
Atheniens.

name of Atheniens seemed to bee utterly extingue. By the which battell they were broughte to so lowe an ebbe, and left so bare, by reason all they warlike men wer consumed and spent, that they were driuen to let their city to straungers, to let their bondmen free, and to geue pardon to such as were condemned to dye. And with this route of raskals, wherof they army was compact, they (which late ly befoze were Lordes of al Grece,) were now skarse able to maintaine they owne liberty. Neuerthelesse they determined yet once againe to trye they fortune vppon the sea. So stout were they stomacks, that wheras a little befoze they were in despaire of they owne safegarde, they were now in good hope to get the victorie. But those were not the souldiours that were able to uphold the honoz of Athens, neyther was that the power wherewith they were wont to geue their enemies the ouerthrowe, neither was there such knowledge of feats in armes in those that had bin trayned in pyson, and not in the camp. Therefore they were all eyther slaine or taken prisoners. The captayne Conon which escaped alone from the battell, fearing the cruelty of his countrey men, toke viii. shippes, and sayled to Euagoras king of Cyprus. But the captayne of the Lacedemonians hauing atcheued all thinges prosperously, proudly reioysing at the aduersity of his ennemies, sent the shippes that he had taken (with all the boty gotten in the warres) decked in maner of triumph vnto Lacedemō, & receyued by composition all the cities that were tributary to the Atheniens, whych as yet continued in they obedience, because they knew not to what end the warre would come, leuing nothing vnder y^e dominion of the Atheniens, saue only the bare city. Of all the which miseries when tidings came to Athens, all y^e people forsaking their houses ran by & down the city amazed, one asking an other what tidings, & seeking for him that brought the first newes, not the chyldren want of discretion, nor the old men want of strength, nor y^e women weakenesse of nature, could keepe at home,

The courage
of Thatheni-
ans.

Their last o-
uerthrowe
and slaughter.

A Rhetorical
description of
the afflicted sta-
te of Athens.

home, so soze did the feeling of that misfortune pierce vnto al ages. They met together in the market stede, and there all night long renewed their comon misfortune with lamentation. Some made mone for their brothers, some for their sonnes, some for their fathers, some for their kynsefolke, and other some for frendes dearer then kinsefolke, and amonge their priuate mischaunces, was alwayes repeated the common misfortune, looking for none other but present and utter destruction both to them selues and to their countrey, esteeming them that were alieue to be in worse case then them that were dead. Eche person settinge befoze their eyes, besiegement, hunger, and the arrogant enemy, hauing them in his hād to worke his pleasure vpon. And therewith came to their remembraunce, the ouerthrow and burning of their city, the captiuitie of themselves, and the most miserable bondage which they were all like to be brought vnto. Thinking the first ouerthrow of the citie by the Persians, to be counted happy in comparison, in the which their wiues & chyldren, parentes and kinsefolke remayning in safe garde, they lost nothyng but their houses: wheras now they had no ships left to flee vnto for succour as they had done befoze: throughe whose helpe they might be defended til they were able to build a fairer Citie. And as they were thus bewailing they mysfortune and misery, their enemies comminge vpon them enuironed the towne with a siege, and constrained them greatly with hunger. For it was well known that there were not many souldiours left alieue within the towne, and they were so straghtly looked to, that no new succours could be brought in. By which mischiewes the Atheniens being brought low after long famine and daily pestilence desired peace. There was long debating betwene the Lacedemonians and their adherentes whether it was to be graunted or no. When many gaue counsell vnto to rote out the name of the Atheniens, and to set the City on fire, the Spartanes said they would not condescend, that of
the

Athens is be-
sieged.

Peace is
granted to the
Atheniens.

It was the
490. before
the coming
of Christ,
Eusebius.
This was
the young
Demis, of
whom I read
in the xxi.
Booke.
Athens is op-
pressed vvyth
tyranny.

The final end
of Alcibiades

The crueltye
of the tyrants

the two eyes of Greece the one should be put out. And so they graunted them peace vppon condition theye shoulde cast downe the armes of the wallis that stretched toward the haue of Piræum, deliuer vp al their shippes that were left, and receiue at their hand xxx. rulers to gouerne their common wealtb. Upon these articles the citie was peiced to the Lacedemonians who committed the ordering ther- of to the discretion of Lyfander. This yeare was worthy to be noted, both for the winning of Athens, for the death of Darius king of Persia, & also for the banishment of Dyonistiraunt of Sicil. The estate of Athens being thus altered, the estate of the people was altered also. The xxx. rulers of the common wealtb fell to tyranny. For at their first comming they chose them a garde of three M. men, wheras in all the citie remained scarce as many mo. they were so wasted & consumed by y warres afoze. And yet not so content, as though this band were to weake to kepe the citie in awe, they borrowed 700. souldiours of the conquerors. Then they began the slaughter of y citiez at Alcibiades, leasse vnder pretence of restoringe their libertye bee might inuade the common wealtb againe. For hauing intelligence that he was going toward Artaxerxes kyng of Persia, they sent certayne after hym in poste, to cutt hym off by the way, by whom he was overtaken. But because theye could not kill him openly, they set fire on his chamber wher he slept, and burnt him by quick. The tirauntes beinge reliued oute of feare of this reuenger, with their slaughter, extortion, and rauishments, made euen a spoile of the miserable and wretched outcastes that were left in the Citie. The which their doinge when they vnderstoode to displease one of their fellows, whose name was Theramenes to the terror of all the rest they put hym to death. Wherevppon glad was he that might get himselfe out of the City, in so muche that all Greece was full of banished men of Athens, and yet euen that one onely refuge, was taken from the poore wretches. For the Lacedemonians had geuen

straight

straight charg, that no citie should be so bold as to receiue the banished men of Athens. Nevertheless they withpiewe themselves all vnto Argos & Thebes, where theye not onely liued in dainger duringe the time of their exile but also receiued hope of recourting their Countreys. There was among the banished men one Thrasibulus a stout, man, and one that came of a noble house, who thinkinge himselfe bound to aduventure for his country sake, though it were with the recovery of his life assembled, a compaigne of his banished countrey men, and tooke the castle Phile in the territorie of Athens. And he wanted not the fauour of certayne Cities that had pittie of their miserable estate and cruel handling. For Iphimias prince of the Thebans although he could not aide them openly with the power of his countrey, helped them with suche treasure as hee had of his owne. And Lyfias an Orator of Syracuse beinge the same time also a banished man, sent CCC. souldiours well furnished at his owne charges, to the ayde of the country of all eloquence. Therfoze anon after was a sharpe encounter.

But forasmuch as the one part fought earnestlye for the recovery of their countrey: and the other parte negligently for the maintenaunce of other menns tyranny, the tirauntes were put to the worse, and retirynge into the Citie whiche they had in manner wasted alreadye wpythe slaughter, and sacked it. This done, hauing al the Atheniens in a gelousie of treason, theye commaunde them to remoue oute of the Citie, and dwell in the arunes of the wallis that were broken downe, maintaynyng their superioritye with foraine souldiours. Afterwarde theye wente about to corrupt Thrasibulus, promising to make hi fellow of theyr Empire: whiche thing whē they could not bynyng to effecte, they sente for ayde to the Lacedemonians, at the cominge whereof, they made a newe encounter. In whiche Critios and Hyppomachus the cruellest tirauntes of them all were slaine, The residue also

The home of
Thrasibulus
to his coun-
trye

The like ex-
ample of Ly-
fias.

Vncorrupted
faythfulness.

being

being vanquished, when their army (wherof the most part were Atheniens) fledde toward the citie, Thrasibulus calling to them as loud as he could cry, demaunded why they should flee from him hauing obtained the victoꝝ, and not rather helpe him as the defendoꝝ of the liberty of them all: he had them remember, that his souldioꝝ wer their own Citizens, and not their enemies. And that he had not taken weapon in hand, to the entent to take any thing from them being vanquished, but to the entent to restore them such things as had ben taken from them by others, professing that he made warre against the xxx. tyrants, and not against the citie. Moreouer he put them in remembrance of the kinned, of the lawes, of the rites and ceremonies common amongst them, and of the companionship that had bin betwixt them in so many battels in tymes past: beseeching them to haue pittie vpon their banished countrey men. And if they coulde finde in their hartes to beare the yoke of bondage so patiently themselves, he besought the to restore him his countrey, and he would set them at liberty againe. He did so much with this perswasion, that when their army was returned into the citie, they commaunded the xxx. tyrantes to depart vnto Eleusis, and in their steade substituted other x. to gouerne the common wealth. Who nothing abashed at the ensample of their predecessors, fell to the same cruelty that they had exercised. While these things were a doing, word was brought to Lacedemon, that y Atheniens were harpe set vpon warre. The which to repress they sent their king Pausanias, who hauing compassion of the banished people, restored the wretched citizens to their countrey againe, commaunding the x. tyrants to remoue out of the Citie vnto Eleusis to the residue of their companie. Peace being by this meanes established, within a few dayes after, the Tyrantes (disdaynyng as much the restitution of the banished Citizens, as their own depollings and banishment, as though an other mannes liberty had ben their bondage) made warre againste the

Athe,

Atheniens. But when they cam forth to communication, as though they would haue taken vpon them their preeminency and soveraigntie againe, they were by a pollicie taken and slaine as a sacrifice for peace. The people which they had commaunded out of the citie, were called in againe. And so the citie whiche was dispersed into dyuers members, was at length brought into one body agayne. And to the intent no dissention might grow vpon thynges past, they were all swozne to forget and surye under foote all olde debate and grudge. In the meane while the Thebanes and Corinthians sent ambassadoꝝ to the Lacedemonians, demaunding their portion of the prayes and booties taken in the warres, wherof they had helped for their part to beare out the charges and daungers. Hauing deniall of their requestes, they did not immediatly proclayme open warre against the Lacedemonians, but they conceiued such an inward displeasure in their hartes, y it might wel be vnderstood, that they meant no lesse but to make war when they sawe theyꝝ time. About the same tyme almost dyed Darius king of Persia, leauing behind him his two sonnes Artaxerxes and Cyrus.

He bequeathed by his last wil vnto Artaxerxes the kingdome, and vnto Cyrus the cities wherof he was at y time ruler. But Cyrus thought his father did him wrong in that bequest, and therfore priuily prepared warre against his brother. Artaxerxes hauing knowledge thereof, sente for him, and not regarding hys counterfainte pretence of innocency, that he purposed no such matter, bound him in fetters of golde, and had put him to death, had not his mother letted him. Cyrus therfore being set at large, prepared not warre as now any more secretly, but openly, nor by dissimulation, but by open defiance: and gate greate ayde vnto him. The Lacedemonians remembryng that by his meanes, they were greatly aided in their warres with the Atheniens (like men ignoraunt against whom the warre was rased, determined to sende aide vnto Cyrus,

The worthy
reuerend of
tyranny.

The Atheni-
ens are res-
tored to their
country a-
gain.

Cause of
grudge be-
twene the Co-
rinthians and
Lacedemoni-
ans.

The Death of
Darius the
king.

The wicked
war betwene
Cyrus and
Artaxerxes.

The tyrants
are banished.

The fifthe booke of

When occasion should require, seeking both for thanks at Cyrus hand, and also for pardon at Artaxerxes hand if he should get the victory, in as much as they had attempted nothing against him openly. But in the battell such was their chance, that the two brothers meeting together, encountered, & Artaxerxes was wounded by Cyrus, but by the swiftnesse of his horse he was deliuered from danger, and his brother Cyrus was overthrowen by the kings garde, and slaine. And so Artaxerxes getting the victory, obtained the spoile of his brothers warre and his army also. In that battell there were x. D. Greeks that came to the aide of Cyrus, who in the winge where they stood, gat the upper hande, and after the death of Cyrus, could neither be overcome of so great an host perforce, nor yet be entrapped by policy. But in their returne homeward, through so many wilde & sauage nations & so long a iourney, they defended themselves by their manhood, even unto the borders of their country.

Cyrus is
slayne.

Fol. 36

The sixth booke of Iustine.

The Contentes of the sixth Booke.

THE Lacedemonians coner the empire of Asia: Tyssaphernes is displaced of his office of Lieutenants: Conon of Athens is made Admirall of the Persian fleet: the Lacedemonians send for aide into Egypt: Agesilaus is sent against Conon: Conon overcometh Lyfander upon the sea: Athens is set at libertie againe. Epaminondas overcometh the Lacedemonians, and sleeth Lyfander: Agesilaus wresteth the victory from the Thebanes, the Atheniens send Iphicrates with an hoste to the aide of the Thebanes, the Lacedemonians are brought to utter dispayre. Conon is receiued with great ioy of his citizens. Athens is repayed. Artaxerxes proclaimeth a generall peace through all Greece, and setteth all the cities at liberty: he maketh warre against Egypt. Rome is taken by the French men, warre riseth betwene the Lacedemonians and Arcadians, and is ceased of their owne accord. Epaminondas Duke of Thebes inuadeth Lacedemon, and is repulled by the olde men, Agesilaus encountreth with him. Epaminondas is slayne, with whom the prouesse of the Greekes decayeth.



THE Lacedemonians accordynge to the nature of man (whiche the more it hath, the more it coveteth) not content that their power was doubled by conquering the Atheniens, beganne to practise howe to attayne the Emppire of all Asia, the moste parte whereof, was vnder the dominion of the Persians. Therfore Dercillides being appointed Lieutenante generall for these warres, when he saw that he must haue to do agaynst two of Artaxerxes Lieutenantes, Pharnabazus and Tyssaphernes, which had about them in a

Ambition is
neuer satisfied

The warres
betwene the
Lacedemoni-
ans and the
Persians

dineste

riues the whole power of the mightiest Countries in all the world, thought it good to make the one of the his friend. The matter for his purpose seemed Tyssaphernes, a man both of more experience and activitie then the other, and also better furnished with the souldiours that belonged sometime to king Cyrus. After communication had, agreement was made vpon certaine conditions, that he should not intermeddle with the wars. Pharnabazus being bere-with agreed, complained thereof to the king their master, declaring how he wished not the Lacedemonians when they entered into Asia, but nourished them there at the kinges charges, and that he bargained with them to delay the warres which they took in hande, as though the damage therof should not equally rebound to the displeasure of the whole Empire. He said it was an vnseemely thing, that the warre was not gone through with, but bought of, and that the enemy was byed of for money, and not rather giuen away by dint of sword. When he had by this complaint brought the king in displeasure with Tyssaphernes, he counceiled him to make his Admirall of the sea in stead of Tyssaphernes, Conon of Athens, who since the tyme his countrey was conquered, liued in exile at Cyprus. For though the Atheniens, were bereft of power and riches, yet notwithstanding their experience in guiding a nauy remaineth still vnto them. And if one were to bee chosen among them all, there was not a better then Conon. Whereupon he had deliuered vnto him **CCCC** talentes, with commission to make Conon Admirall of the kynges flecte. The Lacedemonians hauing intelligence hereof, sent an ambassade to the king of Egypt, desiring him to sende Hercymones to theyr ayde with a number of ships. He sent them a **C**. galleis, and **v**. **C**. quarters of coyne: and other of their confederates also sente them great succors. But vnto this great army against so great a Captaine, there wanted a meete gouernour. Therefore when the confederates of the Lacedemonians requested

Tyssaphernes is accused to the kyng.

Conon is made admirall of the Persian flecte.

to haue to their general Agesilaus (at y^e time king of y^e Lacedemonians.) The Lacedemonians debated the matter a great while, whether they might make him generall or no, by reason of the answer of the Oracle at Delphos, the effect wherof was, that the empire should come to an ende, at such time as the rovall estate halte: for Agesilaus was lame of one foote. At the length they determined that y^e were better for their kyng to halte in his goinge, then the kingdom to haule for want of a meete gouernour. When Agesilaus was sent into Asia with a great host of men, I cannot thinke that euer any couple of Captaines were so well matched together as they two were. For both in y^eares, in prowesse, in wisdome, and in pollicy, they were in manner all one, and in honoz for their enterprises they were both alike. And although fortune had made them equal in all things, yet she preserved eche of them vnc conquered of other. Great was the furniture of them both to the warres, and great were both their attempts and do-inges. But the souldiours of Conon raised a mutinie against him, because the kinges lieutenantes before tyme had bin wont to abide them of their wages, demanding their duties so muche the earnestlier, in that they took vpon them to serue in so greate warres vnder so noble a Chiefetayne. Conon therefore hauinge long tyme sued in vayne to the king by his letters, at length went vnto him hymselfe. Whose presence and speache he might not be suffered to come vnto, because hee would not worshipp him after the maner of the Persians. Neuerthelesse hee entreated with hym by messengers, lamentynge that the warres of so riche a Prince, should bee followed for want of money, and that hauing as puissant an armie as his enemies, hee should bee overmatched in money, wherof he had more aboundaunce then they, and that hee should bee founde weake in that kinde of strength, wherof hee farre exceeded them. Therefore he demanded to haue the disbursing of the money hymselfe, because it would be

The prayer of Conon to the king.

A mutinie for non payment of Wages.

The sute of Conon to the king.

trould be very hurtfull, to put the doing thereof into many mens hands. When he had obtained the treasure he returned to his flate, and immediately set his matters a-broode. Many thinges he adventured valiantly and many thinges he atchieued luckily. He wasted his enemies lands, won their cities, and as a tempest bare downe all thynges before him. With which his doinges the Lacedemonians, being afraid, determined to call home Agesilaus out of Asia, to the defence of his owne countrey. In the mean season Lyfander who Agesilaus (at his setting forth) had left as his vicegerent for the defence of the countrey, assembled a great navy, & furnished it with all the power he could, purposing to try the fortune of battell. Conon also (so far as it was the first tyme that hee should encounter with the power of his enemy) took great care in ordering and appointyng of his men, and this contention was not all onely among the captaines, but also even amonge the Souldiours. And Conon the Captaine himselfe, was so carefull for the Persians, as for his owne countrey. For like as when the Atheniens were at an afterdeale, he was the overthrowe of their dominion: so was it his desire to bee the setter vp of it againe, and to recouer his countrey by victorie, which he had lost by being vanquished. Which thing would redound so much the more to his honour, in that he should not haue the Atheniens his countrymen to fight vnder him, but the power of a foraine Prince, so that the peril and losse should be the kinges, and the gaine of the victorie should be his Countreyes, and he himselfe attaine honour after a contrary manner to other that had bin Captaynes in his countrey before tymes. For whereas they defended the countrey by vanquishing the Persians, he should restore it to her former estate, by making the Persians conquerours. On the other side Lyfander, beside that he was nere of kinne to Agesilaus was also an earnest follower of his vertues, endeuoring by all meanes possible, not to stepp aside from his noble examples, and from

The doinges
of Conon.

The circum-
spectiue of
the two Cap-
tains Lyfan-
der & Conon

from the brightnesse of his renown & glory, but so to behaue himselfe, that the Empire gotten in so many battels and in so many hundred yeares, might not bee overthrowen through his default in the turning of a hand. The kinges and the Souldiours were all in one perplexitye, not so much for doubte of losing the wealth they had gotten, as for feare least the Atheniens should recouer their own againe. But the sorer that the battell was, the more glorious was the victorie of Conon. The Lacedemonians being put to the worse toke them to flight, and their garrisons were ledde away to Athens. The people were restored to their former estate, and their bondage taken away from them, many Cities also were recouered to their Empire. This was vnto the Atheniens, a beginning of the recoverie of their auncient preeminence, and vnto the Lacedemonians an ende of receiuyng theirs. For as though that with their dominion they had lost their prowesse also, their neighbours began to haue them in disdaine.

First of all therefore the Thebanes with helpe of the Atheniens, reared warre agaynst them. The which City out of innumerable encrease mentes, through the prowesse of their Duke Epaminondas, beganne to aspyre to the Empire of all Greece. There was therefore betwene them a battell on the Lande, in which the Lacedemonians had lyke successe as in the encounter vpon the sea agaynst Conon. In the same conflicte Lyfander (who was Captayne the same time that the Lacedemonians subdued the Atheniens,) was slayne. Pausanias also an other of the Captaynes of the Lacedemonians beinge appeared of treason, fledde into exile. The Thebanes therefore, hauinge gotten the vpper hande, ledde their whole hoste to the Citye of Lacedemon, thinkyng easily to haue won it, because they were abandoned of all their ayde, wherby thyng the Lacedemonians fearynge, sente for their kynge Agesilaus) who atchieued manye greates enterpryses in Asia, (to come to the defence of his Countrey. For

The prayse
of Lyfander

The Lacede-
monians are
vanquished
on the sea.

After misfor-
tune follow-
eth disdaine

Lyfander is
slayne.

ff. ii. after

Agelause
conquereth the
victory being
lost.

The commen-
dation of Iphi-
crates.

Conon retur-
neth to Athens

At that time that Lyfander was slayne, they had none other
captaine in whom they durst put any confidence. Neuer-
theless because it was long ere Agelause came, they ray-
sed a power and went to meete theyr enemy. But neyther
their courages nor theyr strength was able to stand against
them, of whom they had bin put to the worse so lately be-
fore, and therefore at the first encounter they were putte to
flight. As the hoste of his country men when this discom-
fited, Agelause, the king came into the field and with his
freshe souldiours hardened in many voyages and encoun-
ters before, with little adoo wrested the victory out of his
enemies hands: Howbeit he himselfe was sore wounded.
When newes thereof came to Athens, the Athenienses (fea-
ring least if the Lacedemonians should get the upper hand
again, they should be brought to their olde estate of bon-
dage, raised a power and sent it to the aide of the Beotians
by Iphicrates a yonge gentleman not aboue tri. peres old,
but of a wonderfull towardnesse. The promise of this
younge man was meruelous and farre aboue his peeres.
For amongst all the noble and valiaunt Dukes & Cap-
taines that the Athenienses had before him, there was ne-
uer none, either of greater likelihoode, or of more ripe to-
wardnes then he was. In whome were planted not onely
the pointes of a good Captaine, but also of a good Orator.
Conon also hearing of the returne of Agelause, returned
himselfe likewise out of Asia, to waste the countrey of
Lacedemon. And so the Spartanes being enclosed on eu-
er syde with feare of the warre that continually ronge in
their eares, were brought to bitter despaire. But Conon
when he had foraged the fieldes of his enemyes, made
towards Athens. Where albeit he were welcommed with
great ioye of his country men, yet notwithstanding hee
toke more sorrow to see how his country had bin burned
and defaced by the Lacedemonians, then pleasure of the
recovery of the same after so long tyme. Therefore suche
things as were burnt downe, he builded a new with the
spoiles

spoiles of the Lacedemonians, and at the charges of his
army of the Persians, and such things as were defaced, he re-
paired again. Such was the destiny of Athens that being
before burned by the Persians, it was repayed with the
booties of the Persians, and being now defaced by the Lace-
demonians, it was repaired with the spoiles of the Lacede-
monians also, and euen cleane contrary, to haue them now
theyr fellows, whiche then were theyr enemies, & to haue
them now theyr uttermost enemies, with whom they were
then knit in most straightest league of alliance. Whyle
these things were a doing, Artaxerxes king of Persia sent
ambassadors into Greece, commaunding all parties to
cease from warre, and who so enterprised to the contrary
should be taken as his enemy. He restored vnto the cities
their libertie, and al that was their own. Which thing he
did not so much in regard of the continual labours & daily
battels of the cities, for the hatred and malice they bare
one to another: as least while he were occupied about his
wars in Egypt, (the which he moued for sending aid to the
Lacedemonians against his lieutenants,) his best should
be detained in Greece. The Grekes therefore being wried
with so many battels, were content to obey with all theyr
hartes. This yeare was notable not onely because peace
was so suddenly made through al Greece, but also because
the same time the cite of Rome was taken by the French
men. But the Lacedemonians being now at rest, & lying
in awaite for aduantage, espyinge the Arcadians from
home, surprised a castle of theirs, and put a garriso of theyr
owne men therein. The Arcadians therefore with the helpe
of the Thebans, challenged their losses by the sword. In
that conflict Archidamus captayne of the Lacedemonians
was wounded, who seeing his men beaten downe, as van-
quished, demaunded by an Iheralt the deade bodies of his
men that were slaine that they might be buried. For this
is a token among the Grekes of geuyng the victory, with
the which yelving the Thebans beinge contented, blew

An vniuersall
peace is en-
toynd to al
Greece.

It was the
yeare before
the birth of
Christ, 389.
Euseb.

The token of
victory geuen

The courage
of the old men
of Lacedemon

to the retraite and pursued no further. Within a few
dayes after, neither partie attempting anye displeasure,
when a man would haue thought they had ben at a truce,
as it were by a secret consent and agreement among them
selues, while the Lacedemonians were busied in other
warres against their neighbors, the Thebanes vnder the
conduct of their captain Epaminondas, purposed to haue
won their citie ere they had bin aware of it. Whereupon in
the beginning of the night, they set forth as close as they
could deuise towards Lacedemon. But yet they could not
take them vniwares. For the olde men and other folkes
that were vniuersite for the warres, hauing vnderstanding
of the approche of their enemies, met them in armour at
the entrance of the gate: and against xv. M. souldiers, not
aboue a C. olde and forwoone men put themselves to the
encounter. So much courage and strength doth the presen-
t sight of a mans country and household geue him, and so
much the presence of thinges geue men greater sto-
rnaches, then the remembrance of them being away. For
when they saw within what, and for what they stood at
defence, they determined either to winne or to die. A few
old men therfore held them tacker, whom ere the next mor-
ning all the youth they had was not able to withstand. In
that battell two of the Capitaines of their enemies were
slaine. In the meane while word was brought that Age-
silas was come, whereupon the Thebanes retired, and it
was not long after but they encountered againe, For the
young men of Lacedemon being incensed with the pro-
uocall and valiaunt demour of the olde men, could not bee
withelde, but that they would needes try the matter im-
mediatly in open field, when as the victorie was alreadye
the Thebanes. And Epaminondas while he executed the
office, not onely of a capitaine, but also of a valiant sould-
iour was greuously wounded. At the reporte whereof,
the one partie was so stricken in feare, and the other par-
tie for joy was so amazed, that both of them as it were by a
peaceable

Epaminondas
is wounded
to death.

peaceable consent departed the field. Within few dayes
after Epaminondas deceased, with whom the strength of
the common wealth decayed. For in like manner as the
blade of the edge of a weapon, the rest of it is able to do
no great harme: euen so this Duke being dead, who was
as it were the edge of the common wealth of Thebes, the
strength therof was appalled and in manner dulled, in so
much that they seemed not so much to haue lost him, as al-
together to haue perished with him. For neither before
this Dukes time atchieued they any notable conquest, nor
afterwarde were famous for their prowesse, but for
their own slaughters. So as it appeared manifestly, that
the glory and renowne of his country, did both springe by
with him, and die with him. And a man is not able to iudge
whether he were a better man of his handes, or of his life.
For alwayes he sought soueraintie to his countrey, and
not to himselfe, and he was such a sparer of mony, that he
wanted wherewith to bury him. And he was euen as coue-
tous of prayse, as of mony. For authoritie was laid vpon
him euen agaynste his will. And he behaved hymselfe in
such wyse in his authoritie, that he seemed not to receyue
but rather to geue honour to the same. Furthermore he
was so studious of learning, and so instructed in the
knowledge of philosophy, that it was a wonder to see how
a man bred and brought vp in learning should come by so
singuler experience in seates of warre. Neither by his
death dissent from his trade of liuyng. For being brought
into his tent halfe dead, when he was come to himselfe a-
gaine, and had recouered his speache, he demaunded no-
thing of suche as stood about him, but whether his enne-
mies had taken his shield from him when he was felled:
when he vnderstode it was saued, he commaunded it to be
brought to him, & as the pertaker of all his trauels & glory
he kissed it. Then he enquired againe which part had won
the field, and hearing that the Thebanes had gotten it, hee

J. liii.

said

The prayse of
Epaminondas
in vnderstand-
ing expressed the
Image of a
good captaine
and of a well
magistrate.

The wordes
of Epaminon-
das at his
death.

said all was well, and so as it were reioysing for his coun-
treis sake, he gaue by the ghost. By the death of this man
the promesse of the Atheniens also decayed. For after the
tyme that he was gone, whose sweetest they were wont
to follow, then geuing themselves all together to slothe
and idleness, lashed oute the common reuenues, not vpon
ships and men of warre as they had done in tymes past,
but in feast dayes and holy dayes, and in making prepara-
tion for pageants and enterludes: gathering themselves
together into the Theaters, to beholde the famous stage
Players and Poetes, visiting oftener the stage then the
campe, and setting more by Artists & Oratours, then
by captaynes. Then the common treasure wherewith men
of warre and Mariners were wont to be maintained, be-
gan to be deuided among the people of the city. By means
wherof it came to passe, that while the Grekes gaue them-
selves to idleness, the name of the Macedones which be-
fore time was vile and obscure, spronge by and grewe to
great honour, & that Philip who had bin thye peares
in hostage at Thebes, being instructed in all chi-
ualry by Epaminondas and the Pelopidanes,
laid the kingdome of Macedonie as a yoke
of bondage, vpon the neckes both of
Grece and of Asia.

The Contentes of the seuenth Booke.



Entreateth of Macedone and of the kynges therof.
Caranus following a herd of goates, vvineth the ci-
tie Edyssa, he chaungeth the name therof, maketh it the
head of Macedone, and subdueth diuers kyngs after
him raygueth Perdiccas and prophecieth of his poste-
ritie, Argeus taketh his place, and leaueth the crowne
to his sonne Europe, the Macedones overcome the Illicians, Amin-
thas succedeth, vvhose son Alexander killeth the Persian Ambassa-
dors sent by Darius, of vvhom mencion is made in the first and secod
bokes. Bubares marieth Alexanders sister. Amyntas succedeth Alex-
ander the mother killeth her ovne children. Philip is brought vp
at Thebes, and after vvard is crowned kyng, he vanquisheth his borde-
rars, conquereth the Thessalians, marieth Olympias the mother of gre
at Alexander, and vvineth Methone.



Macedonie in ancient tyme vvas cal-
led Aemathia after þ name of Aema-
thius king of that country, who was
the first that gaue any notable profe
of his promesse in those parts. As this
country encreased by litle and litle,
so the boundes therof were verpe na-
rowe. The inhabitants were called
Pelagians, and the Countrey it self Bæotia. But after ward
throughe the promesse of the kinges, & manhood of þ peo-
ple, first by subduinge theyr neighbors, and shortlye after
other people and nations thempire thereof was enlarged
euen to the uttermost borders of the East. In the region of
Peonie (whiche nowe is a portion of Macedonie) reigned
by report Telegonus þ father of Astriopeus, whose name
we here spoken of in the battel of Troy among the noble
defendours of the Citie. On a nother side in Europe reig-
ned a king called Europe. Caranus also with a great mul-
titude of Grekes, being commaunded by thaunswer of the
Oracle to seeke an habitation in Macedony when he came
into Aemathia following a herd of Goats that fled out of
a shour of rain, entred and wanne the Citie of Edyssa ere the
men

The first
king of Ma-
cedonie.

men of the towne perceiued his comming, by reason of
great misse of the storme wherupon calling to minde
the answer of the Oracle, by which he was commaunded to seke
a kingdome where goats should be his guides, he appoin-
ted it to be the seat of his kingdom. And euer after hee ob-
serued deuouly that whither so euer hee led anye host, hee
would haue the same goats before his standerbe, that as
they were the autos of his kingdom, so might they be also
as leaders in al his enterprises. And in remembrance of
this benefite, he chaunged the name of Edysa, and called it
Argea, & the people therof Argeades. Afterward whē he
had expelled Midas (for he also held a part of Macedonie)
& diuers other kings: in stead of them al he succeeded alone,
and knitting together sundrye sortes of people, made as it
were one entire body of Macedonie and laid a strong founda-
tion for his kingdome hereafter, to grow vppon. After
him reigned Perdica, whose life was notable, & the war-
nings at his last departure (which were as the answer of an
Oracle) worthy to be remembred. For when he dyed toward
his end by reason of age: he shewed his sonne Argeus the
place where he would be buried, and willed, not only his
owne, but also al the bodies of thē that should succede him
in the kingdom, to be buried in the same place. Prophec-
ing before, that as long as the bones of his posterity were
buried there, so long the kingdome should continue in his
family. And vpon this superstition is belued, that his of-
spring failed in great Alexander, because he chaunged the
place of buriall. Argeus hauing gouerned the kyngdome
with iustice and loue of his people, left to succede him his
sonne Philip: who being surprised by hasty death left his
heir Europe a very babe. But the Macedones were at con-
tinuall warres with the Thracians & Illyrians, by whose
warres as by daily exercise being hardned, they grew so
famous in feats of armes that all their neighbours were
afraid of thē. The Illyrians, therfore despising the infancy
of the yong king, assailed the Macedones with battell: who
being

Of Perdica
and of his pro-
phesye.

Argeus.

being put to the worse, brought forth their king in his cra-
del and set him before the battell beginning the field newe
against as though the cause of their former overthrowe,
had bin the want of the kings presence to bringe them
good lucke in the battell: and that they should now downe-
fall get the upper hande and it were for none other cause
else, then that this supersticion had perswaded them they
should win. Howouer they had pity of the infant, whome
it was none other like, but they should make a captiue of
a king, if they should be overcome. Therfore when it came
to the encounter, they vanquished the Illyrians with greate
slawghter, as who should say, that in the former battelles
the Macedones wanted not courage but a king. After this
man succeeded Amyntas, a ryght renowned Prince, both
for his owne prowesse, and for the singular towardnesse
of his sonne Alexander, whome nature had endued with
so great ornaments of al vertues, that euen in the gamyn-
ges of Olympus, he bare away the prizes of diuers wagers.

In the meane season Darius king of Persia, being put to
shamefull flight, and dyuen oute of Scythia, because hee
would not seme to be dishonored euery wher by his losses
in the warres, sent Megabyzus with part of his armye to
subdue Thracia and thother kingdoms of that coast, among
which (for the slender regard & estimation therof,) he should
take Macedonie for one, he shortly executing his maysters
commaundment sent ambassadoys to Amyntas king of Ma-
cedonie, demanding hostages of peace that should be con-
cluded between thē. But the ambassadoys being gently enter-
tained when they began to wax warme with drinking, de-
sired Amyntas that soasmuch as he had made thē so sumptuous
a feast, he would also graunt them the rights of sam-
plicity, (that is to say) that their sonnes, theyr wiues and
their daughters might come & kepe the company, for that
was counted among the Persians, as a sure token & pledg
of hospitalite. At whose commynge in when the Per-
sians began to dally with them moze wantonly then was
conuenient.

The pollicie
of the Mace-
donians.

The frendlye
entertainment
of the Persian
Ambassadors

Note the modesty of the barbarous people in those dayes.

Thambassadors of Persia murdered for incontinencie.

Alliance by marriage betwene the persian and the macedons.

Amyntas the second.

conuenient: Alexander the son of Amyntas, desir'd his father in respect of his age and gravity, so withdrew himselfe from the baket, promising to alay the dailians of his quaffs wel inough: when Amyntas was gone, Alexander called out the women one by one, as though it had ben to attire then more gorgeously, and to bring them in agayne to their better lyking. In whose sted he sent in young men dyressed in Ladyes attyre, commaunding them to represse & wantonnes of thambassadors wyth theyr weapons, that they carried vnder theyr garmentes. And so the Ambassadors beyng all slayne, when Megabyzus who knewe nothing what was hapned to the, perceiued that they returned not, he sent thither Bubares with a part of his hoste as to a warre so easy and so mean, that he disdain'd to goe himselfe leaste hee shoulde take anye dishonour in fightyng, with so base a people. But Bubares befoze the battel, betge taken in loue with Amyntas daughter, left warre and fel to wedding, and so laying aside all rancour of enimitie, entered alpace with his enemies. After the departure of Bubares out of Macedonie, king Amyntas decessed. Unto whose sonne and successor, Alexander, thys affinitie of Bubares did not only procure peace at the time of Darius, but also purchaced him the sauour of Xerxes. In so much as when like a tempest he inuaded all Grece, he gaue him the roialty of all the countries betwene y mountaines of Olympus and Hemus, notwithstanding, he enlarged his kingdom as much by his own prowes, as by the liberality of the Persians. At length by order of succession & kingdom of Macedone, cam vnto Amyntas the sone of his brother Menelaus. This man also was notable for his actiuitie, ad endowed with all warlike qualities. He begate of his wife Eurydice thre sonnes, Alexander, Perdicas, and Philip the father of great Alexander, and a daughter named Euryone. And of an other wife called Cygea, he engendred Archelaus, Arideus and Mene'aus who had soze warres first with the Illyrians and after with the Olynthiant

chians. But he hadde ben cut short by the treason of his wife Eurydice (who practysing to marie with his Sonne in law, had taken vpon hir to kill hir husbando and make hir peraimor kyng). If hir daughter had not bewrayed all the mothers whoz doime and traiterous conspiracies. The old man therfoze being deliuered out of so many perils died, leauing the kingdome to his eldest sonne Alexander, who in the very entraunce of his reigne, made peace with the Illyrians for a peece of money and deliuered his brother Philip in hostage. In processe of time also by the same hostage he entered a league of peace with the Thebanes, whiche thinge was a great furtherance vnto Philip in all princely vertues, wherunto he was meruelously enclined of nature. For during the tyme he lay in hostage at Thebes, that Citie of auncient severity, he passed his childehode in the house of the most renowned captaine and Philosopher Epaminondas. Ere it was long after, Alexander was surprised and slain by the treasō of his mother Euridice, whom Amyntas (hauing taken her with the fault) had befoze pardoned, for the Childzens sake that he had by her, not knowing that in time to come she wold be their destruction. His brother Perdicas also was by lyke treason preuented. It is an horrible thinge, that for filthy lusts sake, the mother shoulde worke the death of her owne children at whose contemplation she was saued from the punishment that her wickednesse had deserued. The murder of Perdicas seemed so much more beinous, in that not even his litle childe could procure him mercy at his cruel mothers hand. Philip therfoze a longe tyme, toke not vpon him as a king, but as protector of the infant. But when the country was soze oppressed with warre, and that it wold be to late to tary for helpe untill the childe came to age, he was compell'd of the people to take the kingdom vpon him. Asone as he begone his reygne all men conceiued greates hope of him, bothe for his wit (whiche in manner all ready declared that he wold proue a great man and also for the auncient

The treason of Euridice.

The education of Philip.

A cruel and wicked mother.

Philip not taking the kingdom vpon him.

The eight Booke.

Of Iustine.

Fol 45.

The troubled
state of Ma-
cedonie.

The politike
demeanor of
Philip.

The first
vvaies of
king Philip.

Philip taketh
avvyse

ancient Prophecies of Macedonie, which said that while one of the saanes of Amintas reigned, the state of Macedonie should be most flourishing: which hope & prophecies to fulfil, there wer now no mo left aliue through the wyc-kednesse of their mother, but only he: In the beginning of his reign, when on thone side the murder of hys brothers vnworthely slaine, on the other side the multitude of hys enemies, on a nother side the leare of treason & on another side want of mony and attillery (the realme being in mā-ner wasted and consumed with continual warre, dysquie-ted the minde of this yong souldiour, and that sondy na-tions out of diuers places at one tyme flockted together as it wer by a common conspiracy, to oppresse Macedonie by battell: For as muche as he was not able to matche them all at once, he thoughte it conuenient to dispencc wyth them. And he toke truce with some vpon reasonable Ar-ticles, some he bought of for mony, & suche as were wea-kest he assailed by force: by vanquishinge of whom hee dyd both strengthen the fainthe hartes of his souldiers, & toke awaye the disoaine that his ennemies had at him.

The first encounter that he had was with the Atheniens, whom he overcame by policie, and for feare of a worse after ciap, wheras he mighte haue slayne them all he sente them all safe home without raunsome. After this hee tur-ned his power against the Illyrians of whom he slew ma-nythousandes and toke their head citty called Laryssa.

Next, (not so muche for couetousnesse of praye, as for de-sire to encrease his army with the strengty of the Thes-salian hozsenmen, he entered Thessaly vppon the sodaine & conquered whē nothing was lesse mistrusted than warre, and so of thes hozsenmen and his owne fotemen, made one army and inuincible battell, whiche thinges commynge luckely to passe, he toke to wyse Olympias the Daugh-ter of Neoptolemus king of the Molosses. The maker of this marriage was his brother Arimbaskinge of the Mo-losses, vnckle to the maie by the fathers side, who had the brynging

brynging by of her, & had taken in marriage Troas, sister of y said Olympias, which was y cause of muche mischief vnto him and finally of his destruction. For wheras by the affinity of king Philip, he hoped to haue had his kingdom enlarged, he was by the same Philip depriued of his own Realme and compelled in his olde age to liue a banished man. These thinges thus brought to passe, Philip coulde not nowe content him selfe to repulse insurpe offered by others, but picked quarrelles to such as sate in quiet. As he besieged the city Methon, one shot an arrowe at him from the wall as he passed by, and strake out his right eye.

Throug which wound he became neither the slouthful-let in his enterpryse, nor the angrier against his en-nemies. In so muche that within few dayes after when they desired peace he graun-ted it, and vsed the victory against them, not only modestly, but also mercifully.

A good turne
eul reward-
ded.

An example
of modesty.

The

The eight Booke.

The Contentes of the eight Booke.



He Lacedemonians and Phocenses are condemned in a great summe of money: the Phocenses robbe the Temple of Delphos: Philip is chosen Captaine generall agaynst them and vanquisheth them, the which being done, he spoyleth the Thebanes, vvhom he came to defend: he stealeth the kingdom of Cappadacia, destroyeth Olynth in Thrace, inuadeth the goldmines in Thessalie, and the silver mines in Thrace, spoyleth the two kings of Thrace of their kingdom, maketh peace vvvith the Atheniens, geueth subtile answers to Themistocles of Greece, breaketh promise vvvith the Phocenses, remoneth vvhole nations and Cyties from countrie to countrie, subdueth the Dardamians, and deposeth Arymbakynge of Epyre, geuyng the kyngdom to Alexander the brother of his wyfe Olympias.

The discord
of the cities
of Greece.



THE cities of Greece while euerye of them sought to beare rule, were euerychone brought vnder subiection. For when they had no holde of themselves in seeking eche others destruction, they were vanquished of all men, & brought to confusion. None but such as were oppressed, perceiued what losse eche of them should susteyn. For Philip king of Macedonie lying in waite like a spy out of a watch tourse to surpise them all of their liberty, by nourishing debate betwene Citie and Citie, and by supporting the weaker side, compelled both the conquered and the conquerours to become his vassals & subjects. The originall cause of all this mischief were the Thebanes: who hauing the souerainty and wantinge discretion to vse their good fortune, arrogantly at the common counsel of Greece accused the Lacedemonians and the Phocenses whom they had vanquished in battell, as though they slaughterers and losses which they had abidden, had be to litle punishment for them. It was layde to the Lacedemonians charge, that they had taken a hold of the Thebanes in the time of truce: and to the Phocenses, that they had wasted the countrie of Beotia, as though that after warre & battell

The Thebanes
can not
vse their good
fortune.

Of Iustine.

Fol. 45.

tell: they would haue the lawes also to worke their force. Iudgement being executed according to the pleasure of the conquerors, they were condemned in such a summe of money as was not possible to be paid. The Phocenses therefore, when they should haue bin bereft of their Lands, their children and their wiues, like men in despayre, chose one Philomelus to their Captaine, and as folke offended with God himselfe, inuaded the temple of Apollo at Delphos. Whereupon being enriched with gold and money, they waged an army of souldiours straungers and made warre to the Thebanes. This deed of the Phocenses although all men abhorred, by reason of their sacriledge: yet notwithstanding it procured more enuy to the Thebanes, by whom they were diuine to this extremity, than to them. And therefore both the Atheniens and the Lacedemonians set forth men to their aide. At the first encounter Philomelus turned the Thebanes out of their campe. At the next fighting valiantly amongst the thickest, he was the first that was slaine, and so with his wicked blood did worke help abyde for committing sacriledge. In his steade Ornomarchus was made captaine. Against whom the Thebanes and Thessalians chose for their captaine, not one of their owne country men, for feare least if he gate the victory, he should beare himselfe so lordly, that they should be not be able to abyde him, but Philip king of Macedonie: willingly submitting themselves vnder the subiection of a forerunner, which was the thing they most of all feared in their owne countrey men. Philip therefore as though he had bene the reuenger of sacriledge, and not of the Thebanes, commaunded all his souldiours to put garlands of Laurel vpon their heads, and in this wise (as hauing God the chiefe Captain of his enterpryse) marched into the field. The Phocenses at the sight of the cognisance of Apollo, being stricken with inward remorde of conscience for their offence, caste downe their weapons and toke them to flight. And so with theyr owne blood suffered worthy punishment for violatynge of religion.

Note hath no
law.

The Thebanes
are curiouse.

The vylful
folly of the
Thebanes.

The force of
superstition

G.i.

religion. He wil not beleue what glozy this dede purcha-
sed Philip among all nations. As who would say, he was
the punisher of sacriledge, he was the reuenger of religy-
on, and he only was worthy to compel offenders to make
satisfaction, to the execution whereof all the world ought
to haue put their helpe. Therfore they honored him nexte
vnto the Gods, by whom the maiestie of the Gods was de-
fended. But the Atheniens hearing of the aduenture of
the warre, to the extent that Philip should not passe into
Greece, toke the straighes of Thermopyle in like maner
as they had before at the coming of the Persians, but ney-
ther with like courage nor for like quarell. For the it was
for the libertie of Greece, but now it was for open sacrile-
dge: then in the defence of the temples against the inua-
sions of the ennemye: now in the maintenance of Church
robbers against the rightfull reuengers. And they made
themselves bolsterers and bearers out of that hainous of-
fence, wherof it was a shame for them that any other wer
þ punishers the they. Quite forgetting that euen in they
doubtful cases they had vsed that God as their chief coun-
celler, that by his giuance they had finished so many bat-
tels with conquest, builded so many cities with fortunate
successe, attayned so great an Empire both by sea & land,
and finally atchieued nothing either in publike or priuate
affaires, without the maiestie of his Godhead. Certes, it is
great pitie, that such fine wits so exquisitely garnished w
all kinde of learning, and traded in so goodly lawes and in-
stitutiōs, should commit so hainous an acte, that of ryght
they can haue no cause hereafter to be offended with the
barbarous nations. But Philip kept not euē touch with
his fellowes. For as it were to the extent his enemies
should not go beyonde him in doing mischefe, he like an
enemy inuaded and sacked the cities, wherof a litle before
he had bin captaine, which had fought vnder his standers
which had reioyced in him, & which had holpen him to the
victory. The wines & children of the al he sold by þ drum.

A discourse a-
gainst the in-
pity of the
Atheniens.

The falshood
and vntroth
of king Phy-
lip.

He spared not the temples of the gods immortal, nor þ hou-
ses of religion, nor the comon nor priuate household gods,
vnto whome a litle before he entred as a guest, so as it
might euidently appeare he sought not so much to haue
punished sacriledge as to haue sought free liberty to com-
mit the same. From thence (as though he had accomplisshed
all things to his honoꝝ) he passed into Cappadocia, where
making war with like falshood, & hauing by treason takē
& slaine, the kinges þ were the next borderers, he brought
all the whole prouince vnder the Empire of Macedonie.
Then to abolishe the shamefull byte that went of hys do-
ings, (though which he was moze spoken than any man
in those days) he sent certain abroad through his realme
into the welchiest cities, and into churches and temples,
to put into folkes heds, that king Philip would bestow a
great masse of mony in building wallis about cities, and
in making of churches and temples, that workemē might
be procured by proclamation. When they came into Ma-
cedonie, being there diuened of diuers delaires, they gat
them away againe without making wordis, for feare of
the kings displeasure. After this he assailed the Olynthi-
ans. For when they sawe that Philip had put one of hys
brothers to death, they for very pitie sake receiued two
other of his brothers bozne of his steppemother, whome
as parteners of his kingdome, he soughte to dyspathe
out of the way. For this cause therfore he destroyed that
auncient and noble Citie, and put his brothers to the
death before determined vppon them, enicpinge ther-
by both a greate praye, and also hys lust in slayinge of
hys brothers. Whereupon as though he all thynges haue
bin lawfull that he purposed in hys mynde, he leased v-
pon the gold mines in Thessalie and vppon the syluer
mines in Thrace. And to the entente no lawe nor ryghte
might be left vnusolated, hee fell to be a rouer on the sea.
These thynges being thus accomplished, yt fortuned by
chauce, that two brothers both kings of Thrace, being at
G. II. variance

The cruelty of
Philip.

Philip vio-
lated all lawe
and right.

variance betwixt themselves (not in respect of his iustice, but for feare least he should helpe to support eyther of the parties) chose him to be iudge of their controuersies. But Philip according to his accustomed nature proceeding to iudgement as if it had bin to battell: came vpon the brothers vnwares in order of battell and not like an vpright iudge, but like a crafty chiefe and wicked traitor, spoiled them both of their kingdomes. While these thinges were a doing, the ambassadoys of Athens came vnto him to desire peace, whom he heard, and sent other ambassadours with them with Articles of peace to Athens, where to the commodity of both parties the peace was concluded. Out of the other cities of Greece came ambassadoys also, not so much for desire of his friendship as for feare of warre. For the Thebanes and Beotians of very rancor that boyled in their stomackes, requested him to shew himselfe as Captaide of Grece against the Phocenses according as he had professed himselfe to be. So soze were they inflamed with hatred against the Phocenses, that utterly forgetting their owne slaughters, they had rather perish themselves, than suffer them vnderstoyd: and had rather to abide the cruelty of Philip which they had tasted of already, than forbear their enemies. On the contrary parte the Phocenses with the ambassadours of Lacedemon and Athens, besought hym that he would not make warre, whiche they had already thre times bought of at his hand with theire money. Surely it was a foule and miserable sight, to beholde Grece (which euen yet both in strength and dignitie was Princesse of the whole world, alwayes a conquerresse of kinges and contrays, and as yet still the Lady of many cities) daunsing attendaunce in a foraine land and there entreating for warre or peace, to hange altogether vpon an other mans rescue. And that the reuengers of the whole world, should be brought to that point through their own disoord and ciuil warres, that they should be glad to sawne vpon those, who not long before were the vilest part of

The malice of
the Thebanes

The miserable
state of
Greece.

therefore he thoughte it a greater dishonour to rewarde him with to little, then to geue him nothinge at all. For the Scythians were esteemed by the courage of mind and hardines of body, and not for their substance. Philip seying himselfe skorned in this wise, brake vp his siege at Byzance, and bent his whole power against Scythia. And because he would make them the more carelesse, he sente his Ambassadors before to declare vnto kyng Mathey, that while he besieged Byzance, he bowed an image vnto Hercules, the which he was coming to erect in the mouth of the riuer of Danow, desiring to haue peaceable access to the performance of his vow to Godward, for he would not come otherwise then as a friend to the Scythians. The king sent hym word that if he would performe his vow, he should send him the Image, promising that it should be not onely set vp, but also remayne and stand safe. But as to suffer any army to come within his borders, that he denied utterly. And if he would attempte to place the Image whether the Scythians would or no, he should neuer see gone, but he would pull it downe againe, and turne the brasse of it into speare heades and arrow heades. The minds of both parties being in this wise stirred, they encountered in open field. The Scythians whereas they were of greater power and more in number, were notwithstanding overcome by Phillippes policie. Twenty thousand women and children were taken prisoners, and a greate bootie of catell, but of golde and siluer nothinge at all, whiche was a sufficient triall and proofe of the Scythians pouertie. Twenty thousand Mares were sente into Macedonie to breed. But as Philip returned out of Scythia, the Tribals mette hym by the way, denying him passage through theire country, vnlesse they myghte haue parte of his bootie. Whereupon they fell to wordes, and soone after to hande strokes. In which skirmish Philip was so soze wounded in the thighe, that his horse was slaine vnder him, and he left for deade, by meanes whereof the

þ botie was lost. So the botie of Scythia beyng as it were
forspoke, had like to haue turned the Macedones to great
forow. Yet notwithstanding as soone as he was recovered
of his wounde, he made warre against the Atheniens, the
which he had so long time before dissembled. The Thebanes
for feare lest if the Atheniens, were overcome, the issue
of the warre (like as when one neighbors house is on fire)
should ensue vpon them, toke part with the Atheniens and
so a league being taken betwene these two cities, which a
little before were at most mortal hatred, they sent ambas-
sade vpon ambassade ouer all Greece, perswading that the
common enemy ought to be remoued by the common force
of the countrey. For if Philip should happen to speede well
at the first, he would neuer cease, until he had subdued all
Greece. Some being moued herewith ioynd themselves
to the Atheniens, other some for feare of the warre, toke
part with Philip. When it came to the encounter, although
the Atheniens, were farre more in number than their ene-
mies: yet notwithstanding the Macedones were so har-
dened with continuall warfare that they put them to the
worke. Howbeit they died not vnmindfull of their auncy-
ent glory. For loke what place euery man tooke of his cap-
taine to keepe, the same (being first wounded in diuers
places of his forepart) couered he with his carcase when
he dyed. This day ended the renowne of the Empire, and
the auncient libertie of all Greece. The top of this victorie
was politiquely dissembled. For þ day Philip made no
sacrifice as he was wont to do, he laughed not at the table,
he had not any enterludes at his feast, he ware no coruene
nor annoynted himselfe with sweete oynements: but as
much as lay in his power, he so used the victorie, that no
man could perceiue by him to haue wonne it. Moreover,
he would not suffer himselfe to be called the king, but the
Captaine of Greece. Finally, he bare so euen a hande be-
twene his owne secreete gladnesse, and the forow of his
enemies, that neyther his owne men could say he reioy-
ced,

The Atheni-
ens are van-
quished.

The p^r like
dissimulation
of king Phy-
lip.

ced, nor his enemies say he vaunted at their ouerthrowe.
For as touching the Atheniens, whome he had tried to be
his most bitter enemies, he let goe their prisoners skott-
free, and deliuered the bodies of such as were slaine to be
buried, and of his owne accord he exhorted them to carry
home their bones, and bestow them in the Sepulchers of
theyr auncelloys. Besides this, he sent his sonne Alex-
ander with his frende Antipater to Athens to conclude a
finall peace and friendship with them. But as concerning
the Thebanes he did not onely put their prisoners to ran-
some, but also made them paye for the burying of theyr
deade. Of the princes of the Citie, some he beheaded, some
he banished, and the goodes of them all he toke to him, such
as had bene wrongfully dynen out of theyr countrey, he
called home agayne. Of whiche sorte he made thre hun-
dred Judges and rulers of the Cytie. Before whome
when all the greatest men of the Citie were arraigned as
guiltye of their wrongfull banishment, they were of such
constancie, that they all confessed themselves to haue
bin authoures thereof in deede: affirming that it was
better wyth the common wealthe, when they were con-
demned, then when they were restored agayne. It was
out of doubte a meruailous stoutnesse, for prisoners to
geue sentence on theyr Judges that sate vpon their lyfe
and death (as who wou'd say) they disdained to be acquite
at theyr enemies handes: and soasmuch as they could
not reuenge themselves in worke, they would vse theyr
libertie in wordes. When Philip had set thynge at a
stay in Greece, he commaunded all the Cyties to sende
Ambassade to Corinthe, for reformation of thynge that
were amisse. There he enacted a statute of peace for
all Greece, accordyng to the deseruynges of euery City,
and hee elected out of them all, one Counsell, and as it
were one Senate. Onely the Lacedemonians despised
bothe the kynge and his laue, accomptyng that peace
but a bondage, whych was not agreeable to the Cities
them

The gentle-
nes of Philip
towards the
Atheniens.

His rigor to-
wards the
Thebanes

A notable ex-
ample of con-
stancy,

Philip sum-
moneth a par-
liament at
Corinthe.

themselves, but was given at the pleasure of the conqueror. Then was every Citie appointed what men they should set forth to the wars, if the king should have neede either to assist hym when he were assailed by forrayne power, or els to make warre vnto others vnder hym. For it was apparant that all this greate preparacion was made to assaile the Empire of the Persians. The summe of all hys succours was two hundred thousand footemen, and sixtene hundred horsemen. Besides this number there was also the host of Macedonic, and other barbarous nations bordering there aboutes whom he had subdued. In the beginning of the spring, he sent ouer before into Asia which belonged to the Persians, three Captaynes Parmenio, Amintas, and Attalus. Whose sister he had lately taken in marriage, and put away Olympias the mother of Alexander vpon suspicion of adoutry. In the meane season, while his succours were assembling out of Grece, hee solemnized a mariage betwene his daughter Cleopatra, and Alexander to whom he had made king of Epyre. That day was great solemnitie and feasting accordinge to the estate of the two kinges, the one geuynge hys daughter, the other taking her in mariage. And there wanted no kynde of royall shewes that coulde be deuised. To see the whyche, as Phylip was goyng forth without his gard in the middes betwene the two Alexanders hys sonne and sonne in law, a noble possing mā of Macedonic called Pausanias, being mistrusted of no manne where aboutes hee went, crept to the kyng in a strypte, and slew hym as hee would haue passed by, turnynge the day into sorowe and beauienesse, which was appointed to myght and pleasure. This Pausanias in the first prime of his youth, had suffered horrible incest at the hand of Attalus, who not contented so, offered him this villany besides. He brought him into a banquet, and there making him dronken, compelled him like a strompet to sustaine the beastlines not only of himselfe, but also of all the gesses, and made him a laughing stocke

The number of king Philip's men of vyane. Philip's number the Empire of Persia

He divorceth himselfe from Olympias.

He marryeth his daughter to Alexander king of Epyre

The death of king Philip.

The cause of Philip's death.

of their retinue and hangers on: yea and that in especially to be done of the Thebanes and Lacedemonians, who lately before ruled the whole royl betwixt them, and now in the tyme that Grece bare the soueraintie, were enuysers one of anothers estate.

Philip in the meane season for the aduancement of his owne glozy, debated vpon the estate of so mighty Cities, deuising of which he might take most accompt. And therefore when he had secretly hearde the Ambassadors of bothe partes severally, he promised the one to discharge them of the warres, taking an othe of them not to be wryth his answer to any man: and the other to come and helpe them: forbidding either partie to feare or prepare for any war. Though this variable aunswere it came to passe, yet while every man kept himselfe in quiet, he toke the straights of Thermopile. Then first of all the Phocenses, perceiving themselves entrapped by the pollicy of Philip, fearfully toke the to their weapons. But they had no leasure either to furnishe themselves with owne men, or to send for succour to their neighbors: And Philip threatened to destroy them, vntill they yielded. Being therefore overcom with necessity they yielded themselves vpon condition of saftey. But euen of as much force was this composition, as was his promise before to discharge them of the warres. For they were euerly wher slaine and spoiled. The children were not left to their parentes nor the wiues to their husbands, nor the Images of the Gods in the temples. One onely comforte had this wretched people, that whereas Philip defrauded his owne companions of the prey, they saw nothing of the prey in their enemies hands. When he was returned into his kingdom, like as Grassers shifte they cattel sometime into one layer, sometime into another accordinge as the season of the yere requirerth: euen so removed he at his owne pleasure whole countreies and cities accordinge as he thought the places mete to be replenished or forsake. It was a miserable sight to behold in all places

The little victory of Philip.

Philip keepeth no promise.

Philip removeth whole countreies with their people

and in effect euen like a desolation. For this feare was not as when the enemy approcheth, or when men of war runne vp and downe a Citie, or when two hostes encounter in the fiede, or when men are slayne in the streets and their goodes taken away: but as a secret sorowe and mourning, searing least euen their sexed teares, shoulde be taken for stubborne. The griefe increased by the cloying therof, so much the deplier perling the harte, as it had lesse libertie to utter it selfe. One while they considered the sepulchers of theyr auncetors, an other while their old household gods, and sometime the houses wherein they were begotten, and had begotten chyldren themselves, Bewailing est theyr owne case in that they had liued to that day: and este the estate of theyr chyldren, that it had not bin their fortune to be borne after that tyme. Some people he placed in the vtmost boundes of his kingdom euen in his enemies mouthes, other hee set in the furthestmost borders of all his Realme, other some that were taken in y wars he appointed to enpeople y cities as neede required. And so of many people and many nations he made one entire kingdom and one people. The affaires of Macedonie being set at a stay, through fraude and pollicie he toke the chiefe of the Dardanians and other borders, and subdued theyr countreys. Neither withheld he his hand from his nearest frendes. For he determined to put Arymba king of Epyrus (his wyfe Olympias neere kinsman) from his royaltie. And therupon he sent for Alexander the sonne in law of y said Arymba and brother of his wyfe Olympias, a boie of excellent beaultie, in his sisters name to com vnto him into Macedonie. And there haupge by all meanes possible enticed him with hope of the kyngdome, vnder pretence of counterfett loue, he abused him in moste filchy incest, thinking that either shame and remorse of his owne conscience, or els the making of him king, shoulde cause him to be the moze at his commaundement. Therfore when the chyldre was come to xx. yeaers

Philip abused
Alexander
and deposited
Arimba kyng
of Epyre.

of age, he toke the kyngdome from Arymba, and gaue it to hym being a very boy: playinge a wicked parte wyth them both. For neyther deltes he lyke a natural kinsman wyth hym from whom he toke the kyngdome, and hym to whō he gaue it, he made a harlot before he made him king.

The ninth Booke.

The contentes of the ninth Booke.

Philip besiegeth Constantinople, during the which he vnneth many cities of Chersonesus, and fighteth vnprosperously agaynst the Triballs, he maketh vvaie to the Atheniens, and vnneth the Soueraigntie of Greece, executeth straight Iustice vpon the Thebanes, summoneth a parliament at Corinthe, prepareth for vvaie agaynst the Persians, and is slaine by Pausanias at his daughters marriage. The description of his nature and conditions, with a comparisō betwene him and his sonne Alexander.



WHEN Philip was come into Greece, being assured with y laking of a few Cities, and the spoile of a few final townes, & thereupon gathering in his minde how great were the riches of the al, he determined to make warre agaynst all Greece. To y furtherance wherof hee thought it would greatly aduantage him, if he might bring in his subiects on the nobleauen towne of Byzance as a refuge for his hostes both by sea & land. The same (because they shut their gates agaynst him) he besieged. This city was builded at the first by Pausanias king of the Spartans, and by him was possessed by the space of vii. yeaers. After warde as it toke y enclined to either part, it belonged est to the Lacedemonians, & est to the Atheniens. Which vncertaine possession made it to stand st. fly in the defence of her owne libertie. forasmuch as neyther party reshued it as their owne. Philip therfore hauing spent his treasure with the long continuance of his siege, made a wise

Philip besiegeth
Constantinople.

to get mony by rowing on the Sea. And hauing take Cl. xx
 shippes laden with marchandise, he refreshed his greedyve
 necessity for a while. Afterward because so great an army
 should not be detained about the siege of one city, he went
 with a number of the stoutest of his souldiours and wan
 many Cities of Chersonesus. Whereouer he set for his son
 Alexander of the age of xviij. yerres to the entet he might
 trayne him vp in the warres vnder him. He made a rode
 into Scythia also to fetch some botye from thence, enten-
 ding after the maner of marchantmen, to bear out þe char-
 ges of one war with the gaine of another. The same time
 was Matheyc king of the Scythians, who being ouerchar-
 ged in the warres of þe Istrians, desired help of Philip by þe
 Apollonians, promising to adopt him king of Scythia.
 But in the meane season the king of þe Istrians departinge
 out of this life, deliuered the Scythians both from feare of
 battel, and from neade of help. Matheyc therfore sendyng
 the Macedones home again, willing the to beare word to
 theyr master, that he neither requested him of succour nor
 yet gaue the Apollonians comission to adopt him. For nei-
 ther had the Scythians neede of the restues of the Mac-
 dones, seing they were better men then they were, and as
 for heir hee needed none, as longe as hee hadde a sonne
 of his owne in healtie. Upon the recepte of this message,
 Philip sent Ambassadors to king Matheyc, requyringe
 somewhat toward the charges of his siege, least he should
 be constrained through pouerty to breake vp his warres:
 To whiche request he oughte of reason so much the wyl-
 linglier to condescend, in that he did not allow the souldi-
 ers that he sent to his aide, so much as conduit moneye,
 to find them by the way, nor gaue them any rewarde for
 their gentleness. Matheyc excusing himselfe by the exces-
 siue colde and barrenesse of his Countreie whiche was
 scarce able to yelde the Scythians fode, and muche lesse to
 enrich them with possessi ons, answered þe he had no ry-
 chesse wherewith to satisfie so greate a kynge, and there-
 fore

Philip ma-
 keth a rode in
 to Tartarie.

The vngрати-
 tude of the
 king
 of Scythia.

stocke to al his companiōs. Pausanias taking this reproch
 sore to hart, did oftentimes make complaint therof to the
 king. At whose hand being with diuers delates put of, not
 without a mocke for his labour, and perceiuing his aduer-
 sary to be aduanced furthermoze to a captainship: he tur-
 ned his wrath vpon the kinge himselfe, & because he could
 not be reuenged of his aduersary, he reuenged hym vpon
 the wrongful Iudge. It is thought that he was set to doe
 the dede by Olympias the mother of Alexander, and that
 Alexander himself was priuy to bys fathers murder. And
 it is not vnlike but that Olympias toke her diuozement,
 and the preferment of Cleopatra, as greuouly as Pausa-
 nias did his abusing: and þe Alexander feared his brother
 begotten of his stepmother as an enemy of his kingdome.
 Whereupon it came to passe befoze this time that he fell at
 wordes at the table, first with Attalus, and after with his
 father. In so muche that his father pursued him with his
 sword drawne, and his frendes had much adoe to entreate
 him to hold his hand from killing him. Vpon which occasi-
 on Alexander with his mother fled vnto his vncle into E-
 pyre, and from thence went to the king of the Illirians, &
 would scarce by any meanes bee reconciled to his father
 when he sent for him: and his frendes had much adoe to
 entreat him to returne. Olympias also was procuring her
 brother Alexander king of Epyre to raise warre agaynst
 Philip, and she had obtained her sute, if he had not prouē-
 ted him with the mariage of his daughter, and made him
 bys sonne in iawe. These thinges therfore are thought to
 haue hastened Pausanias forward to dispatche the dede, who
 was angry befoze both with Attalus for bys beautillesse
 and with the king for putting vp his complaint wythout
 redresse. This is certaine, that Olympias had laid post boz-
 zes to conuey him away, when he had striken the king. Af-
 terwarde when she heard of the murther of the kinge, she
 came to his funerals, the same night vnder pretēce of du-
 tie, and there set a crowne of gold vpon Pausanias heade

Occasions of
 great displea-
 sure betwene
 Philip and
 his sonne, A-
 lexander.

The doynges
 of Olympias
 at the death of
 Philip.

as he hong vpon the gallows: which thing no body durst haue bin so bolde to haue done but she, Philip haunge a sonne aliue, Within a fewe dayes after, she toke downe the body of Pausanias, and burned it vpon her husbandes ashes, and builded him a tombe in the same place, and vnto such a superstitious top in the peoples heades, that shee made them fearely to keepe a yeare minde to hym. Thus done, killing Cleopatras daughter euen in the lappe of the mother, (for whose sake Philip had diuorced himself from her, she compelled her to hange her selfe, and in beholding her how she hong, enioyed the reuengement, to which she made hast by the murder of her husband.

Last of all she consecrated the sword wherewith the kyng was slaine, vnto Apollo by the name of Myrtalis, for that was Olympias name when she was a little one. Al the whiche thinges were done so openly, that it was to bee thought she should haue feared least her doing would not bee allowed. Philip deceased of the age of xlvii. yeares, when he had reigned xxv. yeares. He begat of Larissa a daunsinge dame sell a sonne named Arideus that raygned after Alexander. He had many other sonnes, begotten of diuers women (as the maner of kinges is) of whom some died of their naturall death, and some of the sword. Hee was a king more desirous of battell then of banactynge, whose richesse consisted chiefly in furniture of y^e warres, and he was more cunning in getting richesse, then in keeping. And therefore for all that he filled and polled euery day yet was he euer needie. Percy and falshode he loued a like. He thought it no shame to purchase his desire, how so euer he came by it. Where as he fauored he would make as though he were displeased, Sutele & captious was he to talke vnto promising more then he would perform. In deuising wrighte matters, and in merke conceites conning, weying friendship by aduantage, and not for faythfulness. Where he hated most, there to pretende most fauour, and to sowe discorde betwene such as agreed best together,

The cruelties
of a woman.

The descrip-
tion of kinge
Philip.

gether, seeking for thanke at both parties, was his solene custome. Further more his talke was maruelous eloquent and full of sharpenesse and wittie sayings, so that neyther felicitie wanted to set out his pleasaunt inuentions, neither was his felicitye voyde of trimme deuities. Vnto him succeeded Alexander, going beyond his father both in vertues and in vices. First for their maner of conqueste it was cleane contrary. For this man atchieued his battels by open force, the other by pollicie. He resolued to beguile his enemies, this man to vanquish them in open felde. The other was more prudent in counsell, but this man was of more princely stomache. The father would oftentimes dissemble his anger and overcome it, But if this man were once in a rage, there was nothing but reuengement out of hande and that shoulde bee done withoute all measure or reason. Both of them were geuen ouermuch to drinke of wyne, but in theyr dronckennesse they were not both of one dysposition. The father would customably from his meate runne vpon his ennemye, come to hande strokes, and vnadvisedly caste hym selfe in danger. But Alexander outraged not agaynst his enemy, but agaynst his owne men. And therefore Philip came oftentimes home from battell wounded hymselfe, but this man departed oftentimes from the table as a murderer of his owne frendes. The father loued to haue his frendes raigne with him. But the sonne would playe the straunt with his frendes, The father had rather be beloued, the sonne to be feared. As for leaueing it was a like in both of them. The father was a man of more pollicie, but the sonne was more to be trusted. Philip was more modest in wordes and communicatiō, but Alexander more modest in his deades. The sonne was of a more gentle and honourable nature and more ready to shew mercy to them that were overcome: but the father would not abstayne so muche as from his owne confederates. The father was

A comparison
betwene
Philip and
Alexander.

was more geuen to chynge, and the sonne more to riot. By the which meane the father layde the foundation of the Monarchy of the whole worlde, and the sonne to hys high renowne finished the whole worke.

The tenth Booke
of Iustine.

The Contentes of the tenth Booke.

THe naturall affection of Artaxerxes, Mnemen toward hys sonne Darius, and his treason against his father the punishment of Darius and his fifty brothers, the crueltye of Ochus, the prouesse of Codoman, for whiche he is created king by the name of Darius.

This same is
he that is men-
tioned of in
the v and vi.
bookes before.



ARtaxerxes King of Persia had a hundred & fiftene sonnes by hys concubins, wherof no mo but thre were begotte in lawful wedlock, Darius, Ariarates, and Ochus. Of these thre (contrary to the custom of Persians, which are not wont to chaunge their kinge but lye by the father of his gentleness during hys own life, made Darius king, thinking that he had nothing the lesse himselfe, for that that he bestowed vpon his sonne, & that he should take the more ioy of the begetting him, if he might in his life time beholde in his sonne, the liuely representation of his owne estate. But Darius (as soon as his father had by strange example exprested louing affectio towards him) began to practise the death of his father. He had bin wicked, if he had gone about it alone, but much more wicked was he, in that he intised 1 of his brothers to consent to the killing of their father. It is a monstrous thinge

The wicked-
nelle of Da-
rius toward
his father.

thing, that so hainous a murder, should not only be consented to, but also concealed in such a multitude of people of fifty children there could not one be found, who either the feare of his fathers maiestie, or the reuerence of hys age, or the earnestte affection that he hadde shewed, could withdraw from so outrageous a crueltye. Was the name of father so vile amonge so many sonnes, that by whose defence he ought to haue bene preserved even against hys enemies, and by the treason of the same he should be surprised and bee in more safetie of hys enemies then of hys owne sonnes? The cause of this murder, was more wretched then the murder it self. For after the time that Cyrus was slaine in the warre that he made against his brother as is before mentoned: king Artaxerxes toke his concubine Aspasia in marriage. Darius required hys father to depart with her to him, lyke as he had don with the kingdome. His father for the loue he bare to him, graunted at first to do it, but anon after being stricken with repentance, to the intent he might honestly deny, the thing he had rashly promised, he made her chief priest to the sunne, where by she was bound to keepe her self chaste from all men during her life. The yong man being herewith prouoked to anger, first fel at words with his father. And immediatly after, as he conspired with his brothers to worke treason against him, he and all hys rable were taken, and by the iust vengeance of God (the punisher of such as rebell against their fathers,) was put to execution for theyr premeditated murder. And to the intent no imp should remaine of such a wicked race, the wiues and children of them all, were in lyke wise put to death. After this Artaxerxes fel sicke for sorowe and died, a happier king, than a father. The inheritance of the kingdom was deliuered vnto Ochus, who fearynge the lyke conspiracye, replenished hys palace with the slaughter of his kinsfolke, and of his noble men. No kindred, no sex, no age, could moue his harte to pity: verely least menne myght, accompt hym more inno-

The iust re-
ward of trea-
son.

The crueltye
of Ochus.

rent than his brothers that wold haue murdered they father. And so hauinge as it were cleasid bys kyngdome, he made warre to the Armenians. In whych, one Codoman putting forth himself with the fauour of all men, to combat against one of the enemies that made a chalenge to fight hand to hand, slue his enemy: wherby he both won the victoꝝ, and also saued the honoꝝ of his country, which laye in basard to be lost. For which valiant enterpryse, the same Codoman was made lieutenante of the Armenians. In procelle of time after the death of king Ochus, in remembrance of his forster promesse, the people created him kyng. And so content nothing shoulde want in hym that appertained to the state of a king, they called him by the renowned name of Darius. Who afterwarde wpth great promesse belo warre a long whyle agaynst greace Alexander, sometime to his gaine, and sometime to his losse. At laste beyng vanquished by Alexander and slain of his owne kinsmen, he ended his lyfe together wiche the Emperre of the Persians.

The Contentes of the eleuenth Booke.

THe disquietnesse of the Macedones after the death of Philip the whiche Alexander appeareth. Alexander putteth his kynnsfolk to death, suppresseth rebellions, goeth forwarde wth the vyars his father purposed against the Persians, pardoneth the Atheniens razeth Thebes, entereth into Asia, vanquisheth Darius, openeth diuers of his Lieutenantes, goeth to the Citie Gordys, & vntie the knot of the vyaynes: a digression to thasayres and the kynges of Phrygia. Alexander maketh hast to Tharsus in Cilicia, is recovered of a dangerous disease, ouercommeth Darius againe, taketh the mother, wyte and daughters of Darius prysoners, mayeth one of his prysoners called Baranes, sendeth Parmenio to inuade the Persian floure, and other of his noble mea to receiue the Cyries of Asia, maketh Abdolominus a kyng of a Gardiner, vinneth the citie Tyrus, perforce, goeth to the temple of Hamon in Egypt, buildeth the Citie Alexandria, receiueth letters twise from Darius, and replyeth to the same, merbeth for the death of Darius, vvyse, receiueth the third letter from Darius and aunswereth thereunto ouercommeth Darius and vinneth the Monarchie of the persians: wth thempyre of Asia, reuwardeth his souldiers, wth excedyng riches in the citie, persepolis. Darius is bound by one of his kinemen, found by a souldier half dead and sore yvounded, to vvhom he openeth his mynde and dieth, and Alexander causeth him to be buried according to his estate.



Ntharmy of Philip, as they were sondry sortes of people: euen so after þ time that he was slain, their minds wer otherly moued. For som that were oppressed wth wrongfull thraldom, comforted the selues in hope of liberty. Others beyng wery of the warfares so far fro their native countrye re-

loysed to thinke that the yage shoulde bee broken vp and they dismissed. Many sor to see the Tapers that were lighted at the daughters mariage, stand vpon the herse of the father. Wps frendes also wer not a litle amased at so sodain alteration of things, considering how Asia was lately chalenged, Europe scarcely yet conquered, & that the Illirians, Thracians, Vardarians, & other Barbarous nations were

The estate of Macedone after the death of king Philip

The wyse and
discreet beha-
uour of Alex-
ander.

The murder-
ers of kynge
Philip are
punished.

Alexander go-
eth forward
with the war
against the
Persians that
his father Phi-
lip had begon.

were of minde unconstant and of promise unfaithful. All
whych the people (if they shoulde rebell all at ones) it were
not possible by any meanes to resist. Unto all these mis-
chances the coming of Alexander was as it were a preser-
vation. Who in an oration so comforted and encouraged, Al-
the people for the time, that he both exempted all fear out
of their hartes, and made them to conceiue good hope of him-
self. He was then xx. yerres olde, in whych age he promi-
sed many thynges of him selfe with such modesty, that it
appeared he would do more when it came to the p[ro]ofe. He
gaue the Macedones a quite discharge of all thynges sa-
uyng the warres: by whych deed he purchased him self
such fauour at all mennes handes, that they sayd they had
changed the body of the kynge, but not his vertues. The
first and chiefest regard that he had, was to bury his fa-
ther accordyng to his estate. In executing wherof befoze
all other thynges, he caused such to be executed vpon his
fathers tombe, as were necessary to his death. Oulpe he
pardoned Alexander of Lyncesthis brother, reseruing in
him the good force token of his owne estate, for as much
as he was the first that saluted him by the name of king.
Moreover he caused his half brother Daranus to be put to
death as an vndermyner of his estate. In the beginnyng
of his regne he subdued manye countries that rebelled,
and suppressed manye insurrections even in the verye ty-
ling. Wherby being greatly encouraged he went leysur-
ly into Greece. where after the example of his father, su-
monyng the Cities to apperre befoze him at Corinth, he
was substituted captaine generall in his stead. And ther-
vpon he went immediately in hand with the wars agaynst
the Persians, which his father had begone. While he was
busye in the furniture thereof, tidings came to him that
the Atheniens, the Lacedemonians and the Thebanes
were revolted from him to the Persians, & that the author
of this reuolting was the orator Demosthenes corrupted
by the Persians with a great sum of gold, who auowed
befoze

befoze the people, that the king of Macedonie with all his
hoste was slaine of the Triballes, bringyng the ralesman
in open audience, who to make good the matter, sayde he
was wounded himselfe in the same battell that the kynge
was slayne. Vpon whiche rep[or]te, the mindes almoste of
all the Cities were chaunged and the Garrisons of the Ma-
cedones besieged. The whych motions to prevent, he en-
tered into Grece with his army well appointed and in or-
der of battell so speeded, that they sharte beleeued their
owne eyes when they sawe him, because they hearde not
of his coming. In his waye thitherwarde he exhorted
the Thessalians to keepe their allegiaunce, putting them
in minde of the benefices of his father Philip toward them,
and of the kindred that was betwixte him and them by his
mothers side, which came of the stocke of Aracus. The
Thessalians were glad to heare those wordes of him, and
therupon made him Captaine Duke of their country as
his father had be befoze, & yelded him all the tributes and
reuenues that he was wont to haue. But as the Atheniens
were the first that revolted, so were they the first that re-
pent: turnyng the disbaire of their enemy into won-
derment, and extolling the childhood of Alexander (whych
they held skorne of befoze) aboue the promise of the ancient
captaine. Therfoze they sent ambassadours desiringe pa-
don, and peace. Whom Alexander hard and with greuous
rebuke graunted them their request.

From thence he turned his power toward Thebes, in-
tending to haue shewed like merce, if he had founde lyke
repentance. But the Thebanes went to it with force of ar-
mes and not with intrecaunce and submission. Being
therfoze vanquished, they suffered most greuous punish-
ment of miserable captiuitie. When the matter came to
debatinge in counsell as concerning the destruction of the
cite: the Phocenses, the Platenses the Thespienses, and
Orchomenians, Alexanders confederates and partakers
of his victorie, found fault with the crueltie of the Theba-

Alexander sup-
presseth the
commotions
in Grece.

The hatred
of all Grece to
ward the
Thebanes.

nes in destroying their Cities, and with the good will that they shewes bare to the Persians, not only at that time, but also of old time, to the open prejudice of the liberty of Greece. For which they dealing, that they had purchased themselves the hatred of all people, this might bee an euident proofe, that they had all bounde themselves with an othe, to raze Thebes as soone as they hadde overcome the Persians. And, that they might be the more hated, not only for they present disloyaltie, but also for their old shamefulnesse, they told what playes had bin made of theyr wickednesse, wherewith they had accloyed all stages. The Eleades one of the prisoners hauing liberty to speake, said that the Thebans had not revolted from the king, whom they had to be slain, but from the kings bezzes. In which doing if there were any trespassse, it was rather to be imputed to oversight of light credit, than to unfaithfulnesse, wherof notwithstanding they had already suffered greates punishment. For the pouth of the Citie being put to the sword, there remained none but a sorte of women, & olde folke, which as they were feeble so were they unable to doe harme, & yet euen they had bin so vexed with rauishments and other shameful displeasures, that they neuer felt thing so bitter in all theyr liues. Wherfore he made intercession not for his countrefolk, wherof there were so few lefte, but for the gentle soyle of his country and for the towne yf self, which had brought forth not only men, but also goodes. Moreover he alledged a private superstition to entre at the king withal, how Hercules (from whom the house of the Acacides do fetch theyr petigry was borne amonge them) and howe his father Philip had passed his childhood at Thebes: beseeching him to spare that cite, which honoured some of his ancestors that were borne amonge them as Gods, and had sene some of the that wer brought up amonge them, yf to the royall estate of kinges. But the wrath was greater then that any entreatance could preuaile. The Citie therfore was rased, the landes deuoid, and y conqueroys & the prisoners saued vnder a garland.

The persua-
sion of Elea-
das for the sa-
uing of the
city.

The cite of
Thebes is de-
stroyed.

whose will was sette, not to the advantage of the biers, but according to the hatred of enemies. The Atheniens thought it a miserable sight, & therfore they opened theyr gates for the refuge of such as escaped by flight, contrary to y kinges commaundement. With which doing Alexander toke such displeasure, that when their ambassadors came to see for peace againe, he remitted their offer, and con- dition they should yelde into his handes their captiues & orators, vpon trust of whom they did so often rebell. The Atheniens being ready to fulfil his commaundement, be- cause they wold not be constrained to haue war with him, the matter was brought to this issue, that they kept yf they orators and banished theyr captiues: who in con- tinence taking theyr way to Darius did not a little increase the strength of the Persians. At his settinge forth to the warres in Persia, he put to death all his mother in Lawes kinsmen, whom Philip had aduanced to great promo- tions, & made rulers of countries. Neither spared he suche of his own kindred as seemed meete to beare rule, frait any occasion of rebellion. He would remaish in Macedonie, whyle he was making warre a far of. Such kinges also as were tributaries & wer of any wisdom or capacity, he toke with him to y warres, leauing y old men to gouern his kingd at home. The assembled he all his power & toke ship. Out of whiche as soone as he beheld Asia, he was wonderfully enflamed in his courage, and made xii. altars to the Gods as a vow for prosperous successe in his wars. All this he- stance y he had in Macedonie and Europe, he parted amog his friends, saying y Asia was enough for himself. Before that any sail departed fro the shore, he slew sacrifices, ma- king his prayer for victory by battell, as by the whych he was left to be the reuenger of Greece so oftentimes beset & assailed of y Persians, whose monarchie had continued now long inough, & was come to his perfect ripeynesse. & ther- fore it was high time for other to take yrouth that could be serue the turne better. Neither was he at any of this coun- rage then the king himself. For al of the forgetting theyr

The same is
he that in the
last booke is
called Codo-
man.
Alexander set-
teth an order
in his king-
dome.

The noble co-
rage and free
haire of Alexā-
der.

W. liij. wyues

winnes & childre, & that they shold make was far from home, made as sure account of the gold of the Persians, & of the riches of the whole East, as if it had bin theys owne all ready, thinking nothinge of the daungers of the warre but of the great riches. Allone as they were come to Lande, Alexander first of al threw a dart as it were into his enemies land, and in his armoz lepte out of his ship in manner of daunting, and so killed his sacrifices, praying the goddes that those countries might willingly receiue him as theys kynge. In the same places also he kept funeralles at the tombes of them that were slain at the battel of Troy.

Then soughte he for his enemy, straightly charging his Souldiers, to make no waste in the countrie of Asia, saying it was but reason to spare that whiche was theys owne, & that they ought not to make hauck of those thynges that they came to possesse. In his army were two and xxx. thousande footemen. iiii. M. and v. C. horsemen, and a C. foure skope and two myppes. It is to be doubted whether it were more to be wonderd at, y^e with so small a handfull of men he conquered the whole world, or that he durst ones giue chenter prise to attempt it: considering that to so dangerous a warfare he chose, not lusty yong men and such as were in the flour of youthe, but old worn souldiers, & such wherof many by reason of their yeres, were exempted from the wars, whiche had serued vnder his father and vnder his vnckles: so that a man wold haue thought he had not picked out souldiers, but rather maisters of chualry. Moreouer non had the leading of any hand, that was not y^e yeres old. So that if ye had beheld the chief officers of his campe, ye wold haue said, ye had sene the senate of some auncient common welth. Therefore there was no man that thought of runnyng awaye but of getting the victorie, nor there was not any that put his trust in his legges but in his armes. On the other side Darius king of Persia trusting in his own strength, wold do nothing by pollicy, affirming that it stode not with his

honour

honour to steale the victorie, nor yet to keepe his enemye out of the borders of his kingdome, but rather to receiue him into the bowels of his realme: and that it shoulde bee more to his hono^r to expulse him perforce then not to suffer him to enter. The first encounter therfore was in the plaines of Adraft. In the host of the Persians were D C. fighting men, the whiche beinge banquished as muche by the pollicy of Alexander, as by the puissance of his Macedones, turned their backs and fled. Great therfore was the slaughter of the Persians. Of Alexanders hoste were slain ix. footemen, and a C. and xx. horsemen. Whome the kinge the more to encourage the residue of his souldiers) sumptuously buried and set vp theys Images on hoys back on their tombes, and gaue great priuiledges to their kinfolke. After this victorie the more part of Asia fel vnto him. He fought many battels also with the lieutenantes of Darius, whom he now banquished not so muche by force, as with the word of his name. While these thinges were a doing, in the meane time Alexander was informed by the confession of a prisoner, that Alexander of Lyncest was some mrlaw of Antipater, whome he had left his vicegerent in Macedone, w^et about to worke treason agaynst him. For which cause fearing that if he shoulde put him to deathe, there wold rise some commoty on in Macedone, he put hym in safekeeping. Thys donne he marched towarde the cite Gordis, the whiche is situate betwene the greater & the lesser Phrygia. The desire that Alexander had to get this cite into his possession, was not so much for his wy of it, as because he heard say that in that City in the temple of Iupiter, was the poke of Gordius waine, the knot wher of whosoever coulde vnderstand, shold be king of all Asia, as the auncient Oracles had prophesped. The occasion and originall hereof was thys. As one Gordius was going to plough in the countrie, w^ech Dren that he had byed, bydes of all soys began to flie about him. Whereupon as he went to aske counsell of the Southsayers of the cite ther-

The number of the Persians.

Darius is vanquished.

Of the Citye Gordis and of Gordius waine.

by, in

Alexanders host.

The magnanimity of Darius.

by, in the gate he mette with a maide of excellent beauty, and demaunding of her what Southsa per he were beste to goe to. When she heard y occasion wherfoze hee would aske counsell, beyng seene her selfe in the science by the instruction of her Father and mother, she answered that it signified he should be a kyng, and there vpon offered her selfe to be his partaker both of wedlocke, and of the kingdome that was behyghted.

He thought himself happy to haue such a fayre offer at the first entrie of his kingdome. After the marriage, the Phrygians fell at discord amonge themselves. And when they asked counsell of the Oracle howe they might bring it to an end, answer was made that they could not end their controuersies with out the helpe of a kyng. Demaunding againe as touching the person of their king, what maner of manne he should be: commandement was geuen them to marke whom they saw firste after their returne, riding into the temple of Iupiter in a carte, and to take hym for their king. The first mā that they met, was this Gordius, where vpon immediatly they saluted him by the name of king. The cart wherein he rode when the kingdome was laid vpon him, he set in the temple of Iupiter, and consecrated it for an offering, as kinges are wont to do at their coronation.

After this man reigned his sonne Midas, who beyng traded by by Orpheus in manie superstitious Ceremonies, filled all the realme full of sectes of religion, by the whiche he liued more in safegarde all his lyfe, then by his chivalry.

Alexander therfore hauynge taken the Towne, when he came into the temple of Iupiter, immediatly enquired for the yoke of the Ox: the whiche beyng brought before him, when he sawe he could not finde the ende of the chenges that were hidden with the wretches, constraining the Oracle to the uttermoste, he ruste the wretches

a soulder

a soulder with a swoyde, and so when he hadde loosed the wretches, he founde the endes of the knottes wryth the byades. As he was a doing this, tidings was brought him that Darius approached with a great host of menne. Wherevpon fearng to bee enclosed within the straghtes, he passed the mountaine Taurus with all speede possible, in the whiche harte he ran CCCC. furlonges.

When he came to Tarsus, beyng muche delighted wth the pleasantnes of the ryuer Sydnus whiche runneth through the myddes of the Cytie, he caste of his harness and full of duste and sweete as he was, threw hym selfe naked into the colde water, wherwth all suche a nomnesse by and by strake through all his synewes, that he losse his speache, and the lykelyhode was hee shoulde not onely neuer recover it, but also that hee shoulde haue died presently. Onely there was one of his Physicians named Philip, whiche warranted to make hym whole.

And yet the same Physician was had in mistrust, by reason of the letters sente the daye befoze out of Cappadocia from Parmenio.

Who knowing nothing of Alexanders mischaunce, wrote vnto him to beware of Philip his Physician, for he was corrupted by Darius for a greate summe of monye. Withstandyng he thought it more for his safegard to committe hymself to the Physician though he be more then halfe suspected him of treason, then to abyde the danger of his disease, whereof ther was no waye but deathe.

Therefore hee tooke the synke that the Physician hadde made hym, and deliuered hym the letter. And as he drank he beheld his face stedfastly to see what countenance hee would make at the readdyng of it. When he saw him unabashed, he was glad of it, and the iiii. daye after recovered his healtie. Darius therfore with CCC. M. foremen and a C. M. horsemen proceeded into battell. Whys huge multitude of his enemies moued Alexander whē he beheld the

Alexander taketh a greate surfer.

The eleuenth Booke.

The seconde
encounter be-
tweene Alexā-
der & Darius.

the small number of his owne menne. But then, agayn he called to minde, what great enterprises he had atcheued, & how mightie encuntries he had subdued with that small number. Wherefore whē hope had expulſed feare, he thought it dangerous to delay the battell, leaſte his men ſhoulde be diſcourage. The rode he about his battelles, & with ſonny orations ſpake vnto eche kinde of people. He encouraged the Illyrians and Thracians, with vaunting of riches and ſubſtance. He ſet the Greekes on fyre with remembrance of their former warres and of their continuall battell againſt the Perſians. He put ſh Macedones in mynde of Europe all redy conquered, & of Asia now chalenged: hoſting that there were not the lyke menne of ſtrength as they wer in al the world. But this battell wold both make an end of their troubles, and encrease their glorie. In ſaying theſe wordes, he commaunded his battels to ſtand ſtill again, to the intent ſh by this paſſing, they might acquaine they eyes with the huge number of their enemies. Darius alſo was not behindehande in ordering of his battels. For whereas it belöged to the duty of his captains to haue don it, he went himſelf from rank to rank, exhorting them all to play the manne and putting them in remembrance of the ſufficient renown of the Perſians, and of the perpetuall poſſeſſion of the empire geuen them by the gods immortall. This don both charmes with great courage buckled together. In that battell both kings wer wounded, and the victory hung in doubtfull balance, ſo long untill Darius forſoke the field. Then enſued the ſlaughter of the Perſians. There wer ſlain of ſotemen lx. of horſemen x. and xl. wer taken priſoners. Of the Macedones were killed a C. and xxx ſotemen, and . C. and l. horſemen. In the tentes of the Perſians was found muche gold and other rycheſſe. Amonge others, were taken priſoners Darius mother, his wyfe which alſo was his ſiſter, and two of his daughters. Whom when Alexander came to viſite and comforte, aſſone as they ſawe the harried men, they embraced one another

The ſlaugh-
ter of the Per-
ſians.

Of Iuſtine.

Fol. 61

nother and made a great ſcreyehing, as though they ſhoulde haue died out of hand. Then ſel they ſtate at Alexāders ſete deſerching him not of pardon for their liues, but onely a ſeſpit for a time to burye Darius. Alexander being moued with pity at the tender affection of the women, tolde them that Darius was yet aliue and had them be of good comfort, for they ſhoulde not die, commaunding that they ſhoulde be eſteemed as Queenes & ſo called. Furthermoze he willed Darius daughters to truſt to him, ſh they ſhoulde be matched no meanlyer in marriage, than was for they fathers honoz. After this when he ſawe Darius richeſſe, his iewels and his apparell, they were ſo much that hee wondred to behold them. Then began he firſt to make riotous bankets and ſumptuous feaſtes: then beegan he (for her beautye and ſauoz) to fall in loue with Barſine one of his priſoners, of whom after ward he begat a ſonne, & named him Hercules. Neuertheleſſe remembryng that Darius was yet a liue, he ſente Parmenio to inuade the Perſian ſtete and other of his frendes to receiue the Cities of Asia. Which immediatly vpon the report of his victorie, yeelded to the conquerour, and ſo did the Lieutenantes alſo that Darius had ſet ouer them, who brought a greate maſſe of monnye with them. Then ſette he forwarde into Syra, wher he met many kings of the Eaſt with crownes on their heades. Of whom (as eche of them had deſerued) ſome he tooke into ſauoz, and ſome he deposed, ſettinge vp new kinges in their ſteads. Amongſt all other Abdolomius (whom Alexāder made king of Sydon,) is worthy to be ſpoken of. For whereas befoze time he was wont for hire to caſt poudes and water gardens, leauepage his ſpſe miſerably Alexander made him king: ſetting aſide ſh noble men, leaſt for they byrth and linage, they might haue ſented to chalenge it of duty, and not to accept it as a free gift. The citizens of Tyre ſent they ambadaours with a crown of gold of great waighte vnto Alexander, for ioye of his good ſucceſſe: who thankfullly acceptyng their preſent,

The clemen-
cy of Alexāder

Superfluitie
the cauſe of
diſorder.

A kynge of a
gardiner.

Alexander be-
siegeth Tyre.

sent, sayd he would come to Tyre to perforce his bowes
to Hercules. When chambassadors said, he might do that
better in old Tyre, and in the old temple, desiring he wold
not enter into the new towne, he take so soze displeasure
at it, that he threatned to destroy the city: and there vpon
he forthwith brought his army to the Island, and the cou-
ragious Tyrians, vpon trust of the Carthaginenses, wel-
comed him with warres. For the Tyrians wer not a little
encouraged by the exāple of Dido, who builded Carthage,
and conquered the thirde parte of the world. Chynkinge
it a soule shame for the, if their women should haue more
partes in conquering, then they had in defendynge the
liberty. Wherefore they sent away al such as wer not mete
for warres to Carthage, & brought succors in their stead.
Nevertheless ere long after, they towne was taken by
treason. Wherevnto Alexander receiued the Rhodes, Egypt,
and Cilicia without any stroke striking. The toke he by
souny to Iupiter Hammon, to enquire of the chance of
things to come, and of his owne bythe. For bys mother
Olympias had told Philip her husband, that shee concep-
ued not Alexander by him, but by a Serpent of wonder-
ful bignesse. And Philip him selfe a little before he dyed,
had openly reported that hee was not his sonne. Vpon
which cause as though he had knowen her to haue plaid the
miswomā, he put away Olympias. Alexander therfore be-
ing desirous to fetch his pedigree frō God, and also to de-
liuer his mother from slander of the world, sent messen-
gers, priuely before to the priestes, to geue the instructy-
ons what answer he would haue them make. Asone as he
entered into the temple, the priestes saluted him by his name
of the sonne of Hammon. He being glad of this aduocā of
the God, gaue commandement that all men should take
him for his father. Then he demaunded whether he had pu-
nished all such as were guiltye of the murder of bys father
or no. They made him answer, that bys father could ney-
ther be killed nor die but as for the death of kyng Philip,
he had

Alexander go-
eth to Ham-
mon in Egypt.

The flattery
of the priestes
why he after
was the de-
struction of
many noble
men.

he had sufficiently punished all the doers thereof. To bys
thirde demaund they answered, that he should get his upper
hand in al battels, and should be owner of all the whole
world. To suche also as attended vpon him they gaue
charge to honoꝝ Alexander as a God, and not as a kyng.
Wherevpon he grew to exceeding haughtinesse, and wonder-
ful pryde, and the gentleness which he had learned by the
literature of the Grekes and the instructions of the Ma-
cedones, was quite raised out of his thought.

As he returned from Hammō, he builded Alexandria, &
peopled it with Macedones, ordeining it to be the hed cief
of Egypt. Darius being escaped to Babilon, sent his letters
to Alexander desiring him of leaue to ransom the womā
that were his prisoner, for whom he profered him a great
sum of mony. But Alexander demaunded for their rans-
ome, not a peece of moneys, but his whole kyngdome.

The building
of Alexandria
in Egypt.

Alexanders an-
swers, to Da-
rius letters.

Within a while after came another letter frō Darius to
Alexander, wherein he proffered him one of his daughters
in mariages, & a portion of his kingdom. Alexander wrot
vnto him again, that those things that he offered him were
his own already, wherefore he willed him to com & submit
himself, & to put the ordering of his kingdom to the discre-
tion of his sonerain. Then being past al hope of peace, Da-
rius adressed himself again to the warres, & with 40000.
sotemen, & a 10000 horsemen marched toward Alexander.
In hisourney news was brought him that his wife was
departed of deliuerance of a childe before her time, & that
Alexander wept for her death, & also followed courteously
after her coyle to buriall: whiche thing he had done, not
for that he was in loue with her, but onely for courtesye
sake. For he neuer saw her but ones in al his life, wher as
he wold oftentimes visit his mother & his little daughters
to comfort the. The Darius thinking himself clerely vanqui-
shed, seeing past so many battels, his enemy had ouercō
him with kindnesse also, thought it did him good like hee
could not get the upper hand, & it was his chance to be ban-
quished

The vyffe of
Darius dyeth.

The thirde
letter of Da-
rius to Alex-
ander.

Alexanders
answere.

The last en-
counter be-
tweene Dari-
us and Alex-
ander.

quished of so worthy a conqueror. Wherefore he wrote the
iii. letter vnto him, geuing him thanks that he had not
shewed any extremity against his prisoners: Offrynge
him the greater part of his kingdom, euen vnto the river
Eufrates with a nother of his daughters to wyfe, and for
the rest of his prisoners 30000 talents. Hereunto Alexan-
der made answer, that thanks at his enemies hande was
more then neade, and that he had not done any thynge to
flatter him withal, nor for that he sought a defence ag-
ainst chuncertain end of war, or for articles of peace, but of his
owne noble hart, whiche taught him to contend with the
power of his enemies and not with theyr calamities, pro-
mising to performe all Darius request if he woulde take
himselfe as next vnto him, and not as his felowe, for lyke
as the worlde coulde not be ruled if there were ii. sonnes,
so the worlde coulde not without perill be gouerned by ii.
soverain kings. Therefore eyther yeld hym selfe the same
daye, or els prepare him selfe to battell the next daye, and
flatter not himself with hope of any other victory, then he
had cried already. The next day they brought their men in
to the field. Sodenly before the battell, Alexander being
heauy with cares, fel a slepe. And when all men were in a
redynesse to geue the charge vpon their enemies, the kyng
only was missing. Who being wth much adoe waked by
Parmenio, and of all his men demaunded the cause of his
so slowd slepe in so dangerous a time, seing he was wont
to slepe but litle, euen when he was mooste at his hartes
ease, sayd he was deliuered of a gret fear and that he had
slept of a sodain quietnes that came vpon him, because he
should encounter wth all the whole power of Darius to-
gether for he was afraid least the battell should haue bin
prolonged, if the Persians had deuised theyr host. Before
the battell the army stode in the sighte of other. The Ma-
cedones wondred at the number of their enemies, theyr
goodly personages, and their costly armoz. On the other
side the Persians were amazed to thinke how so few should
ouercome

ouercome so many thousands as they had. The captaines
also bestird them in looking to their charge. Darius tolde
his souldiers, that if they wer deuised, they wer mo then
ten to one of theyr enemies Alexander willed the Ma-
cedones not to be abashed at the multitude of theyr enne-
mies, at the hugenesse of their boobles, nor at the straung-
nesse of their couloure. Only he wold haue them to reme-
ber that this was the iii. time they fought with them, and
that they should not think them to be come better men by
there oft running away specially sith they brought vnto
the battell with the, so slowfull a remembrance of their
own discomfitures, and of so much blousshed as they had
gon away with in the ii. former confliats. And as Darius
had þ greater number of mē: so had he himselfe the greater
strength. Wherefore he exhorted them to despise that host
that glittered so with gold and silver, in which there was
more gaine then danger seing that victory was not gotten
by that brybery of furniture, but by the force of weapon.
After this, þ onset was geue. The Macedones layd about
them with theyr weapons, as in disuaine of theyr enemye
whom they had vanquished so often before. On þ contrary
part, þ Persians had leuer die then be vanquished. Which
caused so much blousshed as hath not lightly bene scene in
any battell. Darius when he sawe his men put to the worse
woulde gladly haue died in the fild, but that such as were
about him compelled him to fle. Afterwarde when some
gaue him counsell to breake the bridge ouer the river Ly-
cus to the ende to stop his enemies from pursute, he sayd
he set not so much by him self, that he wold cast so manye
of his company into theyr enemies hands: and therefore he
should be a way for other to eschape as wel as it had be for
him self. Alexander enterprised such things as wer mooste
daungerous, & where he saw his enemies thicke & fight-
ing sharpest, thither woulde he curre thynste himselfe de-
sirous alwayes to take the downe rowest things to hym-
self, and not to leaue them to his souldiers. By this battell

Darius is
put to flyght

The care of
Darius for
the safegarde
of his souldy-
ours.

Here begin-
neth the Em-
pire of Mace-
done.

he toke away thepire of al Asia, the fifth yere after he be-
gan to reigne. Whose felicity was so great, that no man
hereafter durst rebel, and the Persians them selues after
so many yeres continuance of their monarchie, patientely
receiued the yoke of bondage. When he had rewarded and
refreshed hys souldiers, he did nothing xl. dayes after, but
take a view of the spoile of his enemy. He found xl. ta-
lents locked vp in the city. Also he wan Persipolis the hed
of the kingdome of Persia, a cite that had continued fa-
mous many yeres together, and stuffed with the spoyles
of the whole world wherby thing was not before. the taking
therof. While these thinges were a doing, there came too
Alexander about an eyght hundred Greeces, who besides
theyr punishment of Captiuitie, had also som of theyr lim-
bs cut of: requestinge him that as he had reuenged Grece
so he wold also reuenge them of the cruelty of theyr ene-
mies. When he had put them in choyce to returne home
into their countries, they chose rather to take certayn lan-
des ther, leaste they might not so much reioyce ther. Scen-
des as make them abhorre to loke vpon them.

Darius is
bound in fet-
ters of gold,
and wvounded
to death by
hys owne
kynsmen.

In the meane season to win the conquerors fauour wyth
al, Darius own kinsmen bound him in fetters and chaines
of gold in a village of the Parthians called Tane. I thinke it
was euen the ordinaunce and disposition of God. that the
Monarche of the Persians should take his end in the lande
of them that should succede in the Empire. Alexander also
the next morowe folowing after vpon the spurre, had in-
telligence of Darius, was conueyed out by night in an hoz-
selleter. When vpon commaunding his host to folow after,
he folowed the chace wth xl. of his hozsmen. In his iour-
ney he fought many dangerous battels. And when he
had ridden many a mile, and could hear no inkling of Da-
rius, as his hozles were a baitinge, one of his souldiours
goynge down to a waterlug therby, founde Darius in a lit-
ter stricken through with many woundes, but as yet aliue,
who calling to him the souldioure, when he perceyued
by hys

by his speche that he was one of his owne countrey men
sayd it was a cōfort to him being in the case that hee was,
that he should speake to one that coulde vnderstande him,
and not bitter his last wordes in vaine.

The words
of Darius at
hys death.

He had him beare wordes vnto Alexander that he died a
great vertoz of his without any desert of his owne parte,
for as much as he had found him like a king, and not like
an enemy towards his wife and children, and that it was
his chaunce to be better entreated of his enemy, then of his
owne kin. For whereas his enemy had geuen his wife and
children lisse, his kinsfolk to whom he had geuen both lyfe
and kingdoms, had bereft him of his life. For wherby his
doinges, he rendred him such thanks as he, himself hauing
the victorie listred to accept. This only one thinge (wherby he
lay in his power now at the point of death) wold he, do for
Alexander in recompence of his good turnes: he wold pray
to the powers celestiall, and the powers infernall, and the
Gods of kings, to geue him victorie and dominion of the
whole world. As to himself ward he desired nothinge, but
that he wolde graunt him buriall as of right he ought to
haue without grudge. And as touching the reuengement
of hys death, it was now no part of his care, but for exam-
ples sake it was the common case of all kynges: wherby to
neglecte as it should be dishonorable to him, so myghte it
turne to his better perill. For on the one part, the case con-
cerned his Justice, and on the other it touched his own
profit. In token wherof as an only pledge of the faith of a
king, he gaue him his right hand to cary vnto Alexander.
At those wordes he stretched out his hand and gaue vp the
ghost. When Alexander hard of it he came to se hys body
as he lay dead, and he wept to beholde so worthy an estate
come vnto so vntoworthy a death. Wherefore he caused hys
body to be buryed after the maner of kinges, and
soo hee bestowed in the Tumbes
of his auncestours.

It. ii.

The

The Contentes of the twelfth Booke,

Alexander buyeth his souldiours sumptuously. Agis king of Lacedemon maketh insurrection in Greece and is slaine. Alexander kyng of Epire vvarreth in Italy and is wounded to death. Zopyron with his host is slayn by the Scythians. Alexanders souldiours being in Parthia, desyre to return home, he subdueth Hyrcanie and the made Thalestris Quene of Thaumazones, companyeth with Alexander, he usurpeth the maners of the Persians, frequenteth feasting, lycenceth his souldiours to marry theyr prytoners, outrageth agaynste his noble menne, conquereth the people that inhabite the fore of Caucasus, in the which tyme Bellus that killeth Darius, is brought bound vnto him vvhō he deliuereth to be punished to Oxatres, the brother of Darius, he buildeth Alexandria vpon Tanais, killeth Clitus at the table, falleth in great despayre for the same, receiueth countrie by composition, putteth Calisthenes and other noble men to death, giveth his souldier, siluer Bucklers, entrencheth into inde, vvhether a Queene called Cleopatra, yelding herself and her kingdom vnto him, receyue it agayne at his hande, ouercometh kyng Porus, buildeth two cities, subdueth foure Nations, is desyred by his souldiours againe to returne home vanquisheth the Eufrys, receiue by composition the Gellones and Alybanes, conquereth the Amores and Sycabres, is sore wounded in the cite of the Oxidraques preferueth his host from poisoned wounds by thadmonishment of a dreame, buildeth a Cytie in the mouth of the ryuer Indus, returneth to Babylon putteth the Lieutenants of diuers countreies to death, punisheth a mutinie among his souldiours, mourneth for the death of Ephestius, enterreyneth thambassadors of Carthage, Spayne, Fraunce, &c. is poisoned by Antipater comforteth his souldiours, making a tumult for his death, deliuereth his ryng to Perdicas and dyeth.

Alexander bestowed great cost in burying of his souldiours that were slaine in pursuinge Darius, and to the residue of his companie he departed with xv. talents. The greater part of his hostes foundered with beate, and such as remained were able to do no service. The whole summe of the money gotten alate by this victorie, was a hundred and threescore and fifty thousande talents, wherof Parmenio was made treasurer. Whyle these things were a doing, letters were brought from Antipater out of Macedone, & therof wherof contained the warres of Agis king of the Spartanes in Greece, of Alexander king of Epire in Italy, & of his lieutenant Sopyron in Scythia. Which put sundry thought into his head. Neuertheless when he hadde wel digested the nature of the kingdomes by his enuyres, hee was more glad of the losse of them, then sorre for the losse of his armye and his captain Sopyron.

Antipaters
letters
regent of
Macedone

For after that Alexander had taken his iourne, almoste all Greece fel to rebellion in hope to recouer their liberty, ensaing the ensample of the Lacedemonians, which alone ly forlooke the peace, and despised the orders taken bothe by Philip and Alexander. Captaine and ringleader of this Commotion was Agis king of the Lacedemonians. But Antipater leuied a power & suppressed this Insurrection, as the very firste rising thereof, notwithstandinge there was great slaughter on both partes. King Agis when he sawe his men put to flight, (to the extent that albeit he coulde not haue as good fortune as Alexander, hee mighte not seeme inferiour to him in courage,) sent away his garde and him selfe alone made such slaughter of his ennemyes that sometime he put to flight whole bandes at ones. At the last although he were oppressed by the multitude yet he wan the glory from them all.

Furthermoze Alexander kinge of Epire, being sent into Italy to aide the Tarentines against the Brutians, toke that triage vpon him as desirously, as though the whole world shoulde haue bene deuoted, and that Alexander the sonne of his sister Olympias shoulde haue had the East, & hym self the West, entending to haue no lesse a do in Italy Affrike and Sicil, than the other shoulde haue to do in Asia & among the Persians. Besides this, like as the Oracle at Delphos had prophesied vnto great Alexander, that his destruction shoulde be wrought in Macedone, in the Oracle of Iupiter of Dodone had tolde this Alexander, that the citie Pandose & the riuer Acheruse shoulde be his fatal end.

Nowe for as much as both of them were in Epire) not knowing that they were in Italy also (to the intent to auoid the daunger of his desier, he gladly enterprised warre in a strange land. Therfore when he came into Italy, the first war that hee had was with the Appulians, but when he understode the destities of their Citie, he made peace & frendshipp with their king. For at that time the head Citie of Appulia was Brunduse, whiche was founded by the

Trii. Actolians

A rebellion
in Greece

The valiance
of Kinge
Agis.

Of this Alexander is mention made in the end of the viii. booke.

The foundation of Brunduse in Italy.

Aetolians vnder the conduct of Diomedes that famous & renowned captain for his actes at the battell of Troie. But being expelled by the Appulians, they asked counsell of the Oracles. Wher answer was made y^e they shold possesse the place that they required, for euer. Whereupon they required the Appulians, by their ambassadoys to reder their City againe, or else they threatened to make sharpe warre vpon them. The Appulians hauing knowledge of the answer of the oracle, slew the ambassadours and buried the in the City, there to dwell for euer, and so hauing dispatched the meaning of the Oracle, they enioyed the City a great time. Which dede when Alexander of Epyre knew of, for reuerence to the destinies of so long continuance, he forbore to trouble Appulians.

Then made he warre with the Brutians and Lucanes, and friendship with the Metapontines, Rutilians & Romans. But the Brutians & Lucanes hauing gotten help of the neighbours fierly renewed the warres againe. Where the king nere vnto the city Pandose and the river Acheruse was wounded to death, not knowing the name of his fatal place, before he was slaine. And when he should dye, he perceiued that in his owne country was not the danger of death, for whiche he had forsaken his country. The Tyrrians ransomed his body at the charges of their city and buried it honorably. While these things were a doing in Italy, Zopirion also whom great Alexander had left president of Pontus thinking it a point of cowardnesse to lye still and doe nothing, raised an army of xxx. thousand souldiers, and made war to the Scythians. Where being slaine with al his host, he suffered one punishment for makinge war so rashly against an vnburefull people. When tidnges of these things were brought vnto Alexander into Parthia he made himselfe very sorrowful for the death of his cosen Alexander, and commaunded al his host to morne for him by the space of iii. dayes. After this, as though the war had

Alexander
king of Epyre
is wounded
to death,

The death of
Zopirion pre-
sident of Pon-
tus.

bin ended in the death of Darius, when al men looked to returne into their countries, all ready after a soyle embracing in thei^r mindes their wiues and children: Alexander summoned his souldiers together, perswading them that all those notable battels were to no purpose, if the barbarous nations of the East were left vntouched: for he desired not Darius body, but his kingdome, and al such ought to be pursued as forsake their obedience to the kingdome. When he had by this oration quickned the mindes of his souldiers a new, he subdued Hyrcanie & the Mardes. In that same country met him Thalestris otherwise named Minothra Quene of the Amazones with CCC. women, who had come xxx. dayes iourney through the sauage countries and through the middes of her enemies of purpose to haue issue by Alexander. The sight and coming of whom was wondered at, both for the apparell vntwonted to women, & also for the requesting for company with Alexander & his men. Upon this occasion xxx. dayes spent in idleness, & when she thought her selfe with child, she departed home againe. After this Alexander (as though he had made himselfe subiect to their lawes and customes whom he had vanquished) toke vpon him the apparell and diademe of the kings of Persia, a thing vntwonted to the kings of Macedonie before y^e time. And he commaunded the thing should not seme moze heynous in himselfe alone (to the intent he might counterfeite y^e Persians as well in excesse of apparel as in excesse of fare) he also commaunded his friends to wear long robes of cloth gold & purple. Moreouer he spent y^e nights by turnes among y^e hony & concubins which were women of most excellent beauty, & of great birth. And least his lustful likings might seme to abate & decay he furthered them furniture of great fare, & therunto he set out his feasts wth princely pastimes & shows quite forgetting y^e by such meanes, riches are wont to be wasted & not gotten. Vpon this his doing arose great grudging through al his camp, y^e he shold so soone degenerate from his fa-
And ther Iulias to

Alexander en-
courageth his
souldiers to
the vvaies.

Thalestris
Quene of the
Amazones.

Alexander fal-
loweth to the vy-
ces of the Persi-
ans.

A policy of
Alexander
which after-
ward passed
into a custom.

as to disoaine even the name of his countrey, and to take
vpon him the maners of the Persians, whom for such ma-
ners he had subdued. But least he alone myght seeme to
haue yelod to the vices of these whom he had subdued, he
gaue his souldiers leaue, (if any of them wer delighted in
the company of their prisoners,) to take the to theyr wy-
ues, chynking that they wold haue lesse minde homeward,
when they had in theyr eyes as it were an image of theyr
householde dwelling places, and also that they woulde
make lesse accout of their trauel in a warres for y delighe
they had in theyr wines. Besides this he thought Mace-
dony shoulde not neede to be spent so much in sending cap-
tyues for them y were slain. If the yong imps succeeded y
olde souldiers their fathers, and were trapped vp in the
same trench that they were boyn in. And he thought they
wold becom y hardier if they wer not only trained vp but
also nurced in the camp: whiche custome remained also
among the succellours of Alexander. Therfore ther was
a stipend appointed to finde the Chyliden with al, & when
they came to mannes estate, they had apparell of hoyle &
barnesse geuen them, and the fathers had wages slowen
them accordyng to the number of their sonnes. If anye of
their fathers died, the chyliden neuerthelesse toke their fa-
thers wages and so their chylidhode among so many bya-
ges was euen a very warfate. Therfore being from their
tender yeres hardened with continual trauel and perils,
they became an inuinctible host accompting the camp for
none other then their countrey, nor the batell for any other
then theyr assured victory. The people that were thus be-
gotten, were called Epygones. Afterwarde when he had
conquered the Parthians, he made ruler ouer them one
of the chief noble men of all Persia named Andragoras,
from whom the kynge of Parthia did afterward descend.
In y mean season Alexander began to outrage with his
owne men, not like a king but like an enemy. In especial-
ly it displeased him that some of them founde fault with
him

Alexander ou-
rage h against
his noble men
for reprobren-
ding his vi-
ces.

him for breaking the customes of his father Philip and of
his owne countrey. For whiche offences the auncient sa-
ther Parmenio, next in estate to the kyng and his sonne
Philotas after inquisition had vpon them, were both put to
death. Ther vpon al the camp began to be on a roze, be-
wailing the mischaunce of the innocent old man and his
sonne, not letting sometime to saye, that it was not for
them to loke for any better.

When these things cam to Alexanders eare, fearing that
(if the byute hereof shoulde be blowen into Macedone) the
glozy of his conquests shoulde be stained with the spot of
crueltye, he made as thonghe he woulde send certain of his
frendes into Macedone to beare home tidings of his con-
quests, willing his souldiers to wyte to theyr frends for
it wold be long or they had the lyke occasiō again, because
they woulde make warre farther of. Whiche being doone,
he caused the packets of letters to be brought pryncely vn-
to him, by whiche vnderstanding euery mannes opinyon
of him, he put al those together into one bande that hadde
any ill opinion of him: entending either to consume them
by battell, or els to people townes with the in y uttermost
partes of the world. Then he subdued the Dracans, the
Euergets, the Parimās, the Paropamisadanes, the Hiscas-
pians, and the other kindes of people that inhabit the fote
of Caucasus. In the meane time was brought vnto hym
fast bound Bessus one of Darius frends, who had not on-
ly betrayed the king his master, but also slain him. Whō in
reuengemēt of his traitterous act, he deliuered to Darius
brother to punish him as he thought good, accompting not
Darius so much his enemy, as the frend of Darius that had
slayne his owne master. And to content he might leaue
his name behynd him in those countries, he builded a city
vpon the riuer Tanais, and named it Alexandria. The wal
whereof beinge vi miles in compasse, he finished with in
xviij dayes, remouing into it the people of all other cities
that Cyrus had builded. Among y Sogdians, and Bactrians

Bessus is pu-
nished for his
treason.

Alexandria
vpon Tanais

also

Read this hi-
story & marke
what advice
displeasures
is in a prince.

also, he builded cities distributing in them, as such as he knew to be seditious in his hoste. These things thus brought to passe, vpon a certain solempne day he had his frendes to a feast. After the time they had taken in theyr cuppes, mention being made among the as concerning the actes of king Philip, he began to prefer him selfe before his father, extolling y^e greatnesse of his own dedes aboue the skies, where vnto the greater part of his guests assented. Therfore when Clytus one of the old men, vpon trust of the kinges friendship (as one y^e in that respect was the chiefest about him) defended the fame of Philip, standing in the prayse of his noble actes, he offended the kynge so sore, that he snatched a weapon out of one of his gardes hand, and slue him at the table.

And then triumphing at the murder, he cast him in the teeth as he lay dead, with his defending of Philip, & with his commendation of his fathers warres. But after that his minde being satisfied with the slaughter begā to quiet it selfe and that aduise ment entered in place of anger, considering one while whom hee had slaine, & another while vpon what occasion he slue him, he began to loth his own act done, that he had taken his fathers prayles in such displeasure, as he ought not to haue taken reprochful words: lamenting that he was so much ouersene, as to kill his friend being an old man, & faultlesse, among dishes & cuppes. Therupon being turned with like rage to repentance as he was euen now vnto anger, he would haue dyed.

First he fel a weping and taking vp the dead body in his armes, sear ched his wounds, and acknowledged his madnesse to him as if he could haue heard him, & pulling oute the weapon, set it to his owne harte, and had slayne hym selfe if his frendes had not wrested the weapon out of his hand. He continued in this wilfulnesse to die certain dayes after. For the more to augment his sorow, there came to his minde the remembrance of Clytus sister who was his nurse, of whome (albeit she was not there,) yet was hee

ashamed

ashamed in himself, that he had so shamefully rewarded hir for nourishing him, as now man growen and a conquerour, to present hir that had borne him in his armes all the time that he was a child, with the corse of her brother, in recompence of her good turnes.

After he bechought him, what tales and slaunders he had raised of himself in his armye, and amonge the nations that he had conquered, what feare and secreete hatred toward him, he had striken into the hearts of his other frends, how bitter and lothsom he had made his own table, being not so terrible armed in the field, as sitting naked at his meate. Then came to his remembrance Parmenio & Phylotas, the came Amyntas his Sillers sonne, the came his mother in lawe, and her brothers that were put to death, the came Attalus, Eurylochus, Pausanias, & other noble men of Macedone, whose liues he had taken away. Whereupon he obstinately forsoke his meate iii. days together, vntill his whole host came & increased him, beseeching that he would not so lament the death of one man, as they had cast them all away, now when he had brought the to the uttermost of the barbarous nations, there to be lesse destitute among the middes of their enemies that most hated them, & whom they had stirred therunto by battell. Greatly herunto proffited the perswasion of the Philosopher Callisthenes who had be his scholeselomunder Aristotle, and was then lately sent for by the king himself to put his actes in wrighting. Therfore when he had called backe his courage again to the wars, he retepued the Chorasians & Darcans by composition. Afterward so he sent all things shold be more spiciful) which one point of state liuesse taken of the custome of the Persians, he had hitherto delayed (he gaue commandement they shold no more salute him but adore him. Callisthenes was one of the y^e mode wisest against his purpose, which thing was y^e confusion of himselfe, & of many noble men of Macedonie. For vnder the colour of treason they were all put to death,

Neuer the-

The force of eloquence.

A good reward of persuading hym from dispute, readen in the xv. booke,

Things done in anger, are repented by Ioyfull.

Neuertheless the Macedones held still thepp custome of saluting their kynges and utterly reiected the manner of adoring. After this he marched toward Inde, to the intent he might bound his Emppre at the Ocean sea, and shutt most part of the East. To the which renown that the ornaments of his army myght be agreable, he overlaid the trappers of the hoxses, & tharmoz of his soldiers with silver, and after thepp silver shieldes he named his whole host Argiraspides. When he came to the City Nisa, for as muche as the men of the towne, (vpon a certain supersticious confidence that they had in their God Burchus, who was the founder therof) made no countenance of resistance, he commaunded to spare it: greatly reioysing that he had not only folowed that warres but also the verpe fotestepes of the God. From thence he led his host to see the holy Mount, whiche of it owne nature was beset with bynes and Iuyce in suche order, as if it had bin dressed with mannes hande, and set by conning of workmen. As soon as his host came at the mountaine, beyng moued throughe a sodain instinct of minde to the holpe howlings of the God, they skattered here and there without any harme taking, to the great admiration of the king. After by he myghte perceiue that in sparing the townsmen, he had not so much pleased them as his owne army. The went he to Dardalus hill, and to the kingdome of Queene Cleophas who yelding her self, receiued her kingdome agayne, payinge for the ransome therof certayne nightes lodgynge with Alexander, at whose hand he obtained throughe her pleasure valiaunce, the thing she coulde neuer haue gotten by force of armes. The sone that she conceiued by him she named Alexander, who afterwarde enioyed the kingdome of Inde. Cleophas the Queene for desiring of her chastite was euer after called of the Indians the kynges Concubine. When he had trauelled throughe Inde, he came to a rocke of meruelous bignesse and roughnesse, into which many people were fled, from winning wherof it was tolo him

Silverfl. Ms

Se the fond-
nle of super-
stition.The Queene
Cleophas.

him that Hercules was prohibited by an earthquake. Being therfore inflamed with desire to surmount the doings of Hercules, with great laboz and peril, he won the rock. Whereupon all the people round about yelded themselves vnto him, and he took them to grace. There was one of the kings of Inde, whose name was Porus, a man of meruelous strength of body, and of wonderfull stoutnesse of stomacke, who hearing of the same of Alexander, prepared for the warre against his comming. Therfore when it came to the encounter, he willed his men to set vpon the Macedones, and to let him alone with thepp king.

Then counter
betuene Po-
rus and Alex-
ander.

And Alexander made no variance to the combate. But at the first encounter his horse was wounded vnder hym, and he fell downe headlonge to the grounde, howbeit his garde kept about him and saued him. Porus being overcharged with many woundes was taken prisoner. Who sorowed so greatly for his being vanquished, that albeit he founde saue at his enemies hande, yet would he not receiue any sustenance, nor suffer his woundes to be dressed: and muche a while there was to entreate hym to liue. Whom Alexander in honoure of his valiaunt courage, sent home in safety into his kingdome agayne. Then builded he two Cities wherof he called the one Nicca and the other (after the name of his horse) Bucephalia.

After ward, he conquered the Adraites, the Stathenes the Possides, and the Gangarites, and slew all their armies. When he came to the Eufyts, where his enemies awaited his comming with two hundred thousand horsemen all his whole army being wearied as well with the number of thepp victories, as with their continual labours, besought hym with teares that he would at length make an ende of his warres, and minding his owne countrey again, haue regard to the peres of his souldiours, which were scarce able to liue so longe as whyle they might retourne home. One shewed his grape heade, another his woundes, another his leane carcase wythered with age,

Alexander
conquestes in
Inde.

another his bodie full of skarres and maimes. Sayinge that they alone were the men that had endured out the continuall watres of two kinges, Phylip and Alexander. Wherefore they besought hym to restore at least wylle thei poore carkeless, to the graues of thei fathers, who nowe fainted, not for wante of harte, nor for wante of good will, but for want of peres. And if he would not regarde his souldiours, yet to haue a respecte to hymselfe, and not to weare his good fortune with taking so much of hit. Being mouen with these iuste petitions (as it were to winde by his breeches withal) he caused his camp to be set out after a statelie sort, that it was wote to be throughe the holgenesse wherof, he mighte both put his enemies in feare, and also leaue somewhat for them that shold come after him to talke of. His souldiours neuer did worke in all thei liues with better wils. Wherefore when they had discomfited thei enemies they retired into them agayne with great ioye. From thence Alexander went to the riuer Acesine, and by the same he sailed to the Ocean where he toke to merche the Gellones and Asybanes which were founded by Hercules.

Alexanders
valiantneisse,
peril and good
fortune.

From hence again he sailed to the Ambres and Sicabres, which met him with foure skores thousande foremen, and the skore thousand boismen. When he had gotten the upper hand of them, he led his host against their city, wherby he finding destitute of defendantes, as he looked from the wall, (the which he first of his men had skaled) he lepte into the plaine of the cite without any of his gard about him. When his enemies sawe him there alone, they ran at hym on all sides with a great shout, endeuorunge if they could to smite the warres of that whole woode in one mannes deathe, and so he reuenged vpon him for so many nations. Alexander on the contrary parte as manfully withstode the, and bring but one man alone, foughte against so many thousands. It is not almost to be spoken, that neither the number of his enemies, nor the force and multitude

multitude of their weapons, nor their confused noyse as they assailed him, could make him afraid, and that being but one alone, he shoulde beate downe and put to flight so many thousandes. But when he perceiued himself to be ouercharged with the multitude, he withdrew himselfe to a blocke that stode by the wal, by help wherof standing in safegarde, he held them all cacke so longe, till his friends knowing in what perill he stode, leaped downe vnto hym. Of whom many were slain, and the battell hong in doubt, vntil the time that all his army (hauinge ouerthrowen the walles) came to his relieue. In that conflict being stricken with an arrow vnder the right pappe, when he had bled so sore that he could not stand for feblenesse, he kneled on his knee, and neuer lest fighting vntil he had slain him of whom he was wounded. The healyng of the wounde was grievouser then the wound it self. Wherefore when at lengthe (contrary to all hope,) he had recovered his health, he sent Poliperchon with his host to Babilon, and hee hymselfe with a number of the moste pycked and chosen souldiers, toke shippinge and skoured the Ocean seas, alonge the coast. When he came at the city of king Ambyger, the townesmen hearyng that he could not bee overcome by the swoorde, dipped thei arrows in popson, and so with double wound of deathe repulsed the enemye from thei walles, and slue verie manye of them. When as amonge many others Ptolomy was deadly wounded, and was lyke to haue died out of hande, an herbe was shewed the kyng in his slepe, that shoulde remedy the popson. The which being geuen him in drinke, he was forthwith deliuered from thimminent danger, and the most part of the army was by this meanes preserved. Afterwarde when he had won the town by force, he returned into his ships, and made an offering to the Ocean, making supplication for safe retourne into his country. And as though he had offered his chariot about the mark, he stablished the boundes of his Emperre, as far as ther was any land habitable, or as far as the sea was

Alexander sent
with his hoste
to Babilon.

Alexander is
repulsed with
venymous
Dartes.

able

Alexanders
returnes into
Babilon and
his doynges
there.

able to be sailed, with prosperous winde he entred into the mouth of the river Indus. There (as a monument of his conquests) he builded the city Barce, & set vp alters, leauing one of his friends for lieutenant of the Indians that inhabited the sea coast. From thence intending to iourneie by lande when he hearde saye that his waye was without water, he commaunded pits to be made in places convenient as he shold go, wherein finding great plenty of sweet water, he returned to Babilon. There many of the nations that he had subdued, accused their rulers, who Alexander without respect of friendship or fauor, caused to be putte to death in his presence of the ambassadors. After this he toke to wife Satir the daughter of kyng Darius. Furthermore he chose out the noblest and beautifullest ladies and gentle women of all nations, and gaue them to his noble men in marriage: which thing he did to the intent that by a common fact his own offence shoulde seme the lighter. The summo- ned he his army before him, and promised to pay all the pay- ments of his own purse, y^t they might carie home clere their bodies and rewards. This liberality was notable not on- ly for the great summe, but also in consideration of the free- geuing thereof. And it was as thankfully receyued of the creditors as of the debtors, because it was as hard a mat- ter for thome to haue demaunded it, as for the other to haue paid it. There & twenty thousand talents were bestowed here aboutes. Furthermore he calshed the olde souldiers, and supplid theyr rounnes with pöger. But such as were retained wyl, grudging at the dismissing of the olde souldiers, required to be calshed also, & haue him pay the thei- wages and not to tell them of theyr peres: for saynge they were choosen into warre are together, they thought it but righte & duty to be discharged together. And now they deale not with him by way of petition, but with flat raptling. By- dyng him finish his warres alone with his father Hammö and then go set light by his souldiours. On the contrary part, sometime he rebuked them, sometime he admonished them

Alexanders
liberalitye
his souldiers

them with gentle wordes, that they shoulde not darken theyr famous conquestes with rebellion. At the length when he saw his wordes could nothing a- uail, he rose out of his chappre vnarmed, and stept among them being all armed to fetch out the authours of that re- bellion. And without gainsayng pulled out xiii. of them, and led them to execution with his own handes. So great patience in suffering death did the feare of a kinge caste vpon them, or the custumable enuring to the discipline of warre, giue him boldnesse to put them to execution. Then called he the Persians aside, and spake to them, and praised theyr continual faithfulness both to him and to their kings in tymes past, rebelling his benefites towards them how he neuer accompted them as vanquished, but as partakers of his victorie, and (to be shor) how he had passed into thei- lawes and custmes, and not they into the customes of his country, & that by ioyning affinitie & aliance, he had made the conquerors and the conquered a like. And now he said he would betake the custodie of his own person, not onely to the Macedones, but also vnto them. Wherevpon he chose a thousand of theyr yong men into his garde, and to an o- ther sort of them he gaue armor and weapon, and dysper- sed them into his own host, that they shoulde learne the or- der of the warres of Macedone. Wherby thing the Mac- dones toke soxe to hart, lamenting y^t the king shoulde take his enemies to serue in their rounnes. Then they came all weeping to the king, & besought him to satisfie himselfe by punishing the, then with putting the to shame. By which submissiö they obtained that a xi. M. of y^e olde souldiers wer discharged. And of his frends there were dismissed (because they were old men) Polyperchon, Clytus, Gorgias, Poly- damas & Antigonus. Craterus had the charge of those y^e were sent away with commission to take vpon him as re- gent of Macedone in steade of Antipater. And Antipater was commaunded to come with a number of yong souldi- oirs to supply his rounne. They that returned home had allowance

The Iournes
of Alexander.

R.i.

allowance

The death and
sumptuous
buriall of E-
phestion.

allowance of wages as wel as they that followed, & was
still. While these thinges were adoeing, one of his sennes
named Ephestion whom he loued entirely, first for is ex-
cellent beautie when he was a boy, & secondly for his hum-
ble obedience, deceased. For whom the king mourned a
long time more then stode with the honoz of a king to do,
and bestowed xliij. talents vpon a tombe for him, geuing
commaundement to honour him as a God. As he was in
his way returning towards Babilon from the furthest
landes & bordered vpon the Ocean, tidings were brought
him that the ambassadours of Carthage, and other cities
of Affrike, and also of Spaine, Sicil, Fraunce, Sardinia,
and many of Italy did waite for his comming at Babilon.
So great a terrour had the fame of his name striken into
the hartes of all the world, that all nations as if they had
determined to acknowledge him for their soueraign lord,
were glad to fawne vpon him. For this cause therefore as
he was making speede to Babilon (as it were to hold a par-
liament of the whole world) One of the wisemen told him
that it was not good for him to come there: affirming that
it was his place where he should die. Therupon he left Ba-
bilon and went to the citie Byrse beyond the riuer Euphra-
tes which ere whiles lay desolate. There the philosopher
Anaxarchus through his perswasion compelled hym to de-
spise the foresayings of the wisemen as false and vncer-
taine, soasmuch as if they were determined by destiny,
men were not prynces to them, or if they were ordayned by
the law of nature, it was not possible for a man to auoyd
them. Returninge therfore to Babilon when he had spent
many dayes in idleness, hee set vpp a new his feasting
which he had left of now a good while, and geuing himself
altogether to riote, spent day and night in reueling. And
immediatly vpon a banquet, the Physician Thessalus made
a rare supper, and desired the king and his Lords vnto it.
Alexander tooke a cuppe in his hand, and as he was in the
middest of his drought, sodaynly he gaue a great sighe as
thouge he

The ambaf-
sades of Af-
frike and of
the West.

Alexander is
poysoned.

thoughe hee had bin striken to the harte with a dagger:
and being caried from the banquet halfe deade, was tor-
mented with so intollerable payne, that hee despyed to
haue a sword to ride hymselfe out of his life withall, and
when any manne touched hym, it was as greivous to
hym, as if they had wounded him. His frendes caused it to
be nopsed, that his excessive dronkenesse was the cause
of his disease. But in very dede it was the treason of them
selues, the slaunder wherof was suppressed by the power
of them that succeeded.

The authour of this treason was Antipater, who se-
ing his most deare frendes murdered, his sonne in lawe
Alexander of Lyncest put to death, and himselfe (after his
noble enterpryses atcheyued in Greece,) not so muche ac-
cepted for his labour as had in disdaine, & therunto being
tickled with diuers complaints made by Olympias, Alexan-
ders mother, and moreouer considering what straight Ju-
stice and cruell execution was lately before done vpon the
Ipeutanautes of sondry countreys) could gather no lesse
by the premises, but that hee himself also was sent for out
of Macedone, not to attende vpon hym in his warres, but
to bee punished as other had bin. Therefore to the intente
to preuent the kinges purpose, he sent hys sonne Cassan-
der priuily with popson, the which Cassander with Philip
and Iolla his brothers, were wonte to serue the kyng at
hys Table. And the force of the popson was so great that
there was neither brasse, yron, nor earthen vessel, that
was able to holde it, nor it coulde not be caried any other
wise then in the booke of a horse, laying straight charge v-
pon his sonne that he should not trust any man sauinge
Thessalus and his brothers.

For this cause therefore was the banquet prepared and
begon a new in his house Thessalus Philip & Iolla whiche
were wonte to be the kynes cup bearers and his tasters,
had the popson in cold water, the which water they tastid
and cast it vpon the drinke. The fourth day after, Alex-

K. ii. ander

The authors
of Alexander
death.

The death &
sumptuous
buriall of E-
phefion.

Thamball,
des of A if yke
and of the
West.

ander perceiuing there was no way with him but deathe
said he acknowledged the destiny of the house of his an-
cestors. For the *Ætides* commonly died ere they came to
xxx. yerres of age. The he appeased his souldiours which be-
gan to make an uprore vpon mistrust y the king was kyl-
led by treason, and being bozne vp into the highest & ope-
nest place in all the citie, and there laid forth vpon a couch,
he admitted them all to his presence, & put forth his right
hand to the to kill as they stood weeping about hym. And
where as all the company wept to behold him in þ case, he
not only shed forth neuer a teare, but also was withoute a-
ny toke of pensiuenes: in so much as he comforted certain
of the that made to great sorrow. Unto some he gaue ar-
rands to do to their friends fro him. So þ like as his harte
was invincible toward the enemy, so was it invincible al-
so against death. When he had sent away his souldiours he
demanded of his friends as they stood about him, whether
they thought they shauld finde the like king againe or no.
Euery mā holding his peace, he said, that as he knew not
that, so he perfectly knew and prophesied, yea & in manner
saw it presely before his eyes, how much bloud *Micedone*
shoulde spend in that quarel, and with how great slaughter
it shoulde keepe his funerals after his departure. At þ last
he willed his body to be buried in the Temple of *Hammō*.
When his friends sawe him drawe on, they asked who
shoulde be heire of his Empire. He answered, the worthi-
est. So great was the courage of his harte, that whereas
he left behind him his sōne *Hercules*, his brother *Arideus*
and his wyfe *Roxanes* great with chylde, forgettyng all
kynrede and aliaunce, hee denounced hym to be his heyre,
that was worthiest. As though it had not bin lawfull
for anye man to succede a valiaunte manne than a valy-
aunte manne, or to leaue the richeste of so great a kyng-
dome to any other, than to suche as were tryed menne.
Which is worde (as though he had blowen a trompet a-
mong his noble men, or sowne the seede of myschpye and
debate

debate) euery one became enemy to other in his harte, and
with colourable flattery princely sought the fauour of the
men of warre. The vij. day when his speach was gone, he
tooke the Ringe of his finger, & deliuered it to *Perdicas*,
which thing appeased the dissentiō of his frendes already
beginninge to budde. For albeit he were not pronounced
heere by word of mouth, yet it seemed it was his minde he
shoulde be his heyre. Alexander deceased of the age of .33.
yeres and one moneth, a man endued with stoutnesse of
courage aboue the rate of mans fragile nature. The same
night that his mother *Olympius* conceived him, she dream-
med she had to do w a great Dragon, neyther was she de-
cised of God in her dreame. For out of al doubt she bare
in her wombe a piece of worke exceeding the frailnesse of
mans nature. And although she were renowned both for
the house of *Æacus* from whence by *Aunciente* descent of
so many *Cyeres*, she was lineally conueyed, and also for
that her father, her brother, her husband and al her aunc-
cestors were kings: yet was she in none of all these respects
so much to be aduaunced as by her owne sonne. Many won-
drous tokens of his greatnesse appeared at the tyme
of his birth. For the same day that he was bozne, two *E-*
gles stood all day vpon the toppe of his fathers house,
representinge a token of his double Empire of Europe,
and Asia. And the very same day also his father had es-
dinges brought him of two victories, the one of a battaile
against the *Illyrians*, the other of the *Gaming* at the *Post*
capie *Olymp*, vnto which hee had sent his *Chariots*.
Which thinges were a token that the Child shoulde be
Conquerour of all Countreys. Duringe his childhood
hee was brought vp straightly to his learninge. When
hee grewe toward mans estate, hee encreased in know-
ledge for siue yeres space, vnder *Aristotle* the famousst
teacher of al *Philosophers*. Afterward when he had take
the kingdome vpon him, he proclaymeth himselfe king of
al Landes of the whole world. And he so behaued himse f
amonge

The tokens
that hapned
at Alexanders
death.

Alexanders
education, and
prosperity.

amonge his Souldiours, that if he were with them there was no enemy could make them afraide though they had bin naked themselues. Therefore hee neuer encountered with any enemy, but hee ouercame him: hee neuer besieged city, but he wanne it: no; neuer entered any Countrey but hee subdued it. And yet at the last hee was ouercome, not by force of the enemy, but by the falsehoode and treason of his owne subiectes.

The xiiij. Booke.

¶ The contentes of the. xiiij. Booke.

SHe mother of Darius dieth for sorrowe. Ardeus is made Kinge, the Emperre is deuided amonge the Noble men of Alexander: the Athenians, and Ætolians driue Antipater out of Greece. Perdica maketh Warre with Antares kinge of Cappadocia, the noble men of Macedone fall at variance amonge themselues: the foundation of the city of Cyrene in Africke. Perdicas is hated for his pride, and Eumenes winneth tivo Fieldes.

The great sorrow that was for the death of Alexander



When Alexander y great was thus dispatched out of the way in the very floure of his age & of his conquestes, all men were stricken in heauy dumps, and in especiall at the city of Babilon. But the nobles who he had subdued, coulde not geue credite to the report: because as they belueed him to be invincible so also they thought him to be immortall: caring to remembre how often he had bin deliuered from present death, and howe oftentimes when he had lost his Weapon, suddenly he shewed himselfe amonge his men not onely safe and sound, but also getting the upper hand. But when they were thoroughly perswaded that he was dead in deede, all the barbarous nations whome he had conquered a litle before, mourned for

for him, not as for an enemy, but as for a father. Moreover the Mother of Darius, (whom after the lesse of her sonne, beinge her selfe fallen frō the stage of so high estate, it repented not of her life vnto that day, for the great clemency and fauour that she found in hir conqueror) when she heard of Alexanders death forsook her selfe: not because she let more by her Enemy than hir owne Sonne, but because she had founde the naturall loue of a Sonne in him, whom we had feared as her Enemy.

Contrarywise the Macedones mourned not for him as for their countreyman or as for a kinge of such a maiesty, but reioyced as if they had lost an Enemy, cursinge his overgreat severity, and continuall leopordies that hee put them vnto by his warres. Besides this, the Princes gaped for the perticion of his kingdomes, and prouinces, and the common souldiours for his treasures, & for a great Masse of Gold as a booty falling into their monthes vnhooped for the one thinking to succede him in his Emperre, the other to possesse his richesse and Treasures. There were in the Treasore, an C. M. Talentes, besides the perely custom & Tribute, which amounted to CCC. M. But it was not for nothinge that the Noble men of Alexander looked for the kingdome. For they were every one of them of that prowess, representinge such a maiesty therewithal, yve woulde haue thoughte them to haue bin Kynges euerychone. For they were all men of such beauty, and fauour, so tall, and goodly personages, and of so great strength, and wisdom, that he that had not knowne the, woulde not haue thought they had bin all of one Countrey, but rather chosen out of all the whole world. And surely neither Macedones, nor any other Countrey before that tyme, did ener flourish with such a number of Noble men, whom first of all Philip, & afterward Alexander with such aduise were selected & picked out, that they seemed not so much to haue bin chosen to serue in the warres, as to succede in the kingdome. Who can then maruell that the world was subdued by

The vngreatitude of the Macedones.

The commendation of Alexander's noble men.

such men of seruice seinge þe army of Macedone was gouerned by so many, not Captaines but kinges, who neuer should haue found their matches, if they had not fallen at contention betwene themselves.

And Macedone should haue had many Alexanders for one if Fortune vpon enuy of their owne puissance, had not armed them one to destroy another. But after the time that Alexander was deade, they assembled together into one place neyther altogether merp nor oute of feare one of another. No lesse mistrusting the men of warre, whose liberty was now more large, and fauor vncertaine.

The consultation amonge Alexanders capitaines for the gouernment of the Empyre.

And amonge themselves the equality increased their discorde, no man so farre exceeding the rest, that any of them would submit himselfe vnto him. Therefore they assembled in the Palace all in Paruelle, to set an order in matters for the tyme. Perdiccas thought it good to abide the deliuerance of Roxanes, who had nowe gone pyghe monethes with childe by Alexander, and would bee ready shortly to lie downe, and if she brought forth a Sonne, to substitute him in his fathers steede. Meleager ripling thereunto, sayd, it was not meete to delay their determination vpon her doubtfull deliuerance, nor to tary for a king that was vnborne, sith they might take such as were borne already.

For if they desired to haue a childe to their kinge, there was at Pergamus Alexanders sonne by Arsine called Hercules: or if they had rather haue a younge man, there was in the campe of Arideus the brother, and companion of Alexander, one that was welbeloued of all men, not onely for his owne sake, but also for his father Kinge Philips sake. But as for Roxanes, for as much as she was a Persian, it was not lawfull for the Macedonians to take the kinges of their blood whose Empire they had subuerted, sith it was no part of Alexanders thought, for he made no mentiō at all thereof at his death. Ptolemy refused to haue Arideus made king, not onely for his mothers balenes (for hee was begot-

begotten of a Concubine of Larissa) but also for his continual sicknes, which was greater than could well be abiden in that case, least hee should heare the name, and another all the sway. Wherefore it were better for them to chuse some of those which for their promise had bin nearest about the kinge, to rule the prouinces & to take charge of the Warres, rather than vnder the colour of a king, to be at the commandement of unworthy persons. At length by the consent of them all, the sentence of Perdiccas tooke place. And so it was thought good to tary for the deliuerance of Roxanes, and if she had a manchild, it was determined that Leonatus, Perdiccas, Craterus, & Antipater should be protectours, and forthwith the rest toke their oth to bee obedient to them. When the horsemen had done the like, & footemen disdaining that they were made priuy to no parte of their doinges, proclaimed Arideus the brother of Alexander king, and chose him a garde of his owne kindred, geuinge him the name of his father king Philip. When tidinges hereof came to the horsemen, they sent to appease the wrath two Ambassadors of the noble men Attalus, and Melenger: who seeking preheminance by flatteryng multitude, lesse their Message, and condescended to the Soldiours. By and by the tumult increased, when it once had gotten a head and counsell.

Arideus is proclaimed King in a Tumult.

Then of purpose to destroy the men of armes, they armed themselves, and rushed into the Palace. The men of armes vnderstandinge what perill they stood in, fearefully conueyed themselves out of the city, & pitched their Campe in the fieldes, whereat the footmen also began to be afraid. Neither did the hatred of the Noble men cease. Attalus sent to kill Perdiccas Captayne of the contrary part. Vnto whom beinge armed, when they that were sent to strike him durst not appoche, although of his owne Courage hee prouoked them thereunto, Perdiccas was of such boldenelie, that of his owne free will he went to the footmen, and assemblinge them together, laide to their charge what

The first dissension amonge Alexanders Successours.

The stoutnes of Perdiccas.

what a hairens matter they attempted, willin^g e them to haue respect against whom they toke weapon in hand: alledging they were not Persians but Macedones, not enemies but theyr owne countrymen: yea and manie of them their kinsmen, or at leastwyle for the most part theyr companions in armes, and vertakers of their perils. Wherefore they should make a goodly shew to their enemies, that they might reioyce to see them murder one another, by whose puissance they lamented themselves to bee overcome: and to see them do sacrifice with their owne blood to the ghostes of them that they had slaine. When Perdicas had with his singular eloquence debated these matters to the full, he moued the souldiers in such wise, that by common consent he was chosen capitaine generall of them all. Then the Horse men also beinge brought to Attenuement, consented to take Arideus for kinge, reseruinge a parte of the kingedome for the sonne of Alexander if any should be borne. This did they, layinge the body of Alexander, amongst them, to the intent that his maiesty might bee as a witness of their decess. These thinges beinge thus set at a stay, Antipater was made regent of Macedone & Greece. Craterus was appointed to be high treasurer. The charge of the Campe, the Sea, & matters of Warfare were committed to Melager, and Perdicas: and Arideus himselfe was assigned to carry Alexanders corse to the temple of Hammon. Then Perdicas beinge soze displeased wth the authors of this sedition, sodenly without knowledge of his fellows, commaunded the next day a search should be made in the campe for the death of the king. When he had set all the host in a moy in the fildes by the consent of theym all, he called certayne seditious persons out of euery bande, & caused them priuily to be put to death. Thys done, he returned agayne & deuided the praouinces amonge the Hymetians, to the intent he mighte sende out of the way such as were his hackete frendes, and also make them all so thiike, that it was through his goodnesse that they obtayned such authority.

The force & eloquence.

The order taken for the gouernment of the Empire.

authority. First of all Egypt with a parte of Afrike, and Arabic fell by lotte vnto Ptolomie, whom Alexander for his nrauhode had promoted from a common Souldiur. And to put him in his Office, was appointed Cleomenes which builded Alexandria. The next prouince adioyning thereunto (which is Syria) was committed to Laomedon of Mytilene. Phylotas & his Son toke Cylicia, and Sclauonic.ouer the greater Media, was made ruler Acropat: ouer the lesser Alce the brother of Perdicas. The countrey of Sufanie was assigned to Syno, and the greater Phrygia vnto Antigonus the sonne of Philip. Learchus chaunced by lot vppon Lycia, and Pamphylia, Cassander vpon Caria, & Menander vpon Lydia. Vnto Leonatus happened the lesser Phrygia, vnto Lyfimachus, Thrace, and the countreys borderinge vpon the Sea of Pontus. Capadocia with Paphlagonia, were geuen vnto Eumenes. The Marshallship of the Campe fortunied to Seleuchus the sonne of Antiochus. Cassander the sonn of Antipater was made captain of the kinges Garde. In the further Bactria, & in the countreys of Indie, the former Lieutenantes were commaunded to keepe their offices still, sauinge that Taxilles had the Gouvernaunce of all that lay betwene the two Riuers of Hydaspes and Indus, and that Phyton the son of Agenor, was sent to haue the rule of the newe Townes that were builded in India. Ariarches toke vppon him the Gouvernment of the Parapomenians, people that inhabite the bettermost partes of the mountaine Caucasus. Statenor toke to gouerne the Dracans and Argeans, and Amyntas the Bactrians. Scythens obtained the Sogdians, Nicanor & Parghians, Philip the Hyrcanians, Phrataphernes the Armenians, Neoptolimus the Persians, Percesles & Babylonians, Artchous the Polasgians, and Archebius Mesopotamia. This partition like as it chaunced to euery one of them as his fatal charge. so was it vnto many of them the ground of great prosperitie. For ere it was any longe tyme after, (as though they had deuised Kingdomes and a seuerenatishipp.

The deuise of prouince.

nauntships, and beinge made kinges of Lientenantes) they not onely got great richesse to theymselues, but also left them to their posterity. While these thinges were a doinge in the East, the Athenians and the Etolians renewed the warres in Grece withall the power they were able to make, which they had already begon while Alexander was a liue. The occasion of this warre, was for that Alexander at his returne from Inde, wrote his letters into Grece, by which al such as were banished of what city so euer they were, (such as were attainted of murder onely excepted) were restored to their countreys againe. The open readinge of which letters in the presence of all Grece at the most of Olympus, had much busines, because that diuers of them were banished, not by order of lawe, but through peraukinge of the princes, which Princes feared that if the outlawes should be reuoked again, they might beare greater authoricy in the commō wealth then they. Whereupon euen then many cities murmured, sayinge openly that it were meete to set themselves at liberty by the sword. But the ring leaders in this quarrell were the Athenians and the Etolians. Whereof assone as Alexander had knowledge, he enioyned his confederates to finde him a thousand gallies to make warre withal in y^e West, purposinge by the way to make a Rhode against Athens, and to destroy it utterly. The Athenians therfore hauinge raysed an army of xxx. thousand souldiours, and two hundred ships, made warre with Antipater, to whom the government of Grece fell by lot, and so far as much as he durst not geue them battell in the field, but kept himself within the walles of the city Heraclea they besieged him. The very same tyme, Demosthenes the Orator of Athens, (who beinge before banished his Countrey for his offence in takinge a bribe of Harpalus that fled for feare of Alexanders cruelty, because he had moued the City to warre against him, by chance liued as an Outlaw at Megara) hearinge that the Atheniens had sent Hyperides of Ambassage to

The Warres of the Athenians against Alexander successe.

The duty of a true subject to his native country in Demosthenes.

moue the Peloponnesians to take theyr parte in these wars followed him and with his eloquence perswaded Sydon, Argos and Corinth, and all the other Cities to ioyne themselves with the Atheniens. For which his doinge the Atheniens sent a ship for him, and called him home out of exile.

In the meane season at the siege of Antipater, Leonatus, Capitaine of the Atheniens was slaine with a Dart throwen at him from the wall as he passed by. Which thing gaue such encouragement to Antipater, that he durst adventure into the Trench of his enemies. Neuertheless he was fayne to send messengers to Leonatus for succor. The Atheniens hearinge of his commyng towarde them with an hoste, went to meeete him in order of battell: where among the horsemen, he receiued so sore a wound that he died forthwith. Antipater albe it he saw his rescues putte to flight, yet was he glad that Leonatus was dead. For by meanes therof he was both rid of a backe frende, and also encreased in strength by attaininge of his host. Therefore assone as he had receiued his army, because he was now able to match his enemies in plaine field, they raised their siege and he departed into Macedone. The Grekish hoste also hauinge driven the enemy out of the borders of Grece went home euery man to his owne City. In the meane while Perdicas making warre against the innocent Ariarathes king of Cappadocia, and getting the vpper hand in the field, won nothing thereby but woundes and perills. For his enemies retiring out of the battell into the City, slue theyr owne wiues and children, and set theyr houses and all that euer they had on fire.

Howeuer when they had thrown therinto all theyr riches, they cast themselves also headlong after them to the intent their enemy hauing gotten the victory, should enjoy nothing of theirs more then the beholding of the fire. After this for the further stablishment of his strength by princely prerogative, he entended to marry Cleopatra the sister of great Alexander, and sometime the wife of the other

Leonatus is slaine by the Atheniens.

The ende of the Atheniens warres.

The villal destruction of the Cappadocians.

He that himselfe has not seen the destruction of the city of Heraclea.

other Alexander, not without the consente of her mother Olympias. But firste of all he coueted to surpriſe Antipater vnder pretence of toyning aliaunce with hym. And the ſoſe he pretended to deſire his daughter in marriage, to the entent he might the moze eaſily abtaine a ſupply of new ſouldiours out of Macedone. But by meanes of Antipater (who ſmelled out his ſublety) while he wēt about two wiues at once, it came to paſſe that he attained none of both.

After this there aroſe warre betwene Antigonus & Perdiccas. Antigonus was aided by Craterus and Antipater. Who taking a truce wth Atheniens, made Polyperchon Regent of Macedone & Grece. Perdiccas perceiuing that his world went not on his ſide, ſent for Arideus & great Alexanders ſonne (of both whom his charge was vnto him committed) into Cappadocia, to haue their aduice as concerning his order of the wars. Some were of opinion to remoue the warre into Macedone, to the very welſpring & head of the kinndom, ſo as much as there was Olympias Alexanders mother, which ſhould be no ſmal ſtay on their ſide for the fauor of the cominalty in remembrance of Philip and Alexander. But it was thought moſt for the common profit to begin at Egypt, leſt while they were gone into Macedone Ptolomy might inuade Asia. Eumenes beſides his prouinces he had befoze, had deliuered vnto him, Paphlagonia, Caria, Lycia, and Phrygia, and there he was commaunded to abide the comynge of Craterus and Antipater. And to aſſiſt him, were appointed Alcetas the brother of Perdiccas & Neoptolemus with their armies. Clytus was made chiefe Admirall of the flecte. Cilicia was taken frō Philotas, and giuen to Philoxenus, and Perdiccas hymſelfe with a great army went towarde Egypt. So Macedone through the diſcord of the captaines deuiding themſelues in two partes, ſet her weapons againſt her owne bowels, turninge the ſumpture of warre that was appoynted for the foraine enemy, to the ſlaughter of her owne inhabitants.

ſants, after the maner of mad men, cuttendinge to mangle the handes and members of her owne body.

But Ptolomy through his induſtry got great richelle in Egypt. For by his ſingular modeſtie he both won his hartts of the Egyptians to him, and by his ſtrength and gentle behaviour, he compaſſed the good wills of the kings his neighbours. Furthermoze alſo he enlarged the boundes of his kingdome by conquering the city Cyrene, by meanes wherof he was now become a Prince of ſuche power, that there was not ſo much cauſe for hym to be aſtrayde of his enemies, as for his enemies to be aſtrayde of hym. This City Cyrene was builded by Ariſteus, who for becauſe he was tongue tyed, was ſurnamed Battus. This mans father called Cyrenus kyng of the Iſland ther, while (for ſhame that his ſonne beynge mangrowen, coulde not ſpeake) he came to the Oracle at Delphos to make interceſſion to God for him, receyued an aunſwer, wherby his ſonne Battus was commaunded to goe into Affricke, and builde the Citie Cyrene, and there he ſhoulde reſounde the uſe of his tongue. Now, becauſe that the aunſwer ſeemed like a mockery, by reaſon of the likeneſſe of the Iſle Theramene, out of whych, inhabitants were commaunded to repayre into Affricke there to build a Citie in a country ſo farre of, the matter was leſte of. Afterwarde in proceſſe of tyme, for theyr ſtubburneſſe there fel ſuche a peſtillence among them, that they were compelled to obey the commaundement of God, and there was ſo ſmall a number of them, that they were ſcarce able to furniſh one ſhip.

When they came into Affricke, both for the pleaſantneſſe of the place, and for the aboundance of water ſprings that were there, they expulſed the inhabitants of the mountain Cyra, and planted themſelues in the ſame place. There theyr captaine Battus had his tongue ſtringes looſed, & began to ſpeake. Whiche thing encouraged their hartts to build vpp the reſt of the citie, in as much as the God had already performed part of his promiſes. Therefore when they

The comendation of Ptolomy kyng of Egypt.

The building of Cyrene in Affricke.

they had pitched their tentes, they heard a report of an old
sa'e. How that Cyrene a maid of excellent beauty was ra-
uished by Apollo in the mountain Pelius in Thessaly, and
caried from thence to the toppe of this mountain, where
the God begate her twy childe: and when she had gone
her tyme, was deliuered of iiii. sonnes Nomius, Aristeus,
Eutocus, and Ageus. And that hir father Hypseus king of
Thessaly, sent mē to seeke hir, who being allured with
the pleasauntnes of the place, abode still with the mayde
in that country. Of which chyldren when they came to
state, they returned into Thessaly, & enioyed their grād-
fathers kingdome: but Aristeus had a large dominion in
Arcadie: and first taught men the vse of Bees and hony, of
milke and creame, and first found out the tymes of yere
when the sunne is at the highest in summer, and likewise
at the lowest in Winter, together with the courses of the
other starres: Upon which report Battus learning y name
of the maiden by y Oracles, builded the city Cyrene. Pro-
lomy therfore being increased in strenght by the power of
this cite, prepared for the war agatnst Perdicas cōpnyng.
But the hatred that Perdicas had gotten through his pas-
sing yside, did him moze harme than the puissaunce of y
enemies. For his owne companions hating him fledde by
heapes vnto Antipater. Neoptolemus also being left to as-
sist Eumenes, purposed not only to turne vnto the contra-
ry part, but also to betray the whole host of his adherents
which pretence when Eumenes had espied, he had none o-
ther thist but to try the matter against the traitour by the
sword. Neoptolemus being vanquished fled to Antipater
and Polyperchon, perswadyng wyth them, that if they
would keepe on theyr iourney without slaying they might
fall vpon Eumenes ere he were ware, who now for ioye
for his late victorie, took no care by reason he had put him
to flight.

But yis purpose was not vnknown to Eumenes.
Therfore the treason turned vpon the traitours heades.

For

For they which thought to haue surpased him vnwares,
were met withall themselves when they looked leaste for
it, being wearied with trauel, and watching al the night.
In that encounter Polyperchon was slaine. Neoptolemus
also fighting hande to hand, with Eumenes a great while
together, after many woundes geuen and receiued, was
in the ende ouercome and slaine. Eumenes therfore get-
tyng y upper hand in two pitched feldes together, vpheld
his side for a while, which was not a litle cmpaired by the
reuoltyng of yis adherentes. Neuerthelesse at the last
when Perdicas was slaine, both he and Phiton,
and Illirius, and Alcetas the brother of Per-
dicas, were proclaimed traytours by the
host of their ennemies, and Anti-
gonus was appointed to make
warre against them.

(:.)

L.

polyperchon
and Neo-
leantus were
slaine by
eumenes.

side the de-
fection of
Iustinos.

The Contentes of the xiiij. Booke.

Eumenes perceiuenth the pollicie of his enemies, he is besieged by Antigonus, refused by Antipater, resorteth to the Agirapides, for succour, is ouercom by Antigonus, and is betrayed by his ovyne faultours. Callander is made Regent of Greece, the Lacedemonians, enclose their city with a wall, Eurydice and Ariocus are slayn at the Commandement of Olympias, Callander likewise putteth Olympias to death, and emprisoneth the sonne of Alexander.

The actes of
Eumenes, pre-
uenteth the
doyng of hys
enemies.



Eumenes when he vnderstode that Perdicas was slaine, himselfe proclaymed traitour in Macedone, and that Antigonus was appointed to make warre against him, declared the matter of his owne accord to his souldiours, least the sodaine newes of it might cause them to take the matter

worse then it was in deed, or the straungenesse therof discourage their hartes. And also to the ende to try whether they mindes were bent any thing against him or no, intending to procede according as he saw them all minded. Nevertheless boldly protesting among them, that if any mans harte failed him, he shoulde haue licence to depart, with which worde he so allured them all to fauor his proceedings, that they had him be of good comfort, promising to repeale the decrees of the Macedones by the sword. The remoued he with his host into Aetolia, where he rapied a tate of the Cities, and such as refused to bestow it vpon him, he sacked like an enemy. From thence he wente to Sardis to Cleopatra the sister of greate Alexander, to the intent that by her wordes the Captaynes and chiefe officers might be the more strengthened to stand in his quarrell. For he was of opinion that the maiestie of the kyngdome was on that side which the sister of Alexander held with.

The reuerence
of Alexanders
name.

with. So much reuerence was attributed to the greatnes of Alexander, that men sought for fauor of his sacred name, euen by the footesteppes of women.

When he was returned into his tent, there were letters found strawed through all the campe, wherein were promised great rewards to him that would bring Eumenes head vnto Antigonus. Eumenes hauing knowledge hereof, summoned his souldiours before him, and first of all gaue them thanks that none of them was to be found that preferred the hope of a bloody reward before his faithfull obedience. Afterward he polittikely knitte by the matter, saying that those letters were deuised by himselfe, to trye his souldiours mindes withall, and that it lay in all the hands to saue him or cast him away, neuertheless that neither Antigonus, nor any other of the Captaynes, coueted to get the vpper hand, in such sorte as thereby to geue wicked ensample to others to do the like by him. By this dede he both stayed the wauering mindes of his souldiours for the present time, and prouided before hande that if the like chaunce should happen hereafter, his souldiours should not thinke themselves to be corrupted by their enemy, but rather tried by their Captaine. Euery man therfore stroue who might be most for his safegarde. In the meane season came Antigonus against them with his host, resting himselfe in his campe for that night, brought forthe his men in battell ray the next morning. Neither did Eumenes delect the encounter, who being put to the worse, fled into a certaine strong holde. Where perceiuing himselfe diuened to abide the aduenture of the siege he dismayed the greater parte of his army, for doubt least by consent of such a multitude he might be betrayed to his enemy, or els be pestered with the number of men. Then sent he Ambassadors humbly to Antipater, who only seemed of power able to matche Antigonus. Antigonus hearing that Antipater had sent to reskue Eumenes, brake by his siege and went his way.

Of Seleucus,
and of his le-
gation.

Eumenes
vindeth him
self into fruer
with the Ar-
gyraspides.

Thus was Eumenes deliuered from feare of death for a whyle, but it was not for him to hope to continue long in safetie, seeing he had sent away his men of warre. Therefore when he had looked well about him, he thought it best to resort to the Argyraspides that invincible hoste of great Alexander glistering with the renowne of so many victories. But the Agiraspides after that Alexander was once gone, disdained all Captaines, thinking themselves dishonoured to serue vnder any other considering vnder what a Prince they had serued so late before.

Eumenes therfore entreated them with saye wordes, and spake gently to euery of them, callinge them sometimes his fellowes and companions in armes, sometimes his Patrones and defendours, other whiles by partakers of all dangerous attempts and enterprises in the East, and other whiles the onely refuge and staye of his life and safegarde, boasting that they onely were those, by whose puissance the East was subdued, which alone had surmounted the warrefare of Liber, and the monuments of Hercules, that by them Alexander was made greate, by them he obtayned diuine honours and immortal glorie: beseeching them to receiue him, not so muche for a Capitaine, as for one of their fellowes, and to geue him leaue to bee as it were one of their body. Seeing vpon this condition receyued, by little and little first with admonishing euery man a parte, and afterwarde with gentle wordes correcting suche thynges as were amysse, he vsurped authoritie ouer them. Nothing could be done in the campe without him, nothing could be attempted without his aduice,

Eumenes is
vanquished
again.

At length when it was tolde hym that Antigonus came against hym with an armie, he compelled them to come forth to battell. There whiles they disdained to be ruled by their Capitaine, they were overcome by the force of their enemie. In that battayle they loste not onely all their renowne wonne in so many battayles before, but

but also their wiues and childzen, and al the goodes they had gotten in so long continued warre so far from home. Eumenes the authoꝝ of this their discomfiture; hauinge none other refuge to tie vnto, began to encourage them after their losse, affirming that they had the vpper hand in prowesse and puissance. For they had slaine fye thousand of their enemies, and if they were minded to sticke to it to the bittermost, they should see their enemies sue to them for peace. As for the damage where by they thought themselves so much vndone, were but two thousande women, and a few childzen and bondmē, which they might better recouer following the victorie, than by thinking from it. The Argyraspides made answer, they would neither attempt to run away after the losse of their wiues and bed-fellowes, nor yet make warre against their own childzen. And with that they began to reuile him, for that after so many yeares, when they were returned home with their wages which they had well and dearly earned, and with the rewardes of so many battels, being at rest and hauing geuen ouer the warres, he had egged them forth to a new warfare and endlesse encounters, and leading them in manner from their houses and native countrey, hadde deluded them with his vain promises, yea and now also after they had lost the gaires of their prosperous warfare, could not be content to suffer them thus vanquished to lead the rest of their wretched olde age in quietnes. Percyppon without knowledge of their captains they sent messengers to Antigonus forthwith, desiring restitution of al that was theirs. He sent them worde againe, he would restore euery thinge, so that they woulde yelde Eumenes into his hands. Eumenes hearing of this practise, attempted with a few to escape by flight. But being set backe again, and seeing no hope of recovery, as the multitude flocke about him, he made request that he might yet once ere he dyed, speake vnto his armie.

The Argyras-
pides being
led to Iustine
Eumenes.

Being willed to say his mind, when silence was made
L.iii. and

The wordes
of Eumenes
to his souldi-
ours.

and his bonds loosed, he stretched forth his hand fettered
as he was, and shewed it them, saying Behold my sould
ours the apparel and ornaments of your captain, which
none of his enemies hath put vpon him. For that were a
comforte to him. But euen you your selues, you haue
made me of a conquerour a vanquished person, you haue
made me of a Captaine a captiue. Fourc tymes within
this twelue month you haue sworne to be true to me, but
I will let that passe. For it is not for men in a ueritie to
vphayde others. This onely one thing I desire at your
handes, that if Antigonus be so fully bet to take my head
from me, you will let me die among you. For I am sure
he cares not after what sort, or where I die, so I be dead:
neither do I passe greatly for my life, so I might be deli-
uered from this shamefull death. If you will graunte
me this request, I discharge you of your othe, where by
you haue bounde your selues so often vnto me. Or if ye
be ashamed to slea me your selues, then reache me a wea-
pon, and geue me leaue to do that thing for you, withoute
conscience of breaking of your othe, which you haue
sworne so oftentimes to do for your Captaine. When he
saw he could not obtayne his request, he left increa saunce
and fell to raging. Now the Gods (quoth he) the iust re-
uengers of perurie, loke vpon you, you false forsworne
kaitiues, and geue such endes vnto you, as you haue ge-
uen vnto your captaines. For it is not long ago, since you
stained your selues with the bloud of Perdiccas, practising
to haue done the like with Antipater, yea and (whych is
worst of all) you oftentimes troubled euen Alexander
himselfe with your seditious mutinies, doyng your best
to haue slayne him: if it had bin possible for him to haue
died of mans hand. And now I last of all who shal be of-
fered as a sacrifice by you false forsworne wretches, doe
pray God that these curses may light vpon you, that be-
yng beggers and outlawes, you may spend all your lyfe
tyme in this warfare, like banished people, neuer to re-
turne

turne to your countrie, and your owne weapons denoure
you, with which you haue consumed more Captaynes of
your owne than of your enemyes. This spoken in a greete
rage, he commaunded his keepers to goe before him to An-
tigonus Campe. The army folowd after to betray their
own captaynes, who beyng prisoner ledde as it were a tri-
umph of himselfe vnto the campe of his conquerour, de-
liueryng vp into the conquerors handes, both themselves
and all the Antesignes of king Alexander togethr with
the honour and renoume of so many conquestes. And be-
cause there shoulde want no pompe, the Elephanes also
and the succours of the East followed after. So muche
more glorious were the thinges to Antigonus, than vnto
Alexander all the conquestes that he achieved, in that
where as Alexander conquered the East, Antigonus o-
uercame them by whom the East was conquered. Antigo-
nus therfore disperfed those conquerors of the worlde into
his host, making restitution vnto them of such thynges as
he had taken from them at the tyme of their ouerthrowe.
And because he had in times past familiar acquaintance &
friendship w Eumenes, he would not for shame suffer him
to come in his sight, but affianced him two keepers. Some
wh t before this tyme Eurydice s wife of king Arideus vn-
derstanding s Polyperchon was returning out of Grece
into Macedone, & s he had sent for Olympias, being ther-
upon stricken with womanly malice, & abusing the weak-
nes of her husband, whose office & authoritie she toke vpon
her, wrote to Polyperchon in the kinges name, that hee
shoulde deliuer vp his host to Cassander, as into whose hand
the king had put the whole gouernement of the Emppre.
The like commaundement she sent also to Antigonus into
Asia By which benefite Cassander being bound vnto her did
euery thing after her rash & unabused commaundement.
Then went he into Grece, and made war against many
cities, at s destruction of which as of a fire neare at hand,
the Spartane, being afraid, both contrary to the answers

The Antigasp
do yield them
selues and their
captaine vnto
Antigonus

Eurydice abu-
seth the authori-
tie of her
husband Ari-
deus the kinge.

The Lacedemonians enclosed their city with a wall.

of the Oracles, and contrary to the auncient renowne of their auncestors, distrusting their own chynality, enclosed their citie with a strong wall, which euer before that time they had bene wonte to defend by force of armes, and not by strength of wals. So much were they degenerated from their auncestors, that whereas many Cyrenes before, the promise of the Cityzens was the wail of the city, now they thought they might not live in safety, vntil they might hide their heads within walles. While these things were doing, the state of Macedone was so troubled, that Cassander was faine to return thither out of Greece. For when Olympias the mother of king Alexander the great, came out of Epyre into Macedone, accompanied with Aecida king of the Molosses, and that Eurydice and Arideus the king went about to prohibite her from entering into the realme, the Macedones (whether it were for remembrance of her husband king Philip, or in respect of the great estate of her sonne Alexander, or that they were moued at the wanton demeanour, gathered themselves vnto Olympias at whose commaundement, Eurydice and the king were both slaine, when he had reigned but yeares after Alexander. But Olympias her selfe reigned not long. For when she proceeded to make slaughter of her noble men, more like a tyrant then like a Queene, she turned her fauour into hatred. Therefore when she heard of Cassanders commynge, putting distrust in the Macedones, with Roxane her daughter in law, & Hercules her stepson, she conueied her selfe into the citie Pictua: shee had also in her traine Deidamia the daughter of king Aecida, and her daughter in law Thessalonice, a Lady much set by for her father Philips, sake, with many other noble mens wiues, a company more gorgeous then profitable. When these things were reported to Cassander, immediatly he came in all hast to Pictua and environed the towne with a siege. Olympias beinge constrained with sword and famine, and weary of so long continuance of the siege, yelded her selfe the lines of her

Arideus and his wife were both slaine.

Such measure as ye mete shall be measured to you againe.

and hers only saved but Cassander assembling the people together, to aske their aduise what they would haue done with Olympias, priuely suborned the parentes of such as she had put to death, who putting on mourning apparel, came and complayned of her great cruelty by whom the Macedones were so incensed, that without respect of her former estate, they gaue sentence she should be put to death, quite forgetting that vnder her sonne, and her husbande, they had not onely liued out of dainger of their neighbors but also had gotten so great riches, and the dominion of the whole world. But Olympias when she saw she armed men commynge fiercely toward her to kill her, of her own accord, apparelled like a Queene, and leaning vpon two of her ladies, she went to meete them. At which sight they that should haue killed her beinge astonied, for the former maiestie which she represented, and remembering so many of their kinges, who euen then after a sort appeared in her person, paused & stood still, until such tyme as Cassander sent others to thrust her through. Who neither fled backe when she saw the sword, nor refused her death wounde, nor yet shooke out like a woman, but after the manner of the most valiant men, aduanced her selfe forward to the death for the glory of her auncient stocke, so that a man might haue beheld euen Alexander himselfe in his mothers dying. Furthermore when she was euen going by her ghost, it is reported that she couered her face with her garments, and with the heare of her head, lest they that stood about her might haue seene any vcomely sight in her body. After this, Cassander tooke to wife Thessalonice the daughter of king Arideus, and put Alexanders sonne with his mother in prison in the tower of Amphipoles.

A poynt of crueltye.

An example of vnderfull fortunes in a woman.

An example of womanhood.

The xv. Booke. of Iustine

The Contentes of the XV. Boke

THe Conquerours fall at debate for parting of the praye, the Abderites are driven out of their countrey with frogs & mice, Cassander putteth the sonnes of Alexander to death, Ptolomy is vanquished on the sea by Demetrius: Alexanders lieutenantes proclaime themselves kings. Lysimachus taketh part with Cassander against Antigonus: A discourse of the doings of the sayd Lysimachus the wonderfull begettinge of Seleucus, with his perishing against Antigonus, & his conquests in the East. Sandrocotte deliuereth the Indians from the subiection of Macedon, and oppresseth them with tyranny himselfe. Antigonus is slayne and his sonne Demetrius put to flight, the Conquerours fall at variance again among themselves, & Cassander dieth.

A new deuision betwene the successors of Alexander,



Dedicas and his brother Alceta

and Polyperchon with the residue of the Captaynes of the contrary part being slaine, it was to bee thoughte that the contention among the successors of great Alexander had bin clearely extinguished, when sodainly the conquerours fell at variance among themselves. For whē Ptolomy Cassander and Lysimachus, required to haue þ booties and the prouinces deuised among them, Antigonus denyed to admitte any partners of the gayne of þ war, whereof he himselfe had abiden the burthen alone. And to þ entent he might seeme to haue an honest quarrell to make war vpon his felowes he caused it to be noyed, þ he wold reuenge the death of Olympias whō Cassander had slain, and deliuer his master king Alexanders sonne and his mother out of Amphipolis where they were kepte as prisoners. When this was known, Ptolomy and Cassander entringe in league with Lysimachus and Seleucus made great preparation for the warres both by Sea and by Land. Ptolomy helde Egypt with the most part of Africke,

Of Iustine. Fol. 82

fricke and Cyprus, and Phenice: Cassander ruled Macedone and Greece. And Antigonus had gotten Asia, and parte of the East. Whose sonne Demetrius in the first cō. An example, flicc of these warres was vanquished by Ptolomy at Calama. In which battell the renowne of Ptolomies modesty was much greater than his victorie. For he both let goe Demetrius frendes, not onely with their owne priuate substance, but also honourably rewarde: and moreouer restored al Demetrius priuate substance and household stuffe: sending him word like a royall prince, that he made warre, not for gayne, but for honour, and that it greeued him that Antigonus when he had overcome the Captaynes of the contrary part, should take to himselfe alone the rewards of the victorie that appertained to them all. While these thinges were a doing, Cassander returning from Apollonia, chaunced to light vpon the Abderites, who for the excessive swarms of Frogs and mice were fayne to forsake thei owne native countrey, and seeke them a new dwelling place. Fearing thei for least they should inuade Macedone, hee made a league with them, and receiued them into frendshyppe, assignynge them landes to inhabite in the bittermost borders of Macedone. Afterwarde for feare least Hercules the sonne of Alexander, who as then was going out of the fourtene pere of his age, who for good wil men bare to his father should be called to the kingdome of Macedone, he caused both him & his mother Barsineto be put secretly to death, and their bodie to be buried in the ground, least if they shold be buried according to their estat, their death might come to light. And yet not so content, as though hee had but smally trespassed, first in king Alexander himselfe secondly in Olympias his mother, and thirdly in his sonne he also killed his other sonne with his mother Roxane by like treason, as though it had not bin possible to attaine to the kingdom of Macedone which he so sore longed for otherwise than by treason.

The Abderites are driven out of their countrey with mice and frogs.

The outrageous crueltye of Cassander.

One good
turne requi-
reth another

Alexanders
captaine, pro-
claimeth them
selfes kinges.

Prayse
of Lysima-
chus.

In the meane time Ptolomy encountered again with Demetrius vpon the sea, and hauing lost his ships, and being clearely banquished, retired into Egypt. Demetrius being prouoked with the like good turne before, sent home into Egypt, Leuticke Ptolomies sonne & Menelaus his brother with all their priuate goodes and household stuffe. And because it might appeare that they were enflamed with desire of honoꝝ rather than with malice, they sente presents one to another euen in the chiefest tyme of all their war. So much moze honestly do men in those days make war, then they do now maintaine friendship. Antigonus being puffed vp with pride for this victorie, proclaimed himselfe king and his sonne Demetrius also. Ptolomy likewise because he would not be had in lesse estimation among his subiectes, was proclaimed kinge by his men of warre. Callander and Lysimachus hearing therof, toke vpon the name and title of kinges also. All they abstained from vsurping the honour of this name, as long as any of the sonnes of their maister king Alexander were aloue. So great modesty was in them, that albeit every one of them had the richesse and power of a kyng, yet they could find in their hartes to forbear the title of kinges, so longe as Alexander had any rightfull heire aloue. But Ptolomy & Callander and the other Captains of their part, perceiving that (whiles the of them ouer a liue by himselfe to make warre alone and laid not their power together, nor helped one another, as though it were but one mans victorie, and not to them all) Antigonus licked them vp one after another: sent letters of encouragement one to another, appointing a tyme and place of meeting, and so laid their powers together for the warre. Whereat so much as Callander could not be present himself, by reason of the warres that he hadde with his borderers, he sent Lysimachus with a great host to the ayde of his confederats. This Lysimachus was borne of a noble house in Macedon, but his pꝛowesse and knightehode passeth al nobles of that

The whiche were so planted in his person, that in hautesnes of courage, in knowledge of Philosophy, & in strengthe of body, he farre excelled al them by whom the East was conquered. For when Alexander the great being very sore displeased with Callisthenes a Philosopher, for speaking agaynst the adoring of him after the manner of the Persians, had attained the sayde Callisthenes of treason, and thereupon cruelly mangled hym, by cutting of his eares, his nose, and his lips, that all men both lothed and lamented to beholde how miserably he was handled, and mozeouer caried him about with hym, thatte byp wyth a dogge in a cage, to the terrible ensample of al others. The Lysimachus who had bin wont heretofore to heare Callisthenes, and to receiue instructions of vertue at his hande: taking pꝛie to see so woꝛthy a man punished, not for any fault, but for vsing his libertie, gaue him payson to rydde hym out of his calamities. Wherewith Alexander was so displeased, that he commaunded him to be cast vnto a fierce Lyon. But when the Lyon at the first sight of him came runninge with open mouthe vpon him. Lysimachus wpynding his arme in a Towell, thrust his hande into the Lyons mouth, and pulling out his tongue killed the beaste. When the kyng heard thereof, he thought it such a wonder, that he was appeased towards him and euer after set more store by him for his so greates steadfastnesse in vertue. Lysimachus also with a noble courage, toke the displeasure that the kyng had don to hym, as heartely as if it had bene done by his owne father. Finally putting quite out of his minde the remembraunce of this deede. Afterward in Inde as the kyng pursued certayne of his enemyes that were dispersed, when he had through the swiftnesse of his horse lost the company of all his garde, this Lysimachus alone came fote by fote with hym, and kept him company by his horse side through vnmeasurable fieldes of dydesande. The which thing his brother Philip attempting to do to haue done, died betwene the kynges handes. But

Of the Phil-
osopher Cal-
listhenes vn-
der byru-
nism. ar.

The constan-
cy of Lysima-
chus.

An example
of obedience
and faithful
subiect.

as Alexander, alighted from his horse, he wounded Lyf-
machus so sore in the forehead with the point of his spear.
that the blood could not other wise be stopped, but that to
binde by the wounde withball, the king was faine to take
the Diademe from his owne head, & set it vpon his, which
doynge was then first of all a fortunate sojetoken that Ly-
simachus should after be a king.

Eucleris
put on a
and besieged
by Antigonus

And after the death of Alexander, when the prouinces
were deuised among his successours, the cruellest naty-
ons were assigned to Lyfsmachus, as to the valiantest per-
son of all others, for he farre exceeded by the consent of al
men, all the residue in manhode and prowesse. Before the
battell should be fought betwene Ptolomy and his adhe-
rentes against Antigonus: Seleucus departing sodainly
out of the greater Asia, became a new enemy vnto Anti-
gonus. This mans prowesse also was notable, and hys be-
getting wonderful. For his mother Laodice being mar-
ried to Antiochus a noble man among the captains of king
Philip, dreamed in her sleepe that she conceived and was
great with childe by Apollo, and that in recompence si-
lyng with him, the god gaue her a ring, in the stone wher
of was engraued the likenesse of an Anker, commaun-
dyng her to geue it to her sonne, whom she should bringe
forth. This vision was wonderfull, both for the ryng
of the same engrauiing that was found in hir bed the next
mornynge, and for the figure of the anker which was found
in the thigh of Seleucus, when he was borne, and so conti-
nued and grewe with him. Therefore when Seleucus
should goe with great Alexander to the warfare against
the Persians, Laodice enformyng him of the manner of hys
begetting, gaue hym þe Ryng. After þe death of Alexāder,
obteynynge the Empire of the East, he builded a Citie, and
there consecrated the memoire of hys double originall.
For he both called the Citie Antioche, after the name of
hys father, and also dedicated the felshes about the Cytie
to Apollo, The token of his begettyng remayned also
with

Treass vwyf-
ly presented
and vntillan-
ded.

with hys posteritye. For hys chyldren and chylders chy-
ldren had an Anker in theyr thyghe as a natural marke of
theyr lynage. He made many battayles in the East after
the deuision of the kyngdome of Macedone amonge the
Piers of the Realme. First he toke Babilon by force,
and being increased in power by reason of that vyctorye,
he conquered the Bactrians. Afterwarde he made an en-
terauce into Inde, whiche after the deathe of Alexan-
der, haupng as it were cast of the yoke of bondage from
theyr neckes, had slayne all hys Lyueteuantes. The
authour of this lybertie was one Sandrocotte, who after
the victorie turned this pretence of libertie into bon-
dage. For by vsurpyng the kyngdome, he oppzessed with
hys owne tyranny, the people whome he had deliuered
from forayne subiection. This man was borne of lowe
degre, and aduanced to the kyngdome, by the appoint-
ment of God. For when he had vpon a tyme offended
Alexander with his malapertnesse, and that the king had
commaunded hym to be put to death, he saued hys lyfe by
swiftnesse of hys feete. After whiche runnyng being be-
ry weare, as hee lay fast a sleepe, a Lyon of maruelous
bugenesse, came to hym, and with his tongue lycked of
the sweate that issued from hym, and then wakyng hym
went gently away. Being by this wonderfull sojetok-
en first moued to hope of the kyngdome, hee gathered
together a number of outlawes, and stirred the Indi-
ans to rebellion. Afterwarde as hee was makynge pre-
paration for the warres agaynst Alexanders Liute-
nautes, a mylde Elephante of maruapulous bygge-
nesse offered hymselfe to hym, of hys owne accord, and
as though he had bin tame, meekely receyued hym vpon
hys backe, and so he became a ballaunte Capitayne
and a notable Warriour. Sandrocotte haupng thus got-
ten the kyngdom, the very same tyme that Seleucus lay-
ed the foundation of the greatnesse that he after grewe
vnto,

The after
Seleucus.

The Indians
rebell from
the monarchy

Geue a man
good fortune
& thier hym
into the sea.

as Alexander, alighted from his horse, he wounded Lysimachus so sore in the forehead with the point of his spear, that the blood could not otherwise be stopped, but that to binde by the wounde withall, the king was faine to take the Diademe from his owne head, & set it vpon his, which doyng was then first of all a fortunate foetoken that Lysimachus should after be a king.

For he was
put to death,
and besieged
by Antigonus

And after the death of Alexander, when the prouinces were deuised among his successours, the cruellest nations were assigned to Lysimachus, as to the valiantest person of all others, for he farre exceeded by the consent of all men, all the residue in manhode and prowesse. Before the battell should be fought betwene Ptolomy and his adherentes against Antigonus: Seleucus departing sodainly out of the greater Asia, became a new enemy vnto Antigonus. This mans promise also was notable, and his begetting wonderful. For his mother Laodice being married to Antiochus a noble man among the captains of king Philip, dreamed in her sleepe that she conceived and was great with childe by Apollo, and that in recompence lying with him, the god gaue her a ring, in the stone wherof was engraued the likenesse of an Anker, commaunding her to geue it to her sonne, whom she should bring forth. This vision was wonderfull, both for the ryng of the same engrauiing that was found in hir bed the next morning, and for the figure of the anker which was found in the thigh of Seleucus, when he was borne, and so continued and grewe with him. Wherefore when Seleucus should goe with great Alexander to the warre against the Persians, Laodice enforming him of the manner of his begetting, gaue hym þe Ryng. After þe death of Alexander, obteynng the Empire of the East, he builded a City, and there consecrated the memorie of his double originall. For he both called the Citie Antioche, after the name of his father, and also dedicated the felshes about the Cytie to Apollo. The token of his begettyng remayned also with

Treasures very
ly presented
and visitated.

with his posterity. For his chyldren and chyldres chyldren had an Anker in theyr thyghe as a natural marke of theyr lynage. He made many battayles in the East after the deuision of the kyngdome of Macedone amonge the Piers of the Realme. First he toke Babilon by force, and being increased in power by reason of that victory, he conquered the Bactrians. Afterwarde he made an enterpryse into Inde, whiche after the death of Alexander, hauyng as it were cast of the yoke of bondage from theyr neckes, had slayne all his Lyutenantes. The authour of this libertie was one Sandrocotte, who after the victory turned this pretence of libertie into bondage. For by usurpyng the kyngdome, he oppressed with his owne tyranny, the people whome he had deliuered from forrayne subiection. This man was borne of lowe degree, and aduanced to the kyngdome, by the appointment of God. For when he had vpon a tyme offended Alexander with his malapertnesse, and that the king had commaunded hym to be put to death, he saved his lyfe by swiftnesse of his feete. After whiche runnyng being weary, as he lay fast a sleepe, a Lyon of maruelous hugenesse, came to hym, and with his tongue lycked of the sweate that issued from hym, and then wakynge hym went gently away. Being by this wonderfull foetoken first moued to hope of the kyngdome, he gathered together a number of outlawes, and stirred the Indians to rebellion. Afterwarde as he was making preparation for the warres against Alexanders Lyutenantes, a wilde Elephant of maruapulous byggynesse offered hymselfe to hym, of his owne accord, and as though he had bin tame, meekely receyued hym vpon his backe, and so he became a valiaunte Capitayne and a notable Warriour. Sandrocotte hauyng thus gotten the kyngdom, the very same tyme that Seleucus layd the foundation of the greatnesse that he after grewe vnto,

The after
Seleucus.

The Indians
rebell from
the monarchy

Geue a man
good fortune
& throw hym
into the sea.

unto, helde all Inde. With whome Seleucus entering a league, and hauing se: his assayes at a stay in the Castle, came to the warres against Antigonus. The armies therfore of the confederates beyng assembled together, there was a fielde fought. In which Antigonus was slaine, and hys soune Demetrius put to flight. But the confederates after they had by battell dispatched their enemies fell together by the eares agayne among themselves. And because they could not agree in parting of the praye, they sundered themselves into two partes. Seleucus joined hymselfe with Demetrius, and Ptolomy with Lyfimachus. Cassander beyng deceased, hys sonne Philip succeeded hym. And so new warres sprong vp a freshe in Macedone,

Antigonus
is slaine.

Variance a-
gain betwene
the conquerors.

The contentes of the xvi. Booke.

THabominable murder of Antipater the sonne of Cassander, for the which his brother Alexander proclaimeth vvaie against him. Demetrius slayeth Alexander, and vsurpeth hys part of Macedone. Lyfimachus yeldeth vnto him the portion of Antipater also. Ptolomy Lyfimachus, Seleucus, and Pyrrhus, ioyne themselves in league against Demetrius. Pyrrhus dryeth Demetrius out of Macedone. Lyfimachus putteth his son in law Antipater to death in vvhom the house of Cassander is extinct. Demetrius yeldeth himselfe prisoner to Seleucus, Ptolomy dieth, debate falleth betwene Lyfimachus and Pyrrhus, he expulseth Pyrrhus out of Macedone, the building of the city Heiracle. in Pous the dedes of the Heiracleans their curtesie toward their enemies, their miserable oppression by tyranny, the bold demerit of Chyon, and Leonides, & the death of them.



After the death of Cassander & his sonne Philip, one immediately entreating the other, Thessalonice the Queene and wife of Cassander, ere it was long time after, entreatinge for her lyfe (euen by shewyng her brests to moue hi to pity) was cruelly slaine by her sonne Antipater. The cause of the murther was this, that after the death of her husband, when the kyngdome shoulde be deuided, she seemed to bee moze fauorable to Alexander. Whiche act appeared so much the moze heinous, in all menes eyes, for that the Mother ment no deceit in the matter. And yet, there can bee no cause alledged iustlye, to excuse one for killing their father or thepp mother. Alexander therfore vppon this occasion, entreatinge to make warre against hys brother, to reuenge his mothers death, desired help of Demetrius, & Demetrius, was easie to entreat, in hope to inuade the kyngdome of Macedone. Of whose coming Lyfimachus being afraid: perswaded hys sonne in law Antipater, to fall to agrement with his brother rather than suffer his fathers enemy to enter into Macedone. Demetrius perceiuing that a reco-

An abomynable murder

Strife betwene the children of Cassander.

The child
punished for
the fathers
offence.

cilement was entreated upon between the 2. brethren, *Alexander* through great treas'd, and inuading the kingdome of *Macedone*, to excuse himself of the murder before his menne of warre, called them together. Ther he alleged that *Alexander* had lien in wait for hym before, and that he had not committed, but only prevented the treason. Seeing it was moze reason he himself should be king, than the other, both because for his peres he was of moze experience, and also for other considerations.

For his father had accompanied both king *Philip* & great *Alexander* in al their warres, and afterwarde had serued *Alexanders* children & bin chief captaine in pursuing the rebels. Where as on the contrary parte, *Antipater* the grandfather of these yongemen, was alwayes a moze rough gouernour of the kyngdome, then the kynges, themselves. And *Cassander* the father of them, the rooter vp of the kynges house, spared neyther women nor Children, nor neuer ceased, untill he had utterly destroyed all the offspring of the kynges posterity. The reuengement of which mischienes because hee could not execute vpon *Cassander* himselfe, hee sayde was transferred vnto his children. Therfore both *Philip* & *Alexander* (if y^e dead haue anye perceruance) would be not that the rooters out of them and theyr issue, but rather that the punishers of those traitors, should enioye the kingdome of *Macedone*. The people being by this meanes mitigated, proclaimed hym king of *Macedone*, *Lysimachus* also being entangled with the warres of *Dromychet*, king of *Thrace*, to the extent he would not be constrained to haue battell the selfe same time wth *Demetrius* also yelded to him thocher parte of *Macedone* that belonged to his sonne in law *Antipater*, and made peace with him. *Demetrius* therfore being furnished with the whole power of all *Macedone*, mynded also to conquere *Asia*. Then *Ptolomy Seleucus* and *Lysimachus* hauing tried be the former conflict, what a strength conoord was of, entered in league again, and ioyning

Demetrius
is punished
by his father
& sonne.

ninge theyr hostes together, remoued the warres into *Europe* agaynst *Demetrius*. *Pirrhus* king of *Epire* hoping that *Demetrius* might as lightly forgoe *Macedone*, as he came by it, toynd himselfe with them as a fellow and companion in their war. And his hope deceiued him not. For he founde the meanes to corrupt his army with rewardes where by hee put him to flight and seized the kingdome of *Macedone* into his owne handes. While these thinges were a doing, *Lysimachus* put his sonne in law *Antipater* to death, because he grudged that the kingdome of *Macedone* his rightfull inheritaunce was taken from him by falschode of his father in lawe. And because his daughter *Euridice* tooke her husbands part in making lyke exclamation, he put her in prisō. And so at the house of *Cassander* partly by murder, and partely by execution suffered due punishment in the behalfe of greate *Alexander*, whether it were for working of his death, or for destroyinge his posterity. *Demetrius* also being ouercharged with so many hostes, whereas he might haue died honourably, chose rather to yeld himself to *Seleuchus* shamefully. When these warres were ended *Ptolomy* with greate renoune of his actes died, he contrary to the common law of al nations, somewhat before he fel sicke, hadd resigned the kingdome to the yongest of his sonnes, and of his so doinge rendred a reason to the people, who sauored the sonne no lesse in receyuing the kingdome, then the father in deliuering of it. Amonge other example of naturall loue and affection shewed vpon both partes betwene the father and the sonne this thing wan the hartes of the comminalltye to the yong man that the father after the time he had openlye surrendered the kingdome vnto him, executed the office of one of his gard, and serued the king as an other priuate personne, saying it was far moze bouozable for a man to be father to a kyng, then to be a king himselfe.

But discorde the continuall mischiese amonge pieres stirred vp stryfe betwene *Lysimachus* & *Pirrhus*, a little
¶ ii. before

This same is he
that made war
with the Ro-
maynes,

The posterity of
Cassander is vt-
terly rooted out.

Demetrius yel-
ded himselfe
prisoner to *Se-
leuchus*.

An example of
fatherly loue

Lightly gotten
and lightlye for
gone

The buildinge
of Heraclea in
Pontus.

An example of
the statnes in a
lands and amity

An example
of cleuency to
ward the ene-
mye.

besore fellowes and confederates agaynst Demetrius. Ly-
simachus getting þ upper hand, dyone Pyrrhus out of Ma-
cedone, and toke it into his own hand. After this, he made
war agaynst Thace, and then agaynst the citie Heraclea
the originall and end of which citie were wonderfull both of
thē. For vpon a tyme whē þ Beotians were afflicted with
a soze plague, answer was geuē thē at thozacle of Delphos,
þ they should build a citie in the countrie of Pontus & dedi-
cate it vnto Hercules. Now when for feare of the long and
verillous voyage (desiring all to die in theyr own countrie
rather then to enterpryse so lōg a iourney) the matter was
omitted, þ Phocenses made war agaynst thē. By whom be-
yng dyuers times put to the worse, they ran to the Dyclae
again for counsaile. Answer was made them þ the same
thing þ should remedye the pestilence should remedye þ war.
Wherupō gathering a nūber of mē they sayled into Me-
tapont & builded þ citie Heraclea, And forasmuch as they
had bene brought thither by thozdinance of God, within
þort space after, they grew to greate welch, in pzoesse of
time this citie had many battels with their neighbours, &
much mischief amonge themselves thzough ciuill dissētiō.
Among other honorable dedes, this in especiall is woꝛthy
to be remēbred. At such tyme as the Atheniens bare þ so-
uerainty, & hauing banquished the Persians, had rased a
taxe boch in Grece & Asia, for the maintenaunce of theyr
fiets, wheras al other to saue themselves harmles, gladly
gaue thē their asking, only the Heracliens for the fauoure
they bare to the kinnes of Persia, refused to be cōtributa-
ry to the taxe. Malachus therfore beyng sent from Athens
w an army to take perforce the thing þ was denped whils
he went abrod to wast the fielos of Heraclea, lost his ships
that he lefe at Rhooe, with the greater part of his army,
by force of a sodain tēpest that put thē al to wrack. Ther-
fore whē he could not return by sea hauing lost his ships,
nor durst return by lād wth so slender a cōpany: thzough he
so many sauage nations, the Heracliens thinkinge more

honour to vse this occasion to shewing gentlenes then to
reuengement, furnished thē with victuals, & safe condi-
ted them hom, making accompt that the wasting of their
cōuntry was wel bestowed, if they might thereby win their
enemies to be their frenos. Amonge many other euilles,
they suffred also tirannye. For when the common people
impozunately exacted to haue all bettes clerely released,
and the landes of the richmen parted among them, & that
the matter hung long time in questiō in the Senat house
without comminge to anye issue: at length against thys
ouerstatelnesse of the people which wer grown to lūsty
by ouermuch ease & welch, they desired apd first of Timo-
thy Duke of Athens, & afterward of Epaminōdas Duke
of Thebes. But hauing denyall at boch their handes, they
were fain to flye for succor to Clearche, whom they them-
selues had banished besore. So gret an extremitie did their
calamities dyne them vnto, that whom they had erwhile
forbidden & his country, euen him were they fain to cal-
gaine to the defence of the same. But Clearche beinge by
his banishment made moze wycked then hee was be-
fore, and takyng the dissencion of his countrie men, as a
meete occasion for him to make himself kyng, first of all
commoned pzuelue with Mythridates the ennemy of his
Citezns, and entringe in league with him, compounded
that when he were called agayne into his Cōuntry, hee
should betray the City to him, and he should make hym
souverain of it for his iaboure. Yet afterward the treason
that he hadde purposed agaynst his Cōuntry, he turned
vpon Mythridates himselfe. For when hee was returned
out of exile, to be as an indifferent Iudg for the determi-
nation of ciuill controuersies, the same time that hee had
appointed to betray the towne vnto Mythridates, he toke
him and his frendes, and for a great summe of money let
him goe againe. And lyke as towards him he made him-
self, of a frend a sodain enemy: euen so of a defendeure of
the state & the senate, he sodainly became a protectour of
the

The miserable
state of Hera-
ckia.

A vycked
Traitor.

the comminalty and against the authours of his preferment, by whom he had bin reuoked into his country, by whom he was placed in the tower of his royalty, he not only incensed the commons, but also exercised all kinde of moste vspeakable and tyrannycal crueltie. For he summoned the people together, and told them that he would not any more assist the Senators, which vsed themselves so rigorously against the commynalte, but would rather bee a doore against them if they continued in their accustomed tyrannye, wherefore if they thought themselves able to make their party good against the crueltie of the Senators, he would departe with his men of warre and not intermeddle himself in their ciuill discordes. But if they distrusted their owne strength, they should not want his helpe, so farre as he was able to doe for them. And therefore aduise themselves whether they were better to by him go his way, or to tary as a partaker and supporter of the quarell of the commons. The comminalty being stirred with this talke, made him their souerain, and so while they were offended at the authorite of the Senate, they loaded themselves with their wines and children in bondage to a Lordly Tyrant. Clearche therefore apprehended ix. of the Senators, (for all the rest were fled) and cast them in prison. The people reioysed to see the Senate destroyed, and that in especiall by the captain of the Senators, and that contrary to all likelyhoode, they helpe was turned to their better confusion. Upon whom, by threatening death to them all in generall, Clearche set the hie price. For he receiuing a great sum of mony of them (as who would saye he intended priuily to deliuer them from the peoples displeasure,) when he hadde robbed them of all theyr goodes, bereft them also of theyr liues. Afterwarde vnderstandyng that those which were fled, hadde moued the ciyties of piety to helpe them, and prepared warre agaynst hym, he sette their bondmen at Liberty.

And

And to the entent there should want no kynde of miserie in those honorable houses, & that he myght make the slaues more faythful to himselfe, and more enemyes to their maisters, he compelled the wyues and daughters of those noble men, to mary with theyr slaues, vppon pain of death if they refused so to do. But those sorrowful weddinges were greuouser then sodayn death to the honorable Ladies. And therefore many of them before theyr mariage, and many in the very tyme of theyr mariage, kyllyng theyr new husbandes slew them selues, and by the vertue of naturall womanhode, saved theyr selues from so sorrowful dishonour. Afterward there was a fyer fought, in which the Tyranne getting the vpper hande, drew the Senators as Prisoners in manner of triumphe throught the face of the Citie. After his returne into the Town some he cast in bonds, some he racked, and some he put to death and no place of the citie was free from the crueltie of the Tyranne.

With this outragiousnes he became proud, and with his crueltye he became arrogante, for throughte his continuall good successe in prosperitey, he would sometime forget himselfe to be a man: and sometyme he would call himselfe Jupiters sonne. When he went abrode, he would bryng an Eagle of Golde; bozne before hym as a Token of his greattye.

He vsed to weare robes of purple and to goe in Buskins after the maner of kynges in tragedies, with a Crowne of gold vpon his head. Moreover to the entente to scoone the gods aswell in names as in counterfeyting leasynge, he named his sonne* Ceraunos

Two noble yonge men called Chion and Leonides disdaining these thynges and entending to set theyr countrey at liberty, conspyred to kyll the Tyrant. These men were the disciples of the Philosopher Plato, who couetinge to be-
lowe vppon theyr Countrey the vertue to which they were furthured by the moste perfect instructions of theyr

P. 4.

maister

Death is to be preferred before dishonour.

Prosperity. maketh men forget them selues.

Thunder

The crueltye of Clearche.

The valiant
proverbe of
Chion and Le
onides.

maister layed in an ambush asty of theyr kinsmen, whom they had gotten to be of their retinew, They themselves counterfeiting to be at defiance one against another, made towarde the castell to the Tryan, as to theyr kinge that should decyde their controuersies: and being there amitted to his presence, (as they that were wel knownen,) whyles the Tyrant gaue attentue eare to the firste marnes tale the other slept with in him and slew him. Howbeit by reason that their company was not quick inough in coming to theyr rescue. they were slaine by his gard.

By meanes wherof it came to passe that the Tyrant was slaine, but yet theyr country not deliuered. For Satyr y brother of Clearche, after the same sorte toke vpon him the tiranny, and the Hera cleans many peres after by degree of descent were vnder subiection of Tyrantes.

The

The contentes of the xvii Booke.

The horrible Earthquake in Hellesponte & Chersonesus, the cruelty of Lyfimachus to his owne childre by the instigation of their stepmother Arstirice, the last vvar betwene the Successors of Alexander wherin Lyfimachus is slaine by Seleucus, vwho also within a while after is slayn by Ptolomy the kings brother of Egypt. Pnybus aideth the Tarentines against the Romans, a discourse of the Realme of Epyre vwith a declaration of thactes of the Kinges thereon.



Boute the same tyme well nie there happened a maruylous greate earthquake in the Countreies of Hellesponte and Chersonesus and the city Lyfimachia beyng builded by Lyfimachus not past a two and twenty peres before, was oerthrowen the which wonder be

An horrible
Earthquake.

tokenned horrible mysfortune to Lyfimachus and his offspring in the decay of his kingdom, & the vistructiō of those Countreies that were vnder therewith. And loke as was betokenned therby, so came it to passe. For within a short tyme after Lyfimachus conceining deadly hatred not only beyond the course of a natural father, but also beyonde all manhode, agaynst his sonne Agathocles, whom he had proclaymed beyng apparant of his kingdome, and by whom he had achieved many battels prosperously, poisoned him by the meane and working of his stepmother Arstirice.

This was the first sorte of the mischief that was towarde him, this was the beginning of the ruine that hunge ouer his head. For after the murdering of his owne sonne, he fell to kyllyng of his noble men, because they betrayed the death of his sonne. By meanes wherof such as were chief officers in his campe, reuolued by plumpes vnto Seleucus whom beyng of himselfe prone therunto for enuye at the glory of Lyfimachus they compelled to make warre against him. This was the last contention betwene them that had serued Alexander in the wars, & as it were a match reserved

The vistructiō
of Lyfimachus
image.

The last contention betwene the successors of Alexander

There is no measure in ambition.

The death of Lysimachus.

He was the kynge brother of Egypt.

The death of Seleucus

Note the treachery and deceit of Ptolemy Ceran-nicus, made more hereof in the xliiij. Booke,

ued by fortune of examples sake Lysimachus was Ixylit. pers old, & Seleucus Ixylit. but in this age, they had both of them yong mens hartes and an insatiable desire of dominion. For where as they two alone held the whole world betwene them, yet they thought themselves enclosed in a straight, measuring the terme of their lyfe not by the length of their yeres, but by the bounds of their Empire. In that battel Lysimachus hauing lost before by ouers chaunces xv. children, now dying manfully, lastly made himselfe the full decay of his owne house. Seleucus reioyning in so great a victorie, and (which he thought to be a greater matter then the victorie,) that he onely of Alexanders retinue remayned and became conqueror of conquerors, boasted that it was not the worke of manne but the very gift of god, being utterly ignorant that it ere long after, he himselfe should become an example of the frailty of man. For aboute 7. Monethes after, by the policie of Ptolomy, who had taken the sister of Lysimachus in marriage, he was surpyled and slain, and so with his life lost the kingdome of Macedone that he had taken from Lysimachus. Ptolomy therefore being very diligent to curry fauoure in the cominalt in respect of his father Ptolomy the great, & for reuenging the death of Lysimachus, first of all determined to win the sonnes of Lysimachus vnto him: and therupon made snte to theyr mother Arsinoe his sister to haue her to his wyfe, promising to adope the children to the intent that when he had succeeded in their rume, what for reuerence to their mother, or for the name of father, they should not be so bold as to attempt any thing against him. Whereupon he earnestly sued by his letters to haue the fauour of his brother, the king of Egypt protesting, that he bare him no displeasure, for taking his fathers kingdome from him and that he would not any more seke anything at his brothers hand, which he had with more honour gotten at the hand of his fathers enemy. Furthermore he sought by all meanes to win himself into fauour with Eumenes & Antigonus the

the sonnes of Demetrius, & with Antiochus the sonne of Seleucus, with whom he was like to haue warre to the intent he would not haue to do with 3. enemies at ones. Neither omitted he Pyrrhus king of Epyre, as one that was lyke to be no small furtheraunce, to what parte so euer he inclined himself: who coueting to set them all beside the saddle, made faire countenance, & sech himself as it were to sale to them all. Therefore as he was appoyning the Tarentines against the Romaines, he desired of Antigonus to lend him shippes to conuey ouer his Arme, of Antiochus (who was better furnished with riches, than with men of war) he requested to borrow a peece of money, of Ptolomy he demaunded to send to his ayde a crewe of soldiers of Macedone. But Ptolomy who by reason of his owne weakenesse, was not able to bear with him long, lent him five thousand footemen, foure thousand horsemen, and fifty Elephantes, for no longer time then ii. yeres. In consideration whereof taking the daughter of Ptolomy in marriage, Pyrrhus left him for protectour of his kingdome. But so much as we fall in remembrance of Epyre, I thinke good to encreat a little of the originall of the same. First of all the Molosses reigned in that region. Afterward Pyrrhus the sonne of Achilles, hauing lost his fathers kingdome by being absent at the battel of Troy rested in the same cuntrye, whiche after his name were first called Phyrrides, and after Epyrotes. But Pyrrhus, when he came into the Temple of Iupiter of Dodona to aske counsell, rauided there Anasa the nece of Hercules of whom afterwarde taking her to wife, he begate viij. children. Of whiche some of them prouinge beautifull younge Ladies, he married to the kynges that were his neighbours: by meanes of whiche alliances he purchased great power and riches. And so leauyng the Kingdom of the Chaonians with Andromache the wife of Hector, which in the diuision of the boty at the winnyng of Troy fell to his lot to be his wife) vnto Helenus the sonne of King

Pyrrhus dyeth the Tarentines against the Romaines.

A discourse to the doings of Epyre.

He was also called Neoptolemus.

ued by fortune of examples sake Lyfimachus was xxxiii. yers old, & Seleuchus xxxvii. but in this age, they had both of them yong mens hartes and an insatiable desire of dominion. For where as they two alone held the whole world betwene them, yet they thought themselves enclosed in a straighte, measuringe the terme of their lyfe not by the length of their yeres, but by the bounds of their Empire. In that battell Lyfimachus hauing lost before by ouerschaunces xv. childzen, now dying manfully, lastly made himselfe the ful decay of his own house. Seleuchus reioyning in so great a victorie, and (which he thought to bee a greater matter then the victorie,) that he onely of Alexanders retinue remayned and became conqueror of conquerors, holdeth that it was not the worke of manne but the very gyfte of god, being vnderly ignorant that it ere long after, he himselfe should become an example of the frailty of man. For aboute 7. Monethes after, by the policie of Ptolomy, who had taken the sister of Lyfimachus in marriage, he was surprysed and slain, and so with his life lost the kingdome of Macedone that he had taken from Lyfimachus. Ptolomy therefore being very diligent to curry fauoure wth the cominalti in respect of his father Ptolomy the great, & for reuenging y^e death of Lyfimachus, first of all determined to win the sonnes of Lyfimachus vnto hym: and therupon made sute to theyr mother Arsinoe his sister to haue her to his wyfe, promising to adope the childzen to the intent y^e when he had succeeded in their rourne, what for reuerence to their mother, or for y^e name of father, they should not be so bold as to attempt any thing against him. Whereupon he earnestly sued by his letters to haue y^e fauor of his brother, the king of Egypt protesting, y^e he bare him no displeasure, for taking his fathers kingdome fro him and y^e he would not any moze seke y^e thing at his brothers hand, which he had with moze honour gotten at the hand of his fathers enemy. Furthermoze he sought by al meanes to wind himself into fauor wth Eumenes & Antiochus the

the sonnes of Demetrius, & with Antiochus the sonne of Seleucus, wth whom he was like to haue warre to the intent he would not haue to do wth 3. enemies at ones. Neither omitted he Pyrrhus king of Epyre, as one that was lyke to bee no small furtheraunce, to what parte so euer he inclined himself: who coueting to set them all before the shaddole, made faire countenances, & set himself as it were to sale to them all. Therfore as he was appoynted the Tarentines against the Romaines, he desired of Antiochus to lend him shippes to conuey ouer his Arme, of Antiochus (who was better furnished with riches, than with men of war) he requested to borrow a peece of mony, of Ptolomy he demaunded to send to his ayde a crewe of souldiours of Macedone. But Ptolomy who by reasoⁿ of his owne weakenesse, was not able to bear with him long, lent him five thousand footemen, foure thousand horsemen, and fifty Elephantes, for no longer time then ii. yeres. In consideration wherof taking the daughter of Ptolomy in marriage, Pyrrhus left him for protectour of his kingdome. But so farre as we fall in remembrance of Epyre, I thinke good to encreat a little of the original of the same. First of all the Molosses raigned in that region. Afterward Pyrrhus the sonne of Achilles, hauing lost his fathers kingdome by being absent at the battell of Troy rested in the same countrey, whiche after his name were first called Phyrrides, and after Epyrotes. But Pyrrhus, when he came into the Temple of Iupiter of Dodone to aske counsaill, rauided there Anasa the nece of Hercules of whom afterwarde taking her to wife, he begate viii. childzen. Of whiche some of them prouinge beautifull younge Ladies, he married to the kynges that were his neyghbours: by meanes of whiche alliances he purchased great power and riches. And so leauyng the Kingdome of the Chaonians with Andromache the wife of Hector, wherby in the diuision of the boty at the winnyng of Troye fell to his lot to be his wife) vnto Helenus y^e sonne of King

Pyrrhus y^ederth the Tarentines against the Romaines.

A discourse to the doinges of Epyre.

He was also called Neoptolemius.

The last contention betwene the successors of Alexander

There is no measure in ambition.

The death of Lyfimachus.

He was the kynges brother of Egypt.

The death of Seleucus

Note the treachery and deceit of Ptolomeus Ceranicius, grede more hereof in the xxxiii. Booke,

as king Priamus for his singular knowledge in prophesie, within a while after by the treason of Orestes the sonne of Agamemnon, he was slaine at Delphos euen before the altare of the God. After him succeeded his sonne Pylades. At length by order of succession the kingdom descended to Arymba. Duer whome because he was fatherlesse, and that there were no mo alieue of that noble race but he, of very earnest desire that the whole realme had to preserve him and bring him up, there were certaine protectours, appoynted by the common consent of the realme to haue the oversight and gouernance of hym. Furthermore hee was sent to Schoole and loke howe much hee was better learned then his predecessours, so much also was he better beloued among his Subjects. For he was the first that made lawes, ordained a counsell, appoynted pearely officers, and established the estate of the common Weale. And like as Pyrrhus first gaue the people theyr dwelling: so Arymba brought them first to the trade of ciuill ordinaunce and liuing. This mannes sonne was Neoptolemus, who begate Olympias (the mother of great Alexander,) and Alexander, who after hys decease enioyed the kyngdom of Epyre, and dyed in the warres of Italy, among the Brutians.

After his departure his brother Eacides succeeded in the kingdom. Who by wearying his subjects with daily and continuall war against the Macedones, gate such a displeasure among them, that they banished him the realm leaving behinde him in the kingdome a childe of 2. yeares old called Pyrrhus, Who being sought for also by the people to be put to death for y^e hatred they bare to his father was priuely conueyed away and borne into Illyria, and deliuered vnto Beroe the wife of king Glaucia to be kept by, the which Beroe also was extract of the house of Eacus. There the King, whether it were that he pyed his misfortune, or that he wer allured with his childes flatteringes, did defend him a great while against Alexander

kyng of Macedone, who demaunded hym with greates threats, that he woulde make sharpe warres vpon him vlesse he deliuered him. And besides this protection of him, he also adopted him to bee his sonne. With whyche thinges the Epyrotes being moued, turned theyr hatred, into compassion and called him into the Realme agayne when he was of the age of eleuen yeres, appoynting protectours to haue the oversight and gouernement of hym and his kingdome, vntill he came to mannes estate.

Afterward when hee was past childhode, he foughte manye battels, and began to be counted of such power, wisdomie and pollicy, that men thoughte no man able to mayntayne the Tarentines against the Romaines but onely hee.

An exāple of
an learned
Prince .

Olympias.

The contentes of the xviii Boke.

Pyrhus ouercommeth the Romaines, Mago duke of Carthage bringeth ayde to them, and is sent home agayn, the Romaines take a truce with Pyrrhus, the which is infringed by Apollus Claudius, Pyrrhus taketh ypon him the kingdome of Cycill. The foundation of Sydon & Tyre, with a declaration of their histories. Dido buildeth Carthage, and fleeth her selfe, the Carthaginians vse an abominable kind of sacrifice, They suffer losse by war & pestilence, Macheus Duke of Carthage crucifieth his owne sonne, yvinneth Carthage, is accused of treason and is put to death.



Pyrrhus king of Epyre therefore, when the Tarentines had sent their ambassadors to him the second tyme, and that the Samites and Lucanes, who also had then neede of aide agaynst the Romaines, made earnest sute for succor not so muche moued with the entreatace of his suters, as induced with hope to compass the Empire of Italy promysed to come with an armie. Unto which thing after that his mynde was ones enclyned, the examples of his auncestors dyane him headlonge forwarde, and hee was both to seme inferiour to his vnckle Alexander, who had defended the Tarentines agaynst the Brutians, or to bee of lesse courage then great Alexander, who had made war so farre from his owne country and subdued the East.

Where vppon leaueinge his sonne Ptolomy of the age of xij. yerres as regent of his kingdome, he laded his army in the haven of Tarent leading with him his two yonger sonnes Helen and Alexander, to beare him company in his far voyage.

Of whose arrival the Romaine consul Valerius Leunius hearyng, made hast to encounter with him, before the aydes of his confederates were assembled, and broughte his men into the fielde: neyther did the king. Although hee had nothing so many men of warres as his enemyes, yett hee the encounter. But where as the Romaines had gotten the

the upper hand, and were at the poynt to haue putte hym to flight, he constrained them at the vglye shawe of his Elephanthes, first to stande as amazed, and by and by after to forsake the fielde, and so the straunge monstres of Macedone sobainly vanquished them, when they had already gotten the victorie. Neuerthelesse he obtained not the victorie without much bloudshed. For Pyrrhus himselfe was sore wounded, and a great part of his souldiours slayne so that he gate by that victorie, more honoure then cause to reioyce. Many cities followinge the fortune of this battell, yelued themselves to Pyrrhus. Amongest others also the Locrines betraying the Romaine Garrison reualted to Pyrrhus. Of that pray Pyrrhus sent home two hundred Romaine souldiours scootfree to Rome, to the entente that as the Romaines hadde knowen of his puissance, so they might also knowe of his Liberalitye. Within a fewe daies after, when the hostes of his confederates were come he foughte an other battell with the Romaines, of whiche his fortune was lyke vnto the former battell.

In the meane season Mago captaine of Carthage being sent to the ayde of the Romaines with a hundred and twenty shippes, came before the Senate, and told the it greatly greued the Carthaginians, that a forraign king should be suffered to make warre in Italy. For which consideration he was sent, that for as muche as they were assailed by a forraigne ennemye, they might be rescued by forraigne succoure. The Senat gaue the Carthaginians thanks, and sent away their succoures agayne. But Mago accordinge to the nature of a man of Affricke, wpythin fewe dayes after, as though he ment to procure peace for the Carthaginians, went secretly to Pyrrhus intending to seke his minde, and to learn what he purposed as concerning Sicill whether it was reported he was sent for. For the Carthaginians sent ayde to the Romaines. For noone other occasion, but that Pyrrhus might haue so occupie hym wpyth

Pyrrhus over-
cometh the
Romaines

The magnifi-
cance of Pyr-
hus.

Pyrrhus van-
quished the
Romaines a
gayne.

The vvarres of
Pyrrhus in Ita-
ly.

with the Romaines in Italy, that he myght haue no le-
sure to passe into Sicil. While these things were a doing,
Fabritius Lucinus being sent ambassadour from the Se-
nate of Rome, concluded a peace with Pyrrhus, for con-
firmation wherof, Cynas being sent from Pyrrhus with
great giftes and rewards, could find no man that wold
ones open his doore to receiue hys bysses. Another exam-
ple like vnto this stapednesse of the Romaines, hapned at
most the very same tyme. For the Senate sent ambassa-
dours into Egypt, to whom Ptolomy the king sent rich
giftes, the whiche they utterly refused and within a
day or twaine after when they were bidden to supper, and
crownes of Golde sent them, at that time they receiued
them to honour of the kinge and the nexte daye after set
them vpon the kynges Images. Cynas therfore when
hee hadde broughte worde howe the peace with the Ro-
maines was intreated by Appius Claudius, being deman-
ded of Pyrrhus what maner of thing Rome was, he an-
swered, that it seemed to him to be a City of kings. After
this, came vnto him ambassadours of the Sicilians, ren-
dering into his hands the right of the whole Iland, which
was then vexed with continual warres by the Carthagi-
nenses. Therfore leauing his sonne Alexander at Locres,
and hauing well manured the other Cities with stronge
garrisons, he wasted ouer his army into Sicil. And for as
much as we be come to treat of the Carthaginenses, I
must speake a lytle concerninge theyr originall, repe-
tinge somewhat deeper the deues of the Tyrians whose
chaunces also were much to be lamented.

The Nation of the Tyrians was founded by the Pheny-
cians, who being troubled with an earthquake forsooke
their native soyle, & inhabited first the lake of Assyria &
anone after the nexte Sea Coast, building in the same
place a City, which of the abundance of fish they na-
med Sydon. For the Phenicians call a fish Sydon,
Manye yeares after beinge subdued by the Kinge of the
Ascalonites

Ascalonites, they tooke shipping and arryued in the same
place where they builded Tyre, which was done the yere
before the destruction of Troy. There they were oftenti-
mes and diuersly assailed with wars by the Persians, but
euer they had the vpper hand.

But when theyr power was once wasted, their bondin-
g aboundinge in multitude, delt outrageously and cruellly
with them. For they made a conspiracye amonge them-
selues and kyled al the free bozne people with their mai-
sters also, and so hauinge the city at will, they entered
possession in their maysters houses, they invaded the com-
mon weale they married wyues (that which they them-
selues neuer were) they begat free chyldren. There was
one amonge so manye thousande slaues, who beinge of a
meke and honest nature, for pittye of fortune of the olde
man his maister and his yonge sonne diide not of brastly
cruelly murther them, but of mercifull compassion, and
manhode saued them. Wherefore when he had byd them
out of the waye (as they had bene slaine) & that the bonde-
men consulting vpon the estate of the common Weale
thought it good to create the in a king of theyr owne cor-
poration, and him in especially to (as a man moste accep-
table to the goodes.) that first should see the sunne rising
he declared the matter secretly to his maister Strato (for
that was his name) where he lay hid in a corner. Beinge
by him sufficientely instructed what to doe, when they
were all assembled into the field by midnighe whyles all
the rest stode gaping into the East, he all onely looked ad-
uisedly into the West.

At the firste all the rest thoughte it a madnesse, to
loke for the rising of the Sunne into the Weste, But
assone as the day began to breake, and the East beganne
to glister vpon the highest toppes and Pynacles of the
toures and temples of the City, whyle al the other ga-
sed for to see the Globe of the Sunne, hee firste of all be-
wed vnto hem all the brightnes of the Sunne shynynge
vpon

An example
of crueltye of
bondmen.

The difference
betwene the
vyt of a Gen-
tlemen and the
vyt of a Vyl-
layne.

Example of
continencie,

Pyrrhus is
made king of
Sicil, read here
of more in the
xxiii. Booke.

A digression
to the actes of
the Tyrians
and Carthagi-
nenses.

Sydon.

upon the top of the Citie. This seemed a greater reason than is wont to be in slaves. Whereupon they enquired whogave him the counsel, and he confessed as touchynge his maister.

Then it was perceived what difference there is betwene the wit of a slave, and the wit of a Gentleman, and that slaves excell in malice but not in wisdom. Therefore the olde man and his sonne wer pardoned, and forasmuch as they thought them to bee preserved by the diuine providence of god, they created Strato king. After whose decease the kynngdome descended to his sonne, and so forth to his posterity. This was a notable acte of the slaves and terrible example to the whole worlde. Wherefore Alexander the great, at such tyme as hee agreate whyle after made warre in the East, as a reuenger of the common tranquillitee, wonne thier citey and hung ryppm al by that remayned after the battell in remembrance of the murder done in old tyme by their predecessors. Quicpe the kynned of Strato, he preserved unhurt, and restored h kyngdome to his offspring placing freeborne & gyleles people in the Island, to the intent that the same seede & offppe being utterly rooted out, the offspring of the Cyp might be as it were planted of new agayne. The Cyrians therfore being in thus wyle by the means of Alexander newe founded throughe theire owne sparynge and travell in getting, grew strange agayne within short space. Wherefore the slaughter of the maisters, whē then abounded both in riches and in number of menne they sent a compaign of youth in to Affricke and hilled Veica, when as in the meane while the kinge of Tyre deceased, ordayninge for his heires bys sonne Pygmalion and his daughter Elisa a maide of most excellent beaurte. But the people deliuered the kyngdome to Pygmalion bypag a very childe, Elisa also was maried to her uncle Sycheus the priest of Hercules, the whiche Roome is of greatest honoure nexte unto the kyng. This manns hadde greete riches but no

Murder re-
mained in the
posterity.

The buildynge
of Veica in
Affricke.

no manne knewe where they were, and for feare of the Kyng, he hadde hidden bys goulde, not in houses but in the Grounde.

Whych thinge though men knewe not of certaintye, yet it was commonly so reported, with the whiche Pygmalion beinge incensed, forgetting all bonde of nature, without any respect of godlynesse, killed his Uncle beinge also his brother in Lawe. Elisa detestynge her Brother a greate whyle after for doyng of this wicked act, at the last dissemblinge her inward hatred, and bearyng a faire countenance towardes hym for the tyme, practiced prively to flye awaye. and takynge into her compaigne certain of the Noble Men, whom she knewe to beare like hatred to the kyng, and to haue like desire of flyng awaye: she came to hir brother with a pollicie, sayynge that she woulde remoue out of her owne house, and come dwell with him, to the intent the sighte of her husvands house, shoulde not continuallye renewe her sorowe which she couered to forget, and to the intent the bitter remembrance of hym shoulde not anye more waue before her eyes. Pygmalion was wel contented to hear his sister say those wordes, because he thought she woulde byng her husband Sycheus go to with hir. But Elisa caused the kinges seruantes that were lent hir to helpe to remoue hir stuffe, to goe into shypes and carie her riches with the in the shutting in of the evening. And when she had them a good waye from the shore, she compelled them to throw certaine bagges and cofers full of sande into the sea making them beleue it was monye. Then she hir self weeping with piteous voyce, besought her husband Sycheus receiue his riches for an offryng, whiche had byn the cause of his death. Which don she turned her self to h kinges seruantes, sayng y tyme was come that she her self shold receiue the death that she so sore had lōged for & that they shoulde abide bitter tormentes for making away the riches of hir husband Sycheus, for couetousnesse wherof

The pollicie
of Diana to
escape from
her brother.

And.

the

the king hadde murdered hym. By putting them all in this feare, they were contented to goe away with hir. Whereafter a great number of the nobility, which were in readinesse for the same purpose, set forth with hir, and so having made sacrifice again unto Hercules, whose priest Sycheus was, they forsooke their countrey to seek them a new dwelling place. The first lande that they arrived at was the Isle of Cyprus, where the priest of Jupiter with his wife and children by the commandement of the God offered himselfe to Elisa as a companion and partaker of all her fortune, bypon covenante, that he and his posterity should for evermore enioye the honour of the priesthood. The condition was the manner of the Cyprians to send their maidens before they should be married to the seas side, there to earne their marriage mony certain daies with the abuse of their bodies, and to make offerings to Venus for the preservation of their chastity all their liues after. Of these sort of women, Elisa commaunded hir menne to take up foure score or there aboutes that were young maidens, and to shipp them, that her young Menne myght haue wives, and the city encrease of issue. While these thinges were a doing, Pygmalion knowing of the flying away of his sister, purposed to pursue her wickedly with battell and could hardly be perswaded by the entreatance of his mother, and the threatnings of the Gods to be in quiet. To whom the Prophets being inspired with the spirit of prophesy, declared that he should not escape unpunished, if he wente aboute to hinder the advancement of a City so fortunate, as the like was scarce to be found againe in all the world. By meanes whereof they that fled had sufficient leysure to escape. Elisa therefore arrivinge in the coastes of Affrike, moved to friendship the inhabitants of the place, which were wont to reioyce at the coming of straungers and entercourse of marchandise. Afterwarde purchasinge a piece of grounde, as much as myght be compassed about with an

The vvycked
custom of the
Cyprians.

Ore

Ore Hide, wherein to refreshe her Company whych was weary of so longe saylinge, until she should take her iourney agayne, she caused the hide to be cut into longe slender Chonges, by meanes whereof shee had a greater piece of Ground than shee demaunded, whereuppon ever after the place was called Byrsa. Afterward by the often repayre of the Neighbourours there aboutes, who for covetousnesse of gain brought many thinges to sell to the strangers, and builded them houses to dwell amonge them, at length by much resort of people it became as good as a city. Whereafter the Ambassadors of Utica, brought presents to her, as to their kinnesfolke, encouraginge them to builde a city in the selfe same place where they had purchased a dwelling. The Afres also were desirous to detain the Strangers. All wherefore by the good consent of all parties, Carthage was builded, and a yearely rent payd for the Grounde that the City standeth vpon.

The buildinge
of Carthage.

In the first foundation digging, there was found an Ore head, which betokened, that it should be a very fructfull and plentiful lande, but that the City should be alwaies labouringe, and alwayes in bondage. Where vpon the City was removed to another place. There they founde a Hoyle heade, which signified that the people should be warlike and of great power, and so in that place they builded the City with good Lucke.

Then shortly after by the concurrence of the Countreys there aboutes, resortinge thither for the good opinion they had of the newe City, it became a greate and populous towne. At such time as Carthage began to bee in flourishing estate and riches, Iarbas kinge of Mauritany callinge to him tenne of the Princes of the Afres, sent them to fetch Elisa to be his Wyfe, and tell her that if she refused so to doe hee would make warre vpon her. Which message the Ambassadors beinge afrayde to doe to the Quene, wente to worke with her crafterly after the nature of Afres, declaringe that they Kinge demaunded

Iarbas kinge
of Mauritany
requesteth Dido
to Wyfe.

R 3

some

some person, that coulde learne hym and his Afres moze ciuill manners and trade of liuinge, but hee coulde synde none that would vouchsafe to forsake his owne kniffolke to go amonge such barbarous people that liued after the manner of brute beastes.

Then beinge rebuked of the Queene, that they woulde shunne any harde kinde of liuinge, for the saulsegarde of their Countrey, (for wher euen the very Lyfe it selfe ought to be spent, if neede shoulde so requyre,) they bettered the Kinges Commaundement, sayinge that shee must do the selfe same thinges hir selfe that shee taught others to do, if she desired the saulsety of her City. Beinge surprised by this subtelty, when shee had a great while together called vpon the name of her husband Sycheus, with many teares, and lamentable complaints, at the last shee answered she woulde goe whether as her owne destiny, and the destiny of her City called her. Upon this matter takinge. iij. moneths respite, she caused a great fire to be made in the vtermost part of the City (as it had bene to pacify the Ghost of her first Husbande, and to do sacrifice to him befoze she shoulde Part againe. Where after the Sacrificinge of many Beastes, takinge a sword in her hand, shee went vp to the toppe of the pile that was set on fire, and so lookinge toward the people, shee sayde she would go to her husband accordinge to the kinges commaundement and with that worde she thrust the sword to her heart. As longe as Carthage was vnuanquished, she was worshipped for a Goddesse. This City was builded Thre score & twelue yeares befoze Rome, whose misfortune as it was notable in the Warres, so in this time of peace the State was troubled with sundry Misfortunes, and ciuill debate.

Furthermoze when amonge other mischieties, they were sore vexed with the Plague, for the remedy thereof, they vsed a bloudy kinde of Religion, & abhominable wickednesse, for they offered Men in Sacrifice, and layd vpon the Altars, the Innocent younglinges (which was

wont to prouoke euen the enemy to pity) seekinge to pacifye the Goddes with the bloude of them for whose life the Goddes are wont most of all to be prayed vnto. Therefore the Gods beinge woithelp woith, and turned from them for so great wickednesse, when they had made warre a long time in Syccil to their vtter destruction, and thereupon remoued the warre into Sardinia there hauinge lost the greater parte of their host, they were vanquished in a sore fought battell. For which cause they banished (with those few that remained of his army) their captayn Machæus, vnder whose guidance they had conquered part of Syccil, and atchieued many great aduentures against the Afres. Which thinge the men of Marie takinge in great displeasure, sent ambassadours of Carthage, first entreatinge for returne into their Countrey, and for Pardon of their vnfortunate warrefare, and therewithall telling the that if they might not obtayne their request by entreatie they would win it by the sword. Where the Ambassadors coulde get nothinge, neyther by saye meanes nor by soule, within a few dayes after, they tooke shippinge, and came to the City all in Armour.

There they protested befoze God & man, that their cominge was not to offer any force to their countrey, but only to recover it, and that they would shewe they countrey men, that they wanted not courage in the former Warres, but good fortune. Whereupon they kept the City in such wise from vtuals, and besieged it so narrowly that they brought the Carthaginenses to vtter despayre. In this meane time Cratelo the sonne of the banished captayn Machæus, as he passed by his Fathers campe from Tyre, (whither he had bin sent by the Carthaginenses, to carry vnto Hercules the tenthes of the Booty that his father had takē in Syccil) beinge sent for by his father, answered he would first accomplishe his duty in the publike religion ere hee would do any priuate duty to Father, or Mother. Wherby thinge albeit by Father were much Offended with, yet hee

A Captayn & his Armye Banished for Misfortune.

Carthage is besieged by theis owne Citizens.

Dido is taken in her owne trap.

Dido sleeth herself.

An abhominable kind of religion.

durst not as then vse any violence towarde him, for reue-
rence of Religion. Within a day or two after, desiring
safecouduite of the people, when hee was returned to his
father, and that he haunted himselfe openly before al mens
Eyes, decked in his Purple Robes, and his Mytter, accor-
ding to the degree of Priesthood: his father leadinge him
a side into a secret place sayde to him. Thou wicked War-
ler durst thou bee so bolde as thus bedect wit Scarlet and
be dashce with Golde, to come into the open face of so ma-
ny of thy wretched Citizens, and to enter into this sorowe-
full and mourninge Campe, swimminge in these tokens of
quyet prosperitey, lyke as if thou shouldest triumphe ouer
us? Couldst thou finde none other persons to bragge thy
selfe before, but us? couldst thou finde no place so meete as
the penury of thy father and the calamities of his unhap-
py banishment? Dost thou remember that beinge the o-
ther day called thou proudly disoayned, I say not thy fa-
ther, but certesse the Captaine of thine owne countrymen?
And I praye thee what else representest thou in this thy
Purple robe and these crownes of golde, than the titles of
my victories? For as much therfore as thou acknowle-
gest thy Father for no better then a banished man. I also
wil shewe my selfe rather as a graund captaine, then as a
father toward thee. I wil make thee an example to al me
hereafter not to be so bolde as to laugh & scoffe at the un-
fortunate miseries of their fathers. Immediately hereup-
on he caused him to be nayled to a very high crosse in the
sight of the city in his apparell & attire as he went. With-
in a few daies after he tooke Carthage, and summoning the
people before him, complained of his wrongfull banish-
ment, excusing the war which hee was compelled to take in
hand for soze against his wil, by reason his conquestes were
despised. Wherefore in as much as he had punished th'op-
pressors of his miserable countrymen, he sayd he was con-
tent to pardon all the rest for his wrongfull banishment.
And so hauing put ten of the senators to death, he restored

A terrible ex-
ample for diso-
bedience to
the father.

Carthage is
taken.

the city to their lawes againe. Not longe after he was ac-
cused to haue gone about to make himselfe Kinge. Where-
upon he suffered double punishment, both for working trea-
son against his Countrey, & for murdering his own son.
After him succeeded in the Captaynship Mago, by whose
knighthood both the richesse, the Volities of the Emprre,
and the renoune of Cheualry of Carthage was greatly
encreased.

The xix. Booke.

The contentes of the xix. Booke.

Mago Duke of Carthage dyeth, his sonnes Hasdruball & Hamilcar
succeedeth. The Carthaginēses are overcōe by the Afres, & pay the
Rent for theyr cyttyll: they make Warre in Sardinia and Syeyl, the
Message of the Ambassadors of Darius to the Carthaginēses, the Afres
are compelled to releate the rent, the army of Hamilcar perissheth by
the pestilent influence of the stances, the remnaunt vvhich of he bryng-
eth home, and killeth himselfe.



When Mago Graund Captayne of the
Carthaginēses, had first of al men by op-
tayneing the laws of armes, founded the
Emprre of the. Afres and stablished the
strength of his Citty, no lesse by his pol-
licy in the Warres than by Wisdannee
hee decreased, leauinge behinde him two Sonnes. Hasdru-
ball and Hamilcar, who runninge in the footestepes of
their fathers vertue, as they succeeded hi in Linage, so suc-
ceeded they him also in worthines. Under these Captaynes
Warre was made in Sardinia. Moreover a fild was
fought against the Afres, that demaunded many Arrera-
ges of rent for the soyle, whereon the Citty standeth. But
as the Afres had the iustier Quarel, so had they the better
fortune. By meanez whereof the warres were ended with
them, by paymēt of Money, & not by dint of sword. In Sar-
dinia also Hasdrubal bringe soze wounded, surrendered the
Gouernmēt to his Brother Hamilcar & died, whose death

A continuance
of the Histo-
rye of Car-
thage.

was honorable both for the mourning of the whole City, and also because he had bin a leuen times dictatour, and had hadde foure triumphes. The enemye also began to take hart a grace, as though þ with the capitaine, the strengthe of the Carthaginenses had decayed. For the Sicilians being oppressed by the Catthaginenses with dailye iniuries, revolted to Leonida the brother of the kynge of Lacedemon. Whereuppon arose soye warres, in whiche there were many fieldes foughten, somtime to the gaine, & somtime to the losse of epyther part. While these thinges wer a doing ambassadours came from Darius kynge of the Persians to Carthage, with commandment to the Carthaginenses, that they should leaue offering of menne in sacrifice, and eating of doges flesh. Howeuer the kynge commaunded them rather to burne their dead men, than to burye them in the grounde requesting them of apd agaynst the Greeces. vnto whom Darius was about to make warre at the same tyme. But the Carthaginenses denyng hym ayde, by reason of the continuall warres they hadde with theyr neighbors to the intent they would not seeme dysobedient in all thynges, willingtly obeyed him in the rest. In the meane season Hamilcar was slaine in the warres in Sycul, leauynge behynd him thre sonnes, Amilco, Hanno and Gisgo. Hasdrubal hadde also like number of sonnes Hannibal, Hasdrubal, and Sappho.

By these men wer the affaires of Carthage ruled in those dayes. Therefore warre was made agaynst the Moores, fieldes wer fought agaynst the Numidians, and the Afres were compelled to releafe vnto þ Carthaginenses for euer the rent that they were wonte to paye for the soile of theyr Citie. Afterwarde when suche a Number of Graunde capitaines became burdensome to the Citie, whyche before tyme had bene wont to bee free, in that they vpd all and iudged all as they listed them selues, there were a hundred of the Senatoures chosen to bee Iudges whyche when the Capitaines returned from the warres, shoulde

take an account of their doings, to the entent that thereby they might be kept in awe, so to behaue themselves in executinge their auctoritey in the warres, as they myght should neuer thelesse haue respect to do Justice accordyng to the lawes of their countrey. In Sycul in the stead of Hamilcar, Hamilco was made graue captain. Whol hauing prosperous successe in battell both on sea, & land, sodainly by the influence of a pestilent Planet, lost all his men of warre. Whereof when tidinges came to Carthage, the Citie was stricken in heauynesse, and al was ful of howlinge, & pelling as if the Citie had bin taken by the Enemy. Euery daye doyes were shot vp, the Temples of the Gods were shut vp, al Ceremonies were omitted, al priuate duty was laid aside, they went out all to the Gate, & made inquisition for their frendes or those few that remained from the plague as they came out of the shippes. After the tyme they perceived what was become of the, (for vntill then, they hunge betwene hope and feare, not knowinge of certaintie whether their frendes were all dead or no) then a man might haue herd ouer all the coast the sorrowful Sighes, & Sobes of such as lamented, the pitefull howlinge & Schryinge of the vnhappy mothers, & the lamentable outcries of all men on all sides. Amonge these thinges comes out of this ship þ poore captain Hamilco, in a filthy & beggerly cloake girte aboute him, at the sight of whom the Mourners as they stood in ranks clustered about him. He himself also holding vp his handes to heauen, bewailed eft his own misfortune, and eft the misfortune of his countrey, & therewithall he cried out vppon the Goddes whiche had taken from him so great honour of chualtry, and so great ornaments of victories, whyche they them selues had geuen hym, who after the winning of so many Cities, and after the vanquishinge of so many enemies so ostentimous, both by sea and by land, had destroyed that victoripous armye, not by battell but by pestilence. Wherein yet notwithstanding he sayd he brought no small comforte to his

A todayne
pe-
silence.

A lamentable
destruction
the Citie of
Carthage.

The ambass-
ade of Persia.

Country

countrey men, in þ their Enemies might reioyce, but not vaunt themselves of their calamities. For they were not able to say, þ they which were dead were slayne by them, nor that they which were returned were put to flight by them. As for the Praye that they founde in their desolate Campe, it was no stretch that they might boast of it as of þ Spoyle take fro their vāquished enemy, but as of thinges fallinge into their mouths vnlooked for, by the sobayne deaths of the right owners. In respect of the enemy, they had come away conquerors, but in respect of the pestilence, þ were come away vāquished. And nothing grieved him more, then that hee might not be amonge those most Valiant men, & that hee had bin reserved, not to liue pleasantly, but to be as a gasinge stocke for his calamities. When hee it assone as hee had conuerped home the remnaunte of his wretched host vnto Carthage, he would also follow his fellows that were gon before. Whereby his country should perceiue that he had not liued to that day, because he was desirous of life, but because he would not by his death betray those fewe þ the vnspcakable pestilence had spared, by leaving them without a Guide, as besieged in the midst of the Hostes of theyr Enemies. Enteringe into that City with such Doane, assone as hee came home to his owne House, hee dismissed the multitude as the last time that euer hee purposed to speake to them, and when he had barred in his Doore to him, sufferinge no man to come at him, (no not so much as his owne Sonnes) hee killed himselfe.

Hamilear kyl-
leth himselfe.

* *

The

¶ The contentes of the. xx. Booke.

Dennis the elder driueth the Carthaginenses out of Syccill, & maketh Warre in Italy: a declaration of the foundation of the Cities in Italy. The Warres betwene the Crotoniens, and the Locreses. The life, doctrine, and death of Pythagoras. Dennis is ouercom by the Crotoniens, and concludeth a League with the Frenchmen, the doings of the Frenchmen in Italy, Dennis returneth into Syccill, against the Carthaginenses, and is slaine by his owne men.



Dennis havinge expulsed þ Carthaginenses out of Syccill, & taken the Government of al the whole Ilande into his hā, makinge it both a burthē to the realme, to keepe so many men Iole, & also a dangerous matter to suffer so great an army to ly still slothfully & do nothinge: conueyed his host into Italy, partly of purpose to quychen the strength, of his Shoulders by continuall labour, and also to enlarge the boundes of his Empire. The first Warre þ hee had, was againste the Grekes: þ Inhabited next þ Sea coast of Italy. The which beinge subdued, he assailed euer the nexte vnto them, and finally he proclaimed open warre against all that bare the name of Grekes in Italy, whych sorte of people belde not one part, but almost al Italy at þ time. And there be many Cities which after so longe continuance do yet at this day shewe manifest tokens of the Greeke custome. For the people of Thuscane which possesse the coast of the neather Sea, came out of Lydia. And þ Venetians, (who as we see, are Inhabiters of the upper Sea) came vnder Antenor from Troy, after the takinge and destruction thereof. Adria also is next þ Illirian Sea, & which gaue þ name to the Adriatic sea is a Greke city. So is Apros which Diomedes builded after the ouerthrow of Troy, beinge calld by the same place by shipwrack. For comen Pyle in Lū.

A discourse of
the actes of
the Sicilians

The warres of
the elder Dennis
in Italy.

A digression
to the founda-
tions of the
cities of Italy.

bardy had Grekes to their founders. And amonge þ Thusc-
canes, the Tarquines fetch their beginning frō the Thes-
salians and Spinambres. And the Perusines from þ Ache-
ans. What shal I say of the city Cere? what shal I speake
of the Latine people, which seme to be founded by Eneas?
Now the Falisces, of the Iapygians, the Nolines, þ Abe-
lanes, wer they not sometim enhabiters of Chalcis? what
is all the coaste of Campanie? what are the Brutians and
Sabines? what are the Samnits? what are the Tarentines,
who (as it is left in wyting) came from Lacedemon, and
wer called bastardes? They say þ Philoctes builded the
city of þ Thurines, whose tumb is to be sene ther at this
day and the bestes of Hercules in the temple of Apollo,
which wer the desteny of Troye. The Metapontines also
haue yet to shew in the Tēple of Minerva, the Iron too-
les of Epeus their first founder, wherwith he made þ horse
that destroyed Troy. For the which cause all that part of
Italy is called the greater Grece. But in the beginning of
these foundations, the Metapontines with the Sybarites
and Crotoniens wer determined to drive al bother Gre-
kes out of Italy. Asone as they had taken the city Siris, in
the winning therof, they killed befoze the very altar of
Minerva fifty pongmen embracing hir image & hir patell
belled in th'aire accustomed in hir ceremonies. Whereup-
on being vexed with pestilence & ciuil sedition, the Cro-
tonienses went first to the Oracle of Delphos. Answer was
made them, that the mischief should cease, if they hadde
once appeased Minerva, for working so wickedly against
hir Godhed, and the ghostes of them that they had slayn.
Therefore when they had begon to carue images to set vp
to the pongmen, of the same bignesse that they wer being
alive, & in especially unto Minerva. The Metapontines,
knowinge the Oracle of the Gods, thoughte it good to
worke speedely in pacifying both the pong mennes ghostes
& displeasure of þ Gods & so did they set vp little images of
Clones to the pong Men, and appeased the Goddes wth
bread

Violation of
religion.

bread sacrifices. And so whyle the one part strived in cost-
liness and the other part in swiftnesse, the pestilence was
ceased on both parties. The Crotoniens hauing recovered
helth, abode not long in quiet. Therefore taking displeasure
that in the siege of Siris the Locrines came to fight against
them, they made warre vpon them. The Locrines being
stricken with feare, resorted to the Spartanes, bespyngne
them humbly of succour. The Spartanes being loth to en-
ter into war so far of, had them aske helpe of Castor and
Pollux. Neether did the ambassadoys of the Locrines
despyse the Locrines councell. And therefore departinge into the
next temple, and ther making sacrifice, they cryed vpon
the gods for help. When they had offered their sacrifices
and obtayned the thinge that they came for (as they
thought) theyng as m:rye as if they should haue leaped
the Gods themselves with them, they made them shyness
in theyr shippes, and with lucky tourney, in steade of suc-
cour they brought home comfort. This theyng knowne,
the Crotoniens also sent ambassadoys to the Oracle at
Delphos praying for victorie and prosperous ende of the
warre. It was answered that they must overcome them
by battell. Whereupon when they had bowed vnto Apollo
the tenth of the praye, the Locrines getting knowledge
both of the vow of their ennemyes, and of the answer of
the Goddes bowed the nupt and kep the thing secrete to
themselves, for fear lest they should be ouercome by volu-
ting. Therefore when they were come into the fielde, & that
there stode in the battell of the Crotoniens an .C. and xx.
thousand fighting mē in harness the Locrines beholding
their own sciender number, (for they had no moe but .xx.
thousand) caste awaye all hope of victorie and bent
themselves obstinately to dye in the fielde. And by mea-
nes of this desperatnesse, eury man tooke suche a portee
vnto him, that they thoughte theymselfes to haue gotten
the victorie if they might reuenge their deachs manfullye

Ciull warre
in Italy.

Mark the
superstition of
the heathen.

Despise ge-
neral courage.

But

But whyle they sought to dye honestlye, they gate the byper hand more luckelye. Neyther was there anye other cause of the victorie, then that they fell in despayre.

All the whyle the Locrines were fightinge, there was an Eagle that neuer departed from their battels, nor neuer lesse howering aboute theym untill they had gotten the upper hand. Moreover two yong men in straunge armor vniyke the one to the other of excellent personage, vpon whyte horses and in scarlet clokes were sene flyeing in the winges of the battell, who as soone as the battell was ryded vntill out of sight. The incredible swiftnesse of faide increased the wonderment of the thing. For the same daye that the battell was fought in Italye the victorie was reported at Corynthe Athens & Lacedemon. After this the Crotonians dyd neuer passe to exercise themselves in cheualry nor in feare of armes. For they hated them, because they had so vnluckely attempted theym. And they had chaunged theyr life into riot and polenes, if the Philosopher Pythagoras hadde not bene. This man beyng the sonne of a ryche marchant of Samos called Damarat, and beyng broughte by in the studies of wysedome, wherein he greatlye increased, tooke his iourney first into Egypt, and after ward to Babylon, to learne perfectelye the mouinge of the planettes, and to searche out the beginning of the world, and attayned to singular knowledge. As he returned from thence he went to Candie and Lacedemon to studye the lawes of Mynos & Lycurgus, whiche were famous at that tyme. In all which beyng perfectlye instructed he came to Croton, & by his auctorite renouked the people to chastytasse latelye fallen into excess and riot. Dailye he comended vertue, and dyspraised the vice of riot, reciting the miserable chanches of Cities, that had decayed throught the plague wherby he so dyspersed the multitude to the fauoure of chastytines, that some of them which were utterlye downed in riot, were contrary to all expectation, brought agayn to good chastyt.

Moreover

Moreover hee gaue the wyues instructions a parte from their husbannes, and the children oftentimes a parte from their parentes. He taught the women chastite, shamefastnesse, womanhode, and obedience to their husbannes. The men chylde modesty, sobernesse, good nourture, and learning, and among these thinges, he enterclosed chastytynesse the mother of all vertues. Finallye he dyd so muche with his continual disputations, that the noble women, layde asyde their garments of clothe of golde and other ornamente aperteyning to their estate, as instrumentes of superfluite, and brought them all into Iunios temple, and there consecrated them to the Goddesse: perswading with them that the true ornamente of ladies and gentle women, is chastite and not attyre. Howe muche hee was able to way with the other youth of the cite, the byrding of the stubborne stomackes of the women dothe wel declare. But there were thre hundred younge men whiche gathering on a route, bounde themselves wth an othe to lye together like sworne brothers from the residue of the citizens. By whiche their doinge as though they had made an unlawfull assemble to conspire against the cite, they brought all the whole Cite on theyr neckes. And as they were all assembled into one house, the Cite mouide haue bynted them by. In which hurlyburlye, almoste .lx. of them were slayne, and the residue were bannysshed. When Pythagoras had dwelled full twentye yeres at Croton, he remoned to Metapont and there deceased. Whom they had in such estimation, that of his House they made a temple and honored him for a God. Therfore after that Dennis the Tyrant (whome we declared before to haue passed his armie out of Sicill into Italye, and to haue made warre against the Grekes) had wonne Locrece by force, he assailed the Crotoniens who had yet skarpe after so long respit, recouered their strenght decayed by the slaughter of the foresayde warre. And yet they nowe with their fewe, mirablye resisted his so populous armye, then

D. i.

they

The swiftnesse of faide.

Of Pythagoras and his doctrine.

The true ornaments of Ladies.

He returneth to the doings of Dennis.

they coulde with so many thousandes, make resistance be-
foze, against the smal number of the Locrines. So great
force hath powertie against proude rycbesse, and so muche
more certayne sometime is the victorie vnhoped for, than
the victorie that is made accompt of before hande. Whyle

Dennis entred
in league with
the French men
tho' baned
Rome.

Dennis was making this warre, the Ambassadors of
the French men which a fewe Monethes before had bur-
ned Rome) came vnto him, desiring to enter in League
and Friendship with him. Alleging that they Country
was situate among the midde of his enemies, wherfore
they might stande him in good steade, whether it were to
aue him in the battayle, or to set vpon them behind, whi-
les they wer fighting with him before, Dennis liked this
ambassage well. And so entering in league with them, and
being increased in power by their aid, he began his warre
as it were newe agayne. The cause why these French-
men came into Italy to seeke them a new dwelling place,

cities builded
in Italy by the
French men,

was the ciuil discorde and continuall debate that they had
at home among themselves. For wearinesse wherof com-
ming into Italy, they drove the Thuscans out of house
and home & builded the cities of Millain, Come, Brixia,
Verone, Bergome, Trident, & Vincent. The Thuscans
also with their capitaine Rhetus, hauinge lost their owne
country, tooke the Alpes, and after the name of their cap-
taine, founded the nation of the Rhetians. But Dennis by
the coming of the Carthaginenses into Sicill, was driue
to returne home, for they had repayed their armie, and
with a greater power renewed the warres which they had
broken up by constraynte of the pestilence. The captaine
of this warre was Hanno of Carthage, whose enemy Su-
nator, a man at that tyme of the greatest power one of
them in all Affricke, in despite of him, wrote familiarlye
in Greke vnto Dennis, aduertysing him of the coming
of the armie, and of the cowardise of the captaine. But
his letters were taken by the waye, wherupon hee was
condemned of treason, and an acte of Parliament made,
that no

that no man of Carthage should hereafter learne Greke
letters or stony the Greke tongue, so thence he should be
not take with the enemy, or write vnto him withoute
an interpreter. And ere it was long after Dennis whom
a little before neyther Sicill nor Italy were able to hold
beinge overcome with continuall warres in battell, and
broughte low at laste was slayne by treason of his owne
Subiectes.

The death of
Dennis.

The xxi Booke.

The contentes of the xxi. booke.

The yonger Dennis exerceyth all kynd of Tyranny, is expelled
the realme, exerceyth much vnspcakable tyrany at Locres in Ita-
ly, is driven from thence and taketh Syracuse. Hanno goeth a-
bout to oppresse the common weale of Carthage is bevrayed twise
and put to death. Dennis deposeth him selfe and flyeth to Cornthe
where he liueth a filchly lyfe. Hamilchar surnamed Rhodanus ve-
uerth the deinges and councelles of great Alexander, certifyeth his
countrymen therof, & at his returne is put to death for his labour.



After the tyme that the Tiran

Dennis was slayne in Sicill, the
men of warre placed in his rouine
his eldest sonne named Denis also
both because he was a man grow-
and also because they thought the
kingdome should be the stronger
if it remayned still in one mannes

The yonger
Dennis.

hand, rather then if it should be deuoyd among his sones
in many portions. But Dennis in the begynninge of his
raigne, couered loze to haue put to death his brothers vn-
cles, as enuyers of his estate, and prouokers of the chil-
dren to demaunde a partition of the kingdome.

Wherupon he dissembled his displeaure a while, & sette
his

Treason offered
and punished.

his mynde to procure the sauoure of his commons, thinking to do it with lesse blame, if all men should first conceiue good opinion of his doinges. And therefore hee lette the hundred offenders out of Prison, and released the people three yeares subside, alluring their myndes by all kind of counterfet gentleness that he was able to deuyse. Then going in hand with the mischief he hadde so longe purposed, he slew not onely his brothers kynfolke, but also his brothers themselves. In so much that whom hee ought of right to haue made parientes of his kingdome, he suffered not to be partakers of life and breath: beginning to execute his tyranny vpon his owne kynred, ere he proceeded to worke it agaynst straungers.

When he hadde dispatched his brothers (of whom as of his enemyes he stood in feare) he fell to slothfulness, and through excessiue feeding became fatte and cosp, and gate such a disease in his eyes, that he was not able to abhorre the Sunne nor the dust, nor finally the glistring of any light. For which causes beleuing himselfe to be had in disdaine of all men, he executed most extreme crueltye, not filling the Gayles with prisoners as his father did but replenishing the city with slaughters, for which things he became not so much disdained as hated of all menne.

Therefore when hee perceived that the Syracusanes were mynded to bid him battell: he was in doubt a great while whether it were better to depose himselfe, or to withstand them by force. But his men of warre (in hope to haue spoyle and sackynge of the cite) compelled him to stand to the trepass of it by battell, where being vanquished and attempting fortune the second tyme with successe, hee sente Ambassadors to the Syracusanes, promising to depose himselfe from his tyranny, if they would sende commissioners vnto him, to conclude an agreement with him.

They sent the chiefe men of theyr cite for the same purpose, whom he putte in ward, and so sodaynly ere they wyfte thereof, or feared that he mente anye enuoye, hee sente

he sent his army to destroy the city. Whereupon ensued a foze, and doubtful Encounter euen within the very City, but by reason the townsmen were farre mo in number, Dennis and his men were put backe. Who fearing to be besieged if hee abode in the Castle, pryncipally fled into Italy with al his princely Apparel, Treasure, & household stuffe. Being in his banishment receiued by his confederates the Locrines (as though he had bin their rightful kinge) hee tooke their forerise, and there exercised his accustomed crueltye. He enforced the noble mens wyues, and when the maydens should be married, he fetched them away, and hauing abused them, sent them to their sponces agasse. The richest, and welthiest persons, either he drave out of the city, or els caused them to be put to death, and seised their goods. And when he saw there was no more for him to catch conueniently, he compassed al the whole city by a subtle practise. At such time as the Locrines were oppressed with the warres of Leophrō Kinge of Rhegiū, they made a bow that if they leane the vpper hand, they would vpon a feastful day of Venus, set their Virgins in the open strewes for al men to abuse. Which bowe being left vnperformed, and hauing vnfortunate warres with the Lucanes, Dennis called them together before him, & exhorted them to send their wifens and daughters, as gorgeously Appareled as they could into the temple of Venus, & out of them there should bee a hundred drawn by lot to performe the common bowe, which for religious sake, should stand in the strewes for y space of one month al their husbands beinge sworn, not to haue to do with any of the. And to the intent the maydens thus performinge the comon bowe, should not be hindered thereby, they should make a decree y none other mayde should be ensured to any husband before those other were marked. This counsell was well allowed, as in which prouision seemed to be made both for the performance of their superstitions, & also for the preseruatiō of the chastity of

Dennis flyeth into Italy.

That which is bred by the bowe will not out of the flesh

The vnfaithfulness of Dennis towards the Locrines.

The cruelty of Dennis.

The great treachery of Dennis.

their Virgins. Whereupon the Women assembled into the temple of Venus so gorgeously, and costly Attired, as who might be best, amonge whom Dennis sent his men of War, & stripped them euery one, conuertinge their Jewels, & Sumptuous Dynamentes to his owne gaine & profit. Some of their husbandes being very wealthy men, he killed, & some of the Women he put to the torture to make them confesse where their husbandes money lay. When he had with these, and such like subtleties raigned by space of vi. yerres the Locrines conspired against him, and drave him out of the city, from whence hee returned into Syccill, and there by treason (no man mistakinge any thing after so longe continuance of peace) recovered the city Syracuse. While these things were a doinge in Syccill, in the meane tyme in Affrike, Hanno Prince of Carthage, beganne to employ his richesse, (by which he surmounted the power of the common weale) about compassinge of the soueraynty, intending to haue slain the Senate, and to haue made himselfe Kinge.

To the performace of which mischief, he had chosen a certaine day, in which his daughter should be solemnely married, to the entente that vnder colour of performinge his Womans, hee might the easier worke his wickednesse, and bringe his mischieuous deuises to effect vnespied. And therefore hee prepared a feast for the people in the open Portches, and Galleries of the City, and for the Senate in his owne house. To the entent that hauinge privately and without witnesses killed the Senators with poisoned Drinckes, hee myghte the more easily usurpe vpon the Common weale, beinge destitute of her Patrones, and Defendours. Which thinge beinge do by his seruantes betrayed to the Magistrates, the mischief was auoyded, but not punished: Least in a Manne of so great power, the matter beinge knowne myghte put them to more trouble, then by beinge but onely surmised. Beinge therefore contented to haue restrayned hym of

Dennis is expelled Locres
recovered by
Syracuse.

Hannos conspiracy against
Carthage.

his purpose, they made a Decree, wherein was limited what cost should be bestowed vpon marriages, straghtly charginge, and commaunding the same to be obserued, not of any one man, but of all men in generall, to the entent the person should not seeme to bee noted, but the byces rebuked. Beinge by this deuice prevented, hee stirred the bondmen to rebellion, and hauinge appointed a day agayne for the slaughter, when he saw himselfe the seconde tyme betrayed fearinge to be arraigned of Treason, hee toke a certayne stronge hold with twenty thousand bondmen well Armed.

There, whiles he solicited the Aphres, & the Kinge of Mauritanie, he was taken, and whipped, and his eyes put out, and his Armes and Legges broken, as though euery member had bin to be punished, and lastly hee was put to death in the open sight of the people, and his Body which was torne with whippinge, was hanged vpon a Gibbet. Moreover his sounes, and kinsmen euerychone of them, (were they neuer so gentle) were all put to execution, to the entent there should not of so wicked a stocke remaine any Issue, either to censure his Example in doinge the like mischief, or to reuenge his Death. In the meane tyme when Dennis after his returne to Syracuse, persisted euery day more cruell than other towarde the City, they conspired against him againe, and besieged him. Then seeinge no remedy, he deposed himself, and yelded to the Syracusanes both his holde, and his Host, and receyuinge no more but his owne private stuffe, went his way as a Banished man to Corynthe. There thinking the basest state to be the surest, he fell to a most filthy, and lothsome trade of liuinge. For he thought it not enough to lepter vp and downe the streets, vntill he were drubbinge in euery tippling house, nor to be seene in Tauerne, & alehouses, but to sit still in them all day from morninge till night. Moreover he would braule with euery raskall, and barlet for monee shyne in the way, & goe all to ragged, and slovenly, prouoke men.

Hanno is take
and punished.

Dennis deposeth
himselfe.

The vile and
lothsome lyfe
of Dennis.

to laughter rather than laugh himselfe, stand gaping and gasing in the shambles, deuouring with his eyes þ things he could not buy with his money, skoloe with haubres be-
foze the Wardens, and in fine do all chinges in such wise that he might seeme rather to be despised then feared. Last of al he professed himselfe a scholemaster, and taught child-
zen in a threewapleer, to the entent he might either be openly seene of them toat feared him, or els might the easi-
er bying himselfe in contempt of them that feared him not. For albeit hee alway abounded in Cicannous byres, yet notwithstanding this was but a counterfeiting of Ulyces, and no naturall disposition: and hee did those chinges of a pollicie, rather than for that he had forgotten his roial & princely behauiour, because he knew by pprose how hate-
full the name of a Tppan is, yea though they haue no Ri- ches nor power at all. And therfoze he laboured to take a way the Enuy of chinges past, by byinging himselfe in con-
tempt for his present Demcanoz, hauing not so much re- garde what was for his honour, as what was for the safe gard of his lyfe. Yet notwithstanding amonge all these counterfayt Dissimulations & pollicies, he was thye ac-
cused to haue sought meanes to make himselfe king again, and nothinge auayled so much to his acquittall, as that all men had him in disdayne. In the time that these chinges were a doing, the Carthaginenses being afraid at the pro-
sperous successe of great Alexanders affaires, for doubte least when he had conquered the kingdome of the Persiās, he would also adioyne Affrike therunto, to seele how he was minded, they sent one Hamilcar surnamed Rhodanus a man farre passinge al others in Wit, & Eloquence. For it encreased their feare, because they sawe their mother ci-
ty Tyrus, the authoz of their beginninge to be taken, and the city Alexandria an enemy to the estate of Carthage, bui-
lded in the boundes of Affrike, and Egypt, and also þ fortunate felicity of the kinge himselfe, of whose conquest- nesse, and good fortune, they thought there would neuer be
none

Dennis profel-
feth himselfe a
scholemaster.

The Cartha-
ginenses sende
to note the do-
inges of greace
Alexander.

none ende. Hamilcar therfoze attaininge to the speech of Alexander, by the helpe of Parmenio, sayned himselfe to be opriuen out of his countrey, and that hee was fled to the kinge for succour, offeringe himselfe to serue him as a soul-
dior in his Warres, by which pollicy hauing perfect in- telligence of the kinges entent and purpose, he aduertised his countrey men thereof in tables of wood, conered ouer
with plaue ware. But the Carthaginēles after the death of the kinge, when he returned into his countrey, not only rewarded him not, but also most cruelly put him to death, as though he had gone about to chalenge the City to the
Ryuge.

The vngra-
titude of the
Carthaginen-
les toward
Hamilcar.

The xxij. Booke.

¶ The contentes of the. xxij. Booke.

Agathocles riseth from a base degree, like as if it were by loue
steppes to the kingdome of Syccill, he executeth great cruelty, vex- eth the cōfederates of the Carthaginēles, by the sufferance of Hamil-
car, whose death pueneth the secret verities of the Carthaginenses, Agathocles is besieged by Hamilcar the son of Gysgo, he remoueth the Warre into Affrike, vanquisheth the Carthaginenses, whereupō the Aphiens reuolt vnto him, he killeth the kinge of Cyrene, ouercō-
meth the Carthaginenses againe, he raiseth the siege before Syracuse is receiued with a mutinie, is ouercome by vnadvisednes, forsaketh his men of Warre & his children which are put to death for his sake, and maketh peace vwith the Carthaginenses in Syccill.



Agathocles the tyranne of Syccill, which succeeded in the Estate of Dennis last before hym, clymbed from a low, and base degree, to the maiesty of the kingdome. For hee was a Dotters sonne of Syccill, & there was no more honesty in his childhood, than there was honoz
in

The vile, and
abominable
lyce of Aga-
thocles.

in the stocke of his auncestry. For being of favour, & Personage exceedinge Beautiful, he liued a great while in sufferance of most filthy incest. When he was past Voyes Estate, he turned his lecherous lust from men vnto women. After this beinge disfaimed with both kindes, he chaliged that trade of liuing, and fell to robbery. In proceesse of time when he came to Syracuse, and was taken into the City as amonge other Inhabiters, hee was a greate while moue credite, or Estimation, because he seemed not to haue any good to lose, nor any honesty to distaine. In fine obtaininge the roome of a rascall souldiour, looke how dishonest he was in his liuinge before, euen as lechituous was hee in his doctages then, and most forward to do all kinde of mischief. For he was counted strange of hand, and in talke very eloquent. Therefore within short space hee was made Capitayne of a hundred men, and anon after Marshall of the Hoste. In the first Battayle, which was agaynst the Aetneans, hee gaue the Syracusanes great prooue of his forwardnesse. In the next followinge agaynst the Campanes, hee made all men conceine so good opinion of him, that he was substituted in the roome of the graund captayne Damasco deceased, whose wife (with whom he had committed aduoutry in the life of her husbande) after his decease, he tooke in marriage. And beinge not content that of a begger he was sodainely made rich, hee exercised rouinge on the Sea agaynst his owne Countrey. But it was his chaunce to be saved, because when his Shippes were taken and put to the torture, they confessed nothinge of hym. Twice he went about to make himselfe Kinge of Syracuse and twice he was banished for his Labours. The Murgantines amonge whom he liued in the time of his Exile, for hatred they bare to the Syracusanes, created hym firste their Pretor, and afterwarde their Capitayne. In that warre he both took the City of the Leontines, and besieged the City of Syracuse. To the rescue whereof Hamilcar Capitayne of the Carthaginenses beinge requested to

The first rising
of Agathocles
vnto citizenship.

Agathocles be-
sieged Syra-
cuse.

come, laste aside all enmity, and hatred, and sent thither a Crew of Souldiours.

And so at one instant, the City Syracuse was defended frently by the enemy, & fiercely assaulted by her own Citizen. But Agathocles when he sawe that the towne was more manfully defended then assaulted, sent a Pursuant to Hamilcar, desiringe him to doo so much for him, as to take vpp the matter betwene him, and the Syracusanes, for the determination of some peace betwixt them, promisinge to doo the best that laye in him to recompence hys gentlenesse.

Whereuppon Hamilcar beinge filled with hope, and partly fearinge his power, entred a league of friendship with hym, vppon condition that looke howe much hee furthered Agathocles in strength agaynst the Syracusanes, so much should Agathocles recompence him withal agayne to the furtheraunce of hys aduancement at home in hys owne Countrey.

By meanes of this composition, Agathocles was not onely reconciled to the Syracusanes, but also was made Pretor of the city. The holp fire, and the Tapers were brought forth, whereupon Agathocles layinge his hand, sware before Hamilcar to become true subiect to the Carthaginenses. Whereupon receiuinge of him firste Thousande Aphres, he put to death al the Noblemen & wiers of greatest power, and authoritie, and so (as it were to reforme the state of the common wealth) commanded the people to assemble before hym in the Theatre, and gathered the Senatours into the counsell house, as though hee minded to make some decree. When he had brought his matters to this point, he sent his Souldiours to besiege the people, and hee himselfe slew the Senatours, whych slaughter beinge finished, hee put to Death also all such of the Commons, as were the Wealthiest, and forwardest persons. These thinges beinge thus compassed, hee mustered Souldiours, & raised an army, with which beinge strenght-
ned

A composition
betwene Ha-
milcar, and A-
gathocles.

Agathocles is
sworne to the
Carthaginen-
ses.

His extreme
cruelty agaynst
the Syracusa-
nes.

He vexeth the
confederates
of the Cartha-
ginenses.

The cōplainte
of the conte-
derates.

Hamilcar is co-
dened of trea-
son secretly.

Hee dyeth.

Agathocles
is overcome
twice, and is
belieged.

And he sodainly invaded the next cities, looking for no ho-
stility. Furthermore by the sufferance of Hamilcar, he
wrongfully entreated, and shamefully handled the con-
federates of the Carthaginenses. For which cause they made
complaint to the Senate of Carthage, not so much of Aga-
thocles as of Hamilcar, accusing the one as a treacherous
and the other as a traitour, by whom they were sold by
bargaine, to the bittermost enemy of their State, to whom
at the beginning in confirmation of the sayd composition
there was delivered Syracuse, the City that had ever bin
most enemy to the Aphres, & an Enemy of the Carthagi-
nenses, alwayes contending with them for the Empire of
Sycill: and now moreover were betrayed to the same per-
son, the cities of their confederates, under a counterfeit
pretence of peace. Wherefore they gave them warninge,
that if they looked not to these matters in time, within a
while they would light upon their owne heads, and some
after they should see what damage they should bring, as
well upon their owne countrey of Affrike, as upon the
poore Island of Sycill. By meanes of these complaintes, the
Senate was sore moved to displeasure against Hamilcar.
But forasmuch as he was in office, they gave their iudge-
ment secretly upon him, commandinge their varolles
(before they should be read) to be cast into a pot together,
and there to be sealed uppe, untill the other Hamilcar the
sonne of Gysgo, were returned out of Sycill. But the
death of Hamilcar prevented the storie deuiser, and un-
knownen verities of the Carthaginenses, and he was de-
livered by the benefite of Death, whom his owne coun-
treymen had wrongfully condemned without hearing of
his answer. Which thinge gaue Agathocles occasion to
move warre against the Carthaginenses. The first En-
counter that he had, was against Hamilcar the sonne of
Gysgo. Of whom bringe vanquished, he retorted to Syra-
cuse to raise a greater power, and to renew the battell a-
gaine. But he had like fortune in the second encounter as
hee

he had in the first. Therefore when the Carthaginenses ha-
ving the upper hand had besieged Syracuse, and that A-
gathocles perceived he was neither of power to Encoun-
ter the not sufficiently furnished to endure out the siege: The policy &
audacity of A-
gathocles.
and that moreover his owne confederates being offended
with his crueltye, had forsaken him: he determined to re-
move the wars into Affrike. I assure you it was a won-
derfull audacity that he should enterpryse to make warre
against the citye of the, whom he was not able to matche
in the scope of his own city, and that being not able to de-
fend his owne, he should geue the adventure upon other
mens, and that being vanquished, he should proudly vaunt
himselfe over the conquerors. The keepinge secreete of
this enterpryse, was as wonderful as the deuyse thereof:
for the people could learne nothing at his hand, but that
he had founde a way to get the byctoyre. Willing the to
do no more but take good horses to them to adoe the siege
which should not be longe, or els if there were anye that
hadde not the hart to adoe the adventure of the presente
estate, he gaue him free libertye to goe his waye whither
he would. Whereupon when he had discharged a thousand
of hire: he furnished the rest that remained with victual,
artillery, and wages, according as the estate of the siege
required. He toke with him no more but fiftye Valentes
toward his charges to spend at that time, thinking it bet-
ter to get the rest if neede should requyre more of his en-
emies then of his subiectes. When he set at libertye all the
bondsmen that were of peeres mete for the warres, and
toke an oth of them, and shipped them with the most part
of his other souldiours, thinkinge that forasmuch as hee
had made them all one in estate and degree there would
be stryfe among them who might behaue himselfe moste
manfully. At the rest he left to the defence of his country.
This done the sequenth yere of his rigne, having in his
company his two sonnes Archagathus & Heraclida, none
of his souldiours knowing whether he would goe, hee di-
rected

Agathocles
syled into Af-
ricke.

The effect of
Agathocles o-
ration to his
souldiours.

rected his course into Affricke, and wher al his men sup-
posed they should haue gone a foraging, either into Ita-
ly, or els into the Isle of Sardinia, he neuer made the priue
wherabout he went, until he had set his host a land in Af-
fricke, & then he told them all what he was minded to do.
He shewed them in what case Syracuse stood for the helpe
whercof there remained none other meane, but to do to
the enemy as he had done to them. For war was to bee
handed other wise at home, then abroad. At home a man
could haue none other helpe, then his countrey is able to
furnish him: abroad the enemy myght bee vanquished by
his own power, by reason the adherentes & partakers be-
yng weary of their long continued Empire would com-
ly fall to the helpe of farrer princes. And so for
furtherance thereof the Citties and Castles of Affricke,
were not environed with walles, nor situate in Moun-
taines, but set vpon the playne grounde in open & cham-
pion fieldes without any munition or defence, all whiche
for feare of being destroyed, would easily be entreated to
take their part in the warre. Therefore the Carthaginien-
ses should haue hotter warres at their own doores out of
Affricke then out of Sicill, and as the world assemble from
all partes agaynst that one city, greater in name then in
power, wherfore he should finde the strength there, which
he ought not much to feare. For neuer the looyng feare of
Carthaginienic, should be no small furtherance to his vic-
tory, who beinge amazed at the wonderfull audacitye of
their enemies would tremble and quake for feare. Besides
this to the entreatie of the king, they should behold the
burning of their villages, the beating downe of their ca-
stles and holdes, the lacking of the Roburue citties, & fi-
nally the besiegement of Carthage it selfe, by all whiche
things they should wel feele, that they themselves laye
as open to the warres of other men, as other men laye open
to the warres of them. By which meanes not onely the
Carthaginienic might be vanquished, but also Sicill belee
at libertie.

at libertie. For their enemies would not lie still at the
siege there, when they should heare that their owne were
in reuerdy. Therefore they could not haue deuised where
to haue founde a more easy warfare, nor a more riche and
plentifull praye. For had they once taken Carthage, the
conquerours should haue all Affricke and Sicill, in reward
for their labour. And the glory and renowne of so honou-
rable a warfare should be so great, as that it might neuer
be forgotten while the world standes, so that it should bee
said, that they only had bin the men that had turned the
warre vpon their enemies heads, which they could not
outstande at home in their owne countrey, who of their
owne accord had pursued vpon their conquerours, and
besieged the besiegers of their city.

Therefore they ought all with valiant and cherefull
hartes enterprise that warre, that the which there could
neither any greater reward be geuen them if they wan-
ted victory, nor a more honorable monument if they were
ouercome. With these and such like exhortementes, the
hartes of his souldiours were greatly encouraged. But the
sight of a wonder that happened, rebubled their minds
because that as they sailed, the Sunne was eclipsed. Of
which thing the king was as careful to geue them a due
reason, as of the war: affirming that if it had hapned be-
fore their setting forth, it might haue bin thought that
wonder had manaced them that were to set forth. But
now so much as it chaunced after they were com forth
it threatened them against whom they went. Furthermore
the eclipsing of the naturall Planets, did alwayes alter
the present state of thynges. Therefore there was
none other thing ment, but that the state of Carthage flouri-
shyng in wealth and riches, and his estate oppressed
with aduersitie, must suffer an alteration and exchange.
When he had thus comforted his souldiours, by the con-
sent of his armie he set all his shippes on fire, to the end
they might all knowe, that since there was no helpe in
runninge

An Eclipse
of the Sunne
with thamer-
pictatio thereof

Agathocles
which la-
ship on fire

running away, they must either wyne or els dye. Afterwarde when they bare downe all that came in their way, whiche way so euer they went, setting towns and castles on fire Hanno captaine of Carthage, met them with xxx. thousand Afes, in which encounter was slayne of the Sicilians two, and of the Carthaginenses thye thousand, & the Captaine himself. Though this victorie, the hartes, of the Sicilians were strengthened, and the hartes of the Carthaginenses discouraged. Agathocles having vanquished his enemies, wau cities and holdes, toke great beeries and prayes, and slewe many thousand of his enemies. Then he pitched his campe about v. myles of from Carthage, to the intent they might behold from the very wals of the city, the losse of their dearest thinges, with the wasting of their felde, and the burning of theyr uplages. In the meane time there went a great bzute ouer all Affricke, of the overthrowe and slaughter of the Carthaginien armie, and of the cities that were won. Therat every man was amazed and wondered, how so great an Empire, shoulde haue so sodain an overthrowe, in especially by an enemy all ready vanquished. This wonderment turned by litle and litle into disdaine of the Carthaginenses. For ere it was long after not only Affricke, but also the chiefe cities there abouces following this sodain alteration, revolted to Agathocles, and aided him both with victuall and money. Besides these aduersities of the Carthaginenses, to the augmentation of their miserable calamities, it happened that their captaine with all his army was betterly destroyed in Sicill. For after the departure of Agathocles out of Sicill, the Carthaginenses became more sloothful and negligent in their siege at Syracuse. Which thing An'ander the brother of king Agathocles spying, issued out upon them, and slue them vntill they were, whereof sorrowfull tidings were brought to Carthage, Therefore for as much as the Carthaginenses had lyke misfortune abrode as at home, hereupon not only the tributary

A slaughter
of the Cartha-
ginenses.

The Cities of
Affricke, re-
uolte to Aga-
thocles.

A slaughter
of the Cartha-
ginenses in
Sicill.

butary cities, but also the kyngs that was in league and amity with them, wipinge frendship by fortune and not by faythfulness, revolted frō them. Among others there was one Ophellas kyng of Cyrene, who vpon a wicked hope gapinge for the Dominion of all Affricke, entred in league with Agathocles by his ambassadours, and had conditioned with him, that when the Carthaginenses wer overcome, Agathocles shoulde take the empire of Sicill, and the Empire of Affricke. Therefore when Ophellas, was come with a great host to aid him in the warres, Agathocles entertayning him with fayre wordes and counterfeite curtesy, very lowly and humbly (because Ophellas had adopted him his soune) after they had many times & often dyned and supped together, slewe him vnwares, and entringe vppon his armie, in an other soze encounter, vanquished the Carthaginenses now coming to the field with all the power and furniture they were able to make, not without great slaughter and bludshed on both partes. Though the discomfiture of this overthrowe, the Carthaginenses were brought to such an afterdeale, that if there had not risen a mutiny in Agathocles camp, Bomilcar the captaine of the Carthaginenses had with his army revolted vnto him.

The king of
Cyrene reuol-
ted to Agatho-
cles.

Another great
slaughter of
the Carthagine-
ses.

The punish-
ment of Bomil-
car.

The words of
Bomilcar vpo
the crosse.

For the which offence the Carthaginenses nailed him vpon a crosse in the mids of the market place: to the intent that the same place might be a witness of his punishment, which had before tymes ben an aduancement of his honoure. But Bomilcar toke very stoutly the crueltye of his collie, in so much that frō the top of the crosse, as if he had bene from the iudgement: seat, he preached against the wickednesse of his Citizens, objectinge to them, sometime their vnbrightful entrapping of Hanno vpon false suspition that he went about to make himselfe king, sometime the bannishment of innocent Cygo without cause why, and sometime their secrets verities against his vncle Hamylcar, because he soughte to make Agathocles their frende

Id.

rather

Agathocles
returneth into
Sicill, and
raileth the
siege of Sy-
racuse.

rather then they enemy. When he had uttered these things with a loud voyce in a great audience of people he gave by the ghost. In the meane season Agathocles hauing put his enemies to the worse in Affricke, deliuered the charge of his host, to his sonne Archagathus and returned himself with speede into Sicill, thinkinge that al that euer he had don in Affricke was to no purpose if Syracuse were still besieged. For after that Hamilear the sonne of Gisgo was slaine, the Carthaginenses sent thither a new host of men.

Therefore asone as Agathocles was come into Sicill, all the Cities bearinge of his doynges in Affricke, yelowed themselves to him, who might yelo fastest: By meanes wherof hauing driuen the Carthaginenses out of Sicill, he took vppon him the kyngdome of the whole Island.

When he cam into Affricke againe, his souldiours welcomed him with a mutiny. For his sonne had delayed the payment of their wages, vntill the coming of his father. Wherefore he called them before him, and increased them with gentle wordes, saying, they oughte not to demaund wages at his hand, but to seke it at their enemies hande, for as by victorie should extend to them al, so the pray should be common to them al in likewise. Desiring them to play the men and take payne a litle while, vntill the remnaunt of the warres wer dispatched, considering they knew well enough, if Carthage were once taken, it were able to satisfie al they desires in more then they could hope for. Hauing thus appeased the vppore in his camp, within a few daies after he led his army to the campe of his enemies:

There he setting vpon them vnauidedly, he lost the greater part of his army. Being therefore retired into his camp, when hee perceiued howe his souldiours grudged at him for aduenturing so vnauidedly, fearing moreover th'old displeasure for nonpayment of their wages: in the dead of the night, he fled oute of the Campe, taking no more with him, but only his sonne Archagathus. Which thing when

Agathocles
takerh a losse
by ouersight

Agathocles
fleeth from
his souldiours.

his souldiours vnderstode they quaked for fear, as if they had bene taken prisoners by their enemies, crying out by their king had now twyse forsaken them in the mids of they enemies, and that he had left them in daunger of they lyes, whom hee oughte not to haue leste vnburi'd. As they would haue pursued by king they were stopped by the Numidians, and so returned into they campe hauing taken Archagathus, who had lost his father by reason of the backslisse of the night. Agathocles in the same ships that he came in out of Sicill, with such as he had left in the to kepe them, was transported vnto Syracuse: a singular example of wickednes a kinge to be a forsaker of his own army, and a father to be a betrayer of his owne children.

In the meane time in Affricke, after the dyeng away of the king, his souldiours falling to composition with their enemies slew Agathocles sonnes, and yelowed themselves to the Carthaginenses. When Archagathus should be put to death by Archefilaus one that beforetyme had ben his fathers friend, he asked him what he thought Agathocles would doo his children, by whom he was made child

Agathocles
sonnes are put
to drath.

les: Then he answered it was enoughe for him that he knew they were alive after the children of Agathocles.

After this the Carthaginenses sent captaines into Sicill to pursue & remnaunt of by war to whom

Agathocles
made peace vppon in-
differente art.

cles 196.

Agathocles'ra-
keth peace
vwith the Car-
thaginenses,

The contentes of the xxiii Boke.

A Gathocles maketh vvar in Italy, the trades and customes of the Lucanes, the originall of the Brutians, the miserable end of Agathocles, the Carthaginenses invade Sicill, Pyrrhus dryeth the out and returneth into Italy, vvhcreupon Sicill reuolteth. He is discomfited by the Romayne, and returneth vwith great lollie and dishonore into his Kingdome, the byrth, education and commendatio of Hiero.



Agathocles maketh vvar in Italy.

Gathocles king of Sicil hauing made peace with the Carthaginēses subdued certayn of the cityes which vppon truste of their owne strengt^h rebelled agaynst him. Hereupon as though he hadde bene enclosed in a straight withyn^{ne} Island (of the Em-
pyre wherof at the first begynning hee looked not for anye part at all) he passed into Italy, following the ensample of Dennis which subdued many cityes of Italy.

The firste thereof whom he proclaymed his Enemyes were the Brutians which seemed to bee both of mosse puissance and of mosse wealth, and also redicste to do they^r Neighbour's wronge. For they had expelled manye cityes of the Greke descent out of Italye. Furthermore they had also banquished theire owne Founders the Lucanes, and made peace with them vpon equal Conditions. So cruel hatred were they, that they spared not euē their owne first founders. The Lucanes did bying vp their children after the same manner that the Lacedemonians are wont to do, for from the very first tyme they begonne to grow past children they were kept in the country among shepheardes and grassiers without attendans or seruice, and without garmentes to put on their backs, or bed to lye vppon, to the entente that from they^r tender yeares they myghte enure theymselfes without helpe of the
citie.

the city, to a way with hardnes, and sparinge. Their meat was such as they could get by huntinge, and their drynke was either methe, or milke, or els faire water of springe: and so were they hardened to the paines of warrefare. Of this sort of people, first at the first beinge wont to steale cattell out of their neighbours ground, & after ward growing to a greater number, by the resort of such persons as were allured to lye vpon the spoile, made the countrey so whor, that no man almost durst stir abroad. Dennis there-fore king of Sycil, being in maner wearied with the continuall complaints of his confederates, sent ouer sixe hundred Aphres to suppress them, whose castle they won. By the treason of a woman called Brutia, and there builded a city which was soon peopled by the confluence of shepheardes resorting thither vpon hope of the new city, and they called theselues Brutians after the name of the woman. The first War that they had was with the Lucanes their own founders. With which victory being encouraged, and hauing concluded an indifferent peace with the, they conquered their other neighbours by the sword. And they gat so great riches within a while, that they seemed able to do displeasure even vnto kinges. Finally Alexander king of Epire coming into Italy with a great host to the aide of the Greke citise, was withal his army by the utterly destroyed. Their crueltie being enflamed with continuall successe of prosperitie, became terrible to their neighbours a long time after. At the last Agathocles being called to helpe in hope to enlarge his kingdome, passed out of Sycil into Italy. As he was comming towards them, for feare of his puissance, they sent their Ambassadors to him, requesting him of peace, and friendship. Whē Agathocles bidding to supper, to the entente they should not see the shipping of his army, appoynted to comon to them the next day, and so in the meane while toke shippe priuily, and stole ouer from them. But in the ende of this fraude was not to be reioiced at. For within a few daies
103 after

The manner of the Education of the Lucanes.

The originall of the Brutia.

The elder Dennis.

The Warres of the Brutians.

Agathocles arrived in Italy.

Agathocles
fallerh sicke.

after, hee was constrained to returne into Syccill, by the
force of a disease, wherewith he was taken ouer al his bo-
dy, the pestilent humoz spreading it self thzough euery li-
new and toynt, as though he that euery member had bin at
ciuil war one against another. Of which when no hope of
reconery appeared, there arose war betweene the sonne &
his nephew, ech of them chalenginge the Kingdome, as if
he had bin dead already, in which hys sonne was slayne, and
his nephew usurped the kingdome: Agathocles therefore
when he saw the griefe of his disease, and the Thought of
his minde still greuouser, and greuouser, the encreasinge
by the furtherance of the other, being utterly in despaire,
caused his Wife Thegeon to take his two litle Sonnes &
he had Begotten of her, with al his Treasure, Household-
stuffe, and Princely Furniture appertaininge vnto him,
(of which no Kyng was better storied then he was) and to
sape into Egypt from whence he toke her to his wife, for
feare least his Nephew, who had robbed him of his king-
dome, should also play the Enemy with theym. Howe be
it his wife entreated him earnestly a great while, that she
myght not bee dzawen from him in his Sycknesse, leaste
hir departure might be woorthely likened to the further
done by his nephew, and men might repoze that shee had
as cruelly abandoned her husbände, as hee had supplanted
his graundfather: sayinge that when shee was married to
him, hee toke hir to be his Companion, & Partaker not of
Prosperity onely, but of all other Fortune what so euer
shoul'd happen. Wherefore it should not greue her to lose
hir lyfe, so shee might tary with her husbände to the last
gaspe, and (acordinge as she was bound of loue and Mo-
ralitye to do) see him honourably buried, which chynge
were she once gone, no man would take vpon him to do.
When the litle ones shoulde goe away, they Embraced
their father and held him about the Necke, weeping and
cryinge out. On the other syde the wyfe, (as shee that ne-
uer looked to see her husbände moze) had neuer done killing
him

A faithful and
louinge Wife.

A description
of a lamenta-
ble departure.

him. And it was a lamentable thinge to see how pteiously
th' old man wept, the chyldzen bewailinge the father ready
to die, and the father moaninge his banished chyldzen. The
one sorowinge to leaue their sicke and diseased olde father
all alone as desolate, the other lamentinge to leaue hys
sonnes in pennry, whom he had begotten to Inherite hys
kingdome. Howeouer all the Palace range with the noise
of such as stood about weeping & sorowinge to see so cruel
a Deuozte, and departure. At the length necessity of their
forced departinge, was the ende of their weeping, and
death of the kinge ensued immediatly vpon the departure
of the chyldzen. While theese thinges were a doinge, the
Carthaginēses hauinge intelligence how the wyfde went
in Syccill, thought good occasion to bee geuen theym of re-
couering the whole Island & thereupon sailed thither with
a great power and subdued many cyties. The same time,
Pyrrhus made warre against the Romans, who as is said
before (beinge despyed to come to the ayde of the Syccilians,
when he came to Syracuse and had subdued many Cyties)
was proclaymed Kinge of Syccill like as he was of Epyre.
In the prosperous successe of which things greatly reioy-
sing, he appoynted that his sonne Heleu should be kinge of
Syccill, as in the right of his Graundfather (for he was be-
gotten of kinge Agathocles daughter) and his Sonne A-
lexander should be kinge of Italy. After this he fought ma-
ny prosperous Battels with the Carthaginēses. Within
a while after, there came ambassadours from his confede-
rates in Italy, bringing him word that it was not possible
to make resistance against the Romans, but that they
must needes yeld, vnlesse he rescued them. Being troubled
with so doubtful a daunger, & not knowinge what to do,
or whych of them he might rescue fyrst, he toke speeche
vnto as concerning both. For on the one syde the Cartha-
ginēses assailed him and on the other syde the Romaines,
so that it seemed a daungerous matter not to passe his army

The death of
Agathocles.

The Cartha-
ginēses inuade
Syccill.

Hee returneth
to the doinges
of pyrrhus me-
tioned in the
xviij. Booke.

into Italy, and yet more dangerous to lead his host out of Syccill, least the one should be lost for wante of succour, or the other by withdrawing his helpe from them.

In this rage of dangers, the surest Haue of al other counsels seemed to be, first with all his power to try the matter in Syccill, and then hauinge vanquished the Carthaginenses, to transport his victorious army into Italy. Therefoze albeit he gat the upper hande in that battell, yet notwithstanding for as much as he went his way out of Syccill, hee was accompted to run away as a vanquished person, and therfoze his allies, and confederates revolted from him. By meanes whereof he lost the kingdom as lightly, as hee came by it easily. Furthermore findinge no better successe in Italy than he had in Syccill, hee retired into E-pire. The wonderfull chaunce of both, is to bee noted for ensample. For euē as befoze through prosperous fortune, all thinges flowinge beyond his desire and expectation hee had gotten the Empire of Italy, and Syccill, with so many victories against the Romaines: so now when fortune had changed her cōp, as it were to make a show of the frailty of a man, throwinge downe the thinges she had builded, besides the losse of Syccill, she payde him home with shippe-wracke on the Sea, with a shamefull overthrow against the Romaines, and with a dishonourable departure out of Italy. After the departure of Pyrrhus out of Syccill, Hiero was created chiefe officer, who was a man of such mode-ty, that by the fauourable consent of all the cities, he was first made captaine against the Carthaginenses, and afterward king. Of this royall estate to come, his bringing by when hee was a very Babe, was as it were a foze messenger. For he was begotte of a noble man called Hieroclytus, whose prdegre was set from Gelus an auncient king of Syccill. But by his mothers side, he was borne of a base and very dishonourable stocke, for hee was begotten of a Bondwoman, & therfoze cast away by his father as a dishonour, & reproche to his house. But the Bees knowinge the little

Pirhus loseth the Kingdom of Syccill.

A notable Example of the variableness of Fortune.

Of the Education and preferment of Hiero.

little babe without helpe of man, wrought their Combes about him, and nourished him with Honny many dayes together.

Upon which occasion his father (at the warning of the Southsayers, which tolde him that the childe should bee a King) tooke the childe to him, & brought him by trsthal diligence in hope of the Estate that was befight him. As the same childe sate at his booke in the schole among other of his fellowes, sodaynly there came in a Wolfe amonge them, and snatched the booke out of his hande. Whereupon being a young man when he went first to the Marres, an Eagle came and sat vpon his Target, and an Owle vpon his Speare. The which wonder betokened that he should be aduised in counsell, and ready of hand, and also that he should be a kinge. Finally he fought hand to hand against many Chalers, and euer went away with the victory. Kinge Pyrrhus rewarded him with many Rewardes of Chivalry. Hee was of Personage excēdinge Beautifull, of Strength wonderful as might be in a man, gentle to talke onto, Just in his dealinges, and in his gouernment vpright, and indifferent so that nothinge in the worlde wanted in him apper-sayninge to a Kinge, saue on-ly a Kingdome.

* *

The

¶ The contentes of the. xxiiij. Booke.

THe Lacedemonians stirre the Greekes to rebellion, and are overcome by the Ætolian Sheepherdes, the vicked and abhominable dealinge of Ptolomy toward his sister and her children. Rome is sacked by the Frenchme, vvheteof some place theselues in Italy, & some in Pannonie: they of Pannonie rayle a povver deuiding themselves into two hostes, of vvhich the one killeth Ptolomy kinge of Macedone, and are suppressed by Sosthenes: the other vnder the conduct of Brennus inuadeth Macedone againe: ouercommeth Sosthenes, spoyleth the Realme, inuadeth the Temple of Delphos, the vtmost on vvheteof is there described, is vanquished vwith Lightninge, and thunder, and Brennus sleaeth himselfe.

Here left the
xvi. Booke.



Hyle these thinges were a doing in Sycill, in þ meane time in Grece through the dissentiõ and warres of Ptolomeus, Ceraunicus, Antiochus, and Antigonus among themselves, almost al Grece (at the instigation of the Spartanes & ringe-leaders thereof) being encouraged with hope of libertie, as if occasion had bin geuen to pull their neckes out of the yoke of bondage, sent ambassadours one to another, and knittinge themselves together, in alliance, set to rebellion. And least they might seeme to haue taken weapon in hande against Antigonus, vnder whose gouernance they were, they Assayled the Ætolians by confederates, pretending the cause of the warre to bee, for that the sayde Ætolians had entred by force vpon the field Cyrceus, which by the whole consent of Grece was consecrated to Apollo. As capitaine of this war. they chose one Aran. Who assemblinge his whole power together, spoiled the townes and foraged the coyne that was growinge in the forenamed fields: and such as they could not carry away with them, he set on fyre. Which thing the sheepherdes of the Ætolians beholdinge out of the Mountaynes

Antiochus the
Sonne of Seleucus, & Antigonus the Sonne of Demetrius.

The Greekes
rebel against
the Emper.

The Greekes
are put to flight
by the Ætolian
Sheepherdes.

nes, gathered themselves to the number of foure hundred, and set vpon their enemies as they were scattered, which knew not that they were so fewe of them, by reason that the smoke scarce together with the smoke of the fyres, had taken the sight from them, and sleainge nine thousand of them, put the residue of the foragers to flight. Afterward when the Lacedemonians renewed the warres agayne, many Cities denied them ayde, because they thought they sought the souerayntie, and not the libertie of Grece. In the meane season the warre was finished amonge the kinges. For Ptolomy hauinge expelled Antigonus, and seised the kingdome of Macedone into his hand, tooke a Truce with Antiochus, and toynded alliance wth Pyrrhus, by geuinge him his daughter in marriage. Afterward being rid of outward feare, he turned his vngodly & wicked minde to deuisinge of mischief agaynst his owne house, practysinge treason agaynst his sister Arsinoe, to the intent to depriue her Children of their lynes, and her of the possession of the City Cassandria. The first poynte of his crafty conueyance, was vnder the pretence of counterfeit loue, to desyre his sister in marriage. For otherwise then vnder coloure of concord, hee could not get her children into his handes: whose kingdome hee had wrongfully taken from them. But his sister knewe his wicked intent well ynough. Whereupon perceivinge that she trusted him not, he sent her word that he would make his children felowes in Empery wth him? Agaynst whom hee had made warre, not to take the kingdome from them, but that they myght haue it as of his free gift. For the more assurance whereof, he willed her to send some trusty friend of hers to receiue an othe of him, and he would in the presence of the party, before the Gods of his countrey bynde himselfe with what othe or curse she would desyre in all the world. Arsinoe being in doubt what to doe, (for if she sent shee knew shee shoulde bee deceyued by forswearing, and if shee sente not, shee was a praye shee shoulde proue)

Hee pursueth
the treachery
and deceipt of
Ptolomy mentioned
in the
xvi. Booke.

voke his cruel brother to rage,) and taking more care for his children then for his selfe, whom she partly hoped to save by means of this marriage, sent one of his friends called Dyon. Whom Pto'my brought into the most holy temple of Iupiter the ancientest place of religiō, and of greatest reverence in all Macedone, and there laying his hands upon the altars, and touching the very images of the Gods as they stood in their shrines, swore before him with such terrible othes, & extreme curses as neuer were heard of, that he desired his sisters marriage without any fraud, craft, or dissimulation, and that he would preclaine her Quene, not purposing to take any other wife to spite her withall, or to haue any other children then his sonnes. Arsinoc after the time she was thus fulfilled with hope, and deliuered from feare, came and communed with her brother his selfe. Whose smiling looks, & flattering countenance, pretending as much good faith as hee promised by his oth, brought him into such a foolish paradise, that he contented to marry with his brother, contrary to the minde of Pto'my his son. whomeuer told him there was falsehood in the matter. The marriage was solemnised with great sumptuousnesse, and ioye.

Pto'my married his owne sister Arsinoc.

Furthermore he summoned all his host before him, and there himselfe settinge the Crowne upon his sisters head proclaimed her Quene. Whereupon Arsinoc being ioyful, for recovering that which she had lost by the death of his first husband Lyfimachus, of his owne accord desired his husband into his City Cassandria, for courtoisnes of which City, at this Treason was wrought. She went thither before him, and proclaimed that the day of his coming should be kept holy day through all the city, geuinge commaundement that the houses, the temples, and all other places should be decked, and that altars, & sacrifices should be set forth orderly in a readinesse. Whomeuer she caused his two sons Lyfimachus of. xvi. yeares, and Philip three yeares younger than he, (both children of excellent

lent beauty, to mete hym with crownes on their beades. Whom Pto'my to cloke his deceit withall: desperately & beyond all measure of true affection embraced and kysed a great while together. But as soon as he came within the gate, he commaunded his men of war to take the hold of the towne, and to kyll the children. Who flying to their mother for helpe, were slayned in her bosome as they hong kissing about her necke. Arsinoc crying out and asked wherein she had trespassed, either in her marriage or after her marriage, that she should be delt with so cruelly, did put herselfe oft tymes betwene the sword and his children, and oftentimes embracing and covering their bodies with her body, would gladly haue receyued the wounds that they should haue. At the last being not suffered so much as to haue the burial of her children, she was thrust out of the towne with two seruantes in a tozney gowne, and her heare about her eares, and so went as a banished person to Samothrace: so much more miserable, in that she myght not be suffered to dye with her children. But Pto'my escaped not his wickednes unpunished. For within short tyme after, through the vengeance of the Goddes immortal. for so many wilfull perjuries and so many ciuill murders hee was bereft of his kyngdome by the French men, and being taken prisoner (as he most deserved) his head was stricken from his shoulders.

A Iudas kisse,

The natural affection of a mother.

Murder escaped not unpunished.

For the French menne aboundynge in multitude, (in so much that the country where they were head was not able to spede them,) sent forth the hundred thousand men as it were on pilgrimage to seek them a new dwelling place.

Of the doings of the French men.

Of whom one parte rested in Itale whiche also toke the city of Rome and burnt it. An other part following the flight of pyrites (for the French men are above all other nations conninge in boysspilling) with much slaughter of the barbarous nations, praeched vnto the coastes of Sclauonye, and rested in Pannonie. A kinde of people fierce

ferce, hardy, warly, which first after Hercules who by do-
ing & same before, purchased himselfe an immortall fame
of his prowesse, climbed ouer the high toppes and sumer-
ciful cold places of the Alpes. There hauinge subued the
Pannonians, they made war with the neighbours ma-
ny yeres together, sometime to the gaine, sometime to
their losse. Afterward being prouoked by their fortunate
success, they rased two armys, whereof the one wente to
wardes Greece, and the other to ward Macedone, putting
all to the sword that came in their daunger. By meanes
whereof the name of the french men became so terrible,
that euen kynges before they were assailed, were glad to
giue them great summes of mouye that they might liue
in rest by them. Only Ptolomy king of Macedone made
lyght of the matter, when he hard of the coming of the
frenche. And euen as it had bene as easie a matter with
him, to dispatch warre as to do mischief, being pricked
forwarde with the furious remozt of his conscience which
objected before his eyes the remembraunce of his wicked
murders, he met them with a few and those out of order.
Furthermoze he toke scoyne of the frendly offer made by
the ambassadours of Dardanie who proffered to sende
by him twenty thousand men well armed to helpe him, and
he gaue them moreouer this caunt for the labour: that
the good dayes of Macedone were far spent, if after they
had by theirowne puissance alone conquered all the East,
they should haue neede of the Dardanians to defende theirowne
country.

For he had in his host the sonnes of them that had serued
vnder great Alexander, & had subdued the whole world.
When the king of Dardanie heard thereof he sayd the fa-
mous Emperre of Macedone wold shortly decay through
the rashnes of that vnbuddled man.

The Frenchmen therfore by the aduise of thei Cap-
taine Belgius to the intent to trye howe the Macedones
were mynded, sent Ambassadors to Ptolomy, offeringe
him

him peace, if he would buy it. But Ptolomy boasted among
hys men, that the Frenchmen desired peace for feare of
him, and he no lesse haunted himselfe before the Ambas-
sadours, then he had done among hys owne frends. De-
nyinge to graunt them peace any other wyse, then if they
gaue him thei noble men for hostages, and deliuered by
thei armour and weapons, for he would not trust them
vnlesse they were disarmed. When the ambassadours had
reported this answer, the Frenchmen laughed at it, cry-
ing out on every side that he should shortly feele whether
they offered him peace to hys owne behofe or to thei.
Within few dayes after, the matter came to handstrokes,
and the Macedones being vanquished were slayne ryght
down. Ptolomy being very sore wounded in diuers places,
was taken prysoner and his head stricken off, whiche being
put vpon a speares pointe, was carryed vp and downe all
the host, to the terror of thei enemies. Few of the Ma-
cedones escaped by flight, the rest were either slayne or
taken prysoners. The newes hereof was spied through
Macedone, they shut in the gates of their Cities, and all
was full of sorrow and mourning. One while they bewail-
ed the losse of thei sonnes, another while they feared
besieging of thei cities. At another tyme they called vpon
the names of Philip and Alexander thei kynges for
helpe, as if they had bin Goddes, callinge in their minds,
how vnder them they had not onely lyued in safetie, but
as conquerors of the whole world. Beseeching the to de-
fend thei Country, which through the renowne of thei
chualtrie they hadde aduanced to the skye, and to helpe
them now in thei aduersitie, whom the wyllfull rage
and rashnes of Ptolomye, thei kynges had welnye de-
stroyed. While all Men stood thus in despayre, Sosthe-
nes one of the Prynces of Macedone, perceiving it a-
uailed not to trust to prayer onely, rased a number of
lustie yonge men, and both asuaged the courages of the
frenche Men then in their rage for thei late victorie

The very ly
punishment
of Ptolomy.

The forewarn-
ing of Mac-
dome.

Sosthenes sup-
posed the
Frenchmen.

and

The folieth
hardines of Pto-
lomy.

and also defended Macedone from destroyinge by the enemy.

In recompence of which his valiaunt dede, wheras many noble men lued to haue the kingdom of Macedone, he beinge no noble man borne, was preferred before them all. And at such time as his wife of war proclaimed him king, he compelled them to sweare to him, not by the name of kyng, but by the name of captayne.

The modesty
of Solthenes.

The French
men made
Macedone a-
gaine,

In the meane season Brennus captaine of that portion of the Frenchmen that bente them selues into Greece, hearinge of the victorie of his countrype Men, which had vanquished the Macedones vnder the conducte of Belgius & fearinge for anger that so fat a body, & so laden wth the spoyles of the East was so lightlye forgone after they had gotten the upper hand, rapted an host of a hundred and fifty thousand footemen, and fiftene thousand horsemen, and invaded Macedone again. When Solthenes saw how they wasted the countrype and the villages, hee met them wth his host of Macedones well appoynted and in good order of battell. But by reason they were fewe and their ennemys many, they half discouraged, & the other strong and lusty they were sone put to the worst.

Wherefore while the Macedones beinge beaten, kept them selues within the walles of their cities, Brennus lyke a conqueror, against whom no man durst shew his head to make resistance, wasted all the Countrype of Macedone. From whence, as though those cities seemed to base and simple in his eye, he turned his mind to the temples of the Gods immortal, malapertly scoffing that the gods were rich, & ought to depart liberally to men. Therupon immediatly he toke his iourney toward Delphos, settinge more by the gain of the gold that had bin offered to the Gods, then by their displeasure: who he affirmed to haue no need of Ryche, as they that are wont to bestow them vpon men. The temple of Apollo at Delphos, is situate on the mount Parnasus, by of a cliffe on euery side stepe downe. There the confluence

The malapert
scoffing of
Brennus.

of men (which vpon trust of the maiesty of that God resorting thither from diuers places, builded them houses in that rocke) hath made a populous city. And mouer both the temple and the towne are enclosed, not with walles, but with the steepnesse of the rocke: neyther are they defended with fortifications made by mans hand, but with fortifications growen by nature. So that there is no man in the world able to say, whether the strength of the place, or the maiesty of the God be more to be wondered at. The middle part of the rocke inward is in fashion lyke a Theatre. By meanes whereof when Men make anye shoutyng or hallowing, or when any trumpet is blowen, the sound beateth and reboundeth in such wise vpon the stones from one to another, that the Echo is hard double and treble, and the noyse resoundeth far louder and greater then it went forth. Whiche thing causeth the simple and ignorant folke to stand in more feare, & thankynge it to be the presence of the godhead, and oftentimes maketh them to stand wonderynge at it, as if they were distraught. In this winding of the rocke, almoste midway to the top of the hill, there is a spytle playn, and in the same a deepe hole into the ground, which serueth to geue Oracle. Out of this hole a certayne colde breath, driven by as it were in a certayne winde, ascendyng upward, stirreth the minoes of the Prophetes into a madnesse, and so hauinge filled them with the spirit of the God, compelleth them to geue answer to suche as come for counsell. In the same place therfore there are to be seene many and rich giftes of kynges and people, whiche by their cost and sumptuousnesse, doe well declare the thankfulnessse of suche as receiued answers, in performinge of their vowes. Wherefore when Brennus came within the viewe of the temple, he was in doubt a greate while, whether he were better to attempte the matter forthwith, or to geue his soldiers that nightes respite to rest them and gather theyr strength to them. Euridianus and Thessalonus, who for

The situation
of the temple
of Delphos.

The descrip-
tion of the
place where
the Oracles
are geuen.

D. i.

con-

The counsell
of Eurildanus
and Thelidlo-
nus.

courteousnesse of praye, had toynd them selues with hym
willed to cutte off all belaye, while theyr enemyes were
bappoynded, and no doubt but their sobain aprouch shoulde
be a great terror vnto them. Where as by giuing them
that nightes respite, theyr enemyes shoulde perchance
gerte both courage and succour, and the wayes that now
laye open myghte be stopped by. But the common sould-
diers of the frenchmen, who after long penyurp had found
a countrey replenished with wyne and all other kynde of
victualles, beyng as gladd and ioyfull of the aboundance
as of a victorie, dispersed them selues in the fieldes, and
leaving theyr standerds ran abrood, making haucke of all
thynges like conquerours, whiche thyng was a meane
that the Delphians hadde respite to laye for themselves.
For at suche time as it was firste reported that the fren-
chemen were comminge thither, the husband men were
prohibited by the Greke Oracles, to conuey their corne
and wines out of the villages. The wholsome meanynge
of whiche commaundement was not vnderstanded, bee-
fore that by reason of the aboundance of wine and other
victualles, whiche was as a stop in the frenchmens
wayes, the succoures of theyr Neighboures hadde le-
sure to resorte thither together. The Delphians therfore
had strengthened the towne by the helpe of theyr neygh-
bours, or euer the frenchmen, (who were as greedy of
the wine as of a boote), coulde be called from the Wine
faste to theyr standerds. Brenne had thre skore and five
thousande chosen souldiers of the best in all his hoste,
whereas the Delphians and their ayders were in all but
four thousande fightyng Men. In oisoune of whiche
small handfull, Brenne the intent to sharpen the mindes
of his men, shewed them what a ryche and plentyfull
praye they shoulde haue, assuring that the Images with
the chariottes, (whereof they might beholde great store a
farre off), were all of Massyng goulde, wherfore the body wold
be better in the hand, than it seemed to the eye. The french-
men

The Oracle
before the
frenchmen.

men beyng by his bouching of chey captayne, or rather
by their owne beholding styred by, and also wounded
with the wyne they had poured in the day before, with-
out respect of any danger, ran headlong to the encounter.
On the contrary part the Delphians putting more truste
in God then in their owne strength, resisted their ene-
myes euen with a contempt: and what with stones, and
what with their weapons, theyr french men as they
skaled headlong from the top of the mountayne. While
ther two parties were thus stryuinge one with another so
dearly the priestes of all the temples and the prophets, the
selues also, with their haire about theyr eares and the re-
liques in their handes, and their miters on their heads
like men straught and out of their wits came runninge
forth & pressed in to the forefront of the battell, crying out
that god was come among theym, and that they had sene
him leape downe into the temple at the open rose toppe,
Moreouer whyle they were all making theyr humble sup-
plications to God for ayde, they sayde they met a younge
man of beauty and personage far excellling any mortall
creature, & in his company with him 2. virgins in armor,
whiche came vnto him out of the 2. temples of Diana and
Minerua. Whiche thinge they not onely hadde perfectlye
sene with theyr eyes, but also moreouer haue hearde the
clatterynge of their harnesse and the sound of theyr bowes
therfore they hartely besought that seing goddes
themselves did guard their standerds they shoulde not stick
to dispatch theyr enemyes and to ioyne theymselfes as
partakers with the Goddes of the victorie.
With which wordes beyng greatly encouraged they pre-
sed forth who might be for most in the fighte. And there
withal they by and by perceiued that god was present on
theyr syde. For both a piece of the mountayne beyng bro-
ken off by a sodayne earth quake ouerwhelmed the french
hoste, and the thickest of theyr enemyes not withoute
great slaughter were slayned and put to flight.

The frenche
men assault the
city of Del-
phos.

The frenche
men put to the
repuls & op-
pressed with
lightning and
thunder

Brennus kill-
eth himself.

The miserable
deuotion of
the Frenchme
out of Grece,
and the v
distriction of
them.

In the necke wherof there ensued a tempeste, with halle,
thunder, and lightninge whiche consumed as manie as
were any thing soe wounded, The captain Brenne being
not able to hyde the smart of his woundes, tooke a sword
and kiled himselfe. Another of the Captaynes when he
saw how greuously chaunces of the war had ben punished
depicted in hest with r. H. of his retinue out of Grece.
For they were so afrayd that they durst neuer lye a night
in any house, neyther passed they any day without leoper-
ny. Moreover continual rayne, frost and snow, hunger &
and wearynes, and therunto continuall watchinge worse
than al the rest, consumed and broughte to nothings the
wretched remnant of this vnfortunate war. The people
also and the nations through which they travelled follo-
wed them as a pray, as they scattered abroade.
Whereby it came to passe, that of that so huge army whiche
lately before upon trust of their own strength did despise
euen the verie Goddes there was not so much as
one manne left that myght save here
after he hadde bene at that
slaughter and es-
caped.

The Contentes of the. xxv. Booke.

THe Frenchemen of Pannony raise an other pouer and in-
uade Macedone, Antigonus ouercommeth them by a pollicy
the Frenchmen are so redoubted, that all Kings craue their
aide, they succour the kyng of Byrhinia, and deuyde his real-
me with him, calling them selues Frenche Greekes. Pirrus ex-
celleth Antigonus oute of Macedone, hee maketh vvarre againe the
Lacedemonians, the force and hardines of Ptolomy his sonne, who
is slaine in the vwinning of Lacedemon, Pirrus is slaine at Argoe, the
moderation and gentlenes of Antigonus, with a commendacion of
the sayd Pirrus.



Face being estalished between y^e ii.
kings Antigonus & Antiochus, as soon as
Antigonus returned into Macedone soon-
ly there arose a new enemy againste hym,
For the Frenchmen whom Brenne at vps
setting forth into Grece, had left at home for the defence
of his country, to the intent they only would not seeme to
lytte at home like cowards, armed fittene thousand foot-
men, and thre thousand horse men, and hauing chased the
hostes of the Getes & Tribols, when they approached neare
vnto Macedone, sent ambassadoers to the kyng, partlye to
offer him peace to sale, and partlye to viewe the order and
demeanor of his camp. Whom Antigonus lyke a royall
prince, invited the same nyght to a sumptuous Banquet.
But the frenchmen wondering at the great plenty of plate
both of gold and siluer that was set before them, & there
withall being allured with the richnesse of the praye, re-
turned more his Enemies than they came to him.
Furthermore the king to the intent to put them in feare,
as at the sight of so vgly shapen wherewith the barbarous
people war not acquainted, commaunded his men to shewe
them his Elephants, and his ships laden with victuall &
artillery, not knowing that they, whom by aduancing &
setting forth his power & richesse he wold haue discoura-
ged, were thereby the rather encouraged as to a fat booty.

Here follow-
eth the storye
mentioned in
the begining
of the late
booke.

The french
men inuade
Macedone the
third tyme.

Qui.

The

The ambassadours therefore when they came agayne to the company, yd set out al thynge to the uttermost, & declaring both the kynges richesse and his negligence, how hys camp was stuffed with gold and silver, and neyther fortified with ditch nor trench, & that euen as though their richesse were a sufficient defence for them, they kept neither watch nor ward, nor any other warlike order, as if they had no nede at all of helpe of the sword, because they wallowed in gold. This report was enough to stir up the mindes of the covetous frenchmen to the pray. Besides that they tooke example at Belgus, who not longe time before, had slain the host of Macedone and the kyng also. Therefore with one assent they assailed the kyngs Campe in the night: who foreseeing the mischiefe that was like to ensue, had geuen his men warnyng the day before, to cōuey away all their stuffe, and to hyde them couertly in the woode by. For there was none other meane for them to saue the camp, but only by forsaking it. For when the frenchmen found all thinges boio, and not onely without defenders, but also without keepers: mistrusting that they were not fled, but rather that they kept themselves close for some pollicy they durst not a good while enter in at the gates. At the last leaping all the fortifications whole and vntouched, they entered the campe rather searching then rifling. And when they had taken such as they found they turned themselves to the sea side. There as they fel rashly to rifling of the shippes, the watermen and parte of the army that were fled thither with theyr wyues & children, sodainly fel vpon them and slue them or they feared any such matter. And there was made such a slaughter of the Frenchmen, that the same of this victoie purchased Antigonus peace, not onely of the Frenchmen, but also of the fierce and sauage people that bordered one hys kingdome. How be it the Frenchmen multiplied so soze at that time that they spread ouer Asia as it hadde bin a swarme of Bees. In so much that the Kinges of the East made

Antigonus pollicy to saue himselfe and hys.

A slaughter of the Frenchmen.

made not any warres, but they hired the French men to serue them, and if they were put from their kyngdomes, they reioiced not to any other then the french menne for helpe. So soze was the name of the frenchmen redouted, or rather they had continually so prosperous successe in theyr warres, that the kynges thought themselves not able to maintaine theyr estate or to recouer it, beyng ones last without the prowesse and aide of the french men. Therefore beyng called to the helpe of the kyng of Bythynia after they hadde gotten the victoie they departed his kyngdome with him and named the countrey French grace. Whyle these thinges wer a doing in Asia in the meane season Pyrrhus beyng vanquished in Sicily by the Carthaginenses in a battell on the sea, sent his ambassadours to Antigonus kyng of Macedone for a supply of souldiours sending him word, that if he sent theym not hee shoulde be constrained to receyue into his kingdome and to see to make the conquest vppon him whiche hee was about to make vppon the Romaynes. When hys Ambassadours brought him word he shoulde none haue, he sayned an excuse and sodainly departed from thence. Willing his confederates to lape for the warres in the meane season: and hee becoke the keepyng of the castell of Tarent to his sone Heleu, and his frend Milo. Althow as he was returned in to Epire sooth with he inuaded the borders of Macedone wher Antigonus met with an host of men and beyng put to the woofle was fayne to flee. And so all Macedone felde vnto Pyrrhus.

Wher vpon as if he had recompensed his losse of Sicily & Italy with the gaine of Macedone, hee sente for his son Heleu & his frend Milo, & he had left at Tarent. Antigonus who was fled w a few of his horsemen, beyng sodainly bereft of all thornamentes of fortone to content to marke what wold become of his kingdome & he had lost, conceyved him selfe into the city of Thessalonica, that if occasion serued, he myght hire the french souldiours and renue the war scence

The greates create of the frenchmen and their redouted prowesse.

The originall of the frenchmen in Asia the letic.

Like the xxiiij booke.

Pyrrhus conquereth Macedone.

Antigonus is
vanquished a-
gain.

The doing of
Pyrrhus.

thence. But being betterly vanquished again by Pto-
my the sonne of kynge Pyrrhus and escaping with no more but
vnelye 7. of his retinue, he neuer hoped to recouer his
kingdome, but sought caues and wildernesses wher to
saue his lyfe. Pyrrhus therfore beyng enstalled in siege
ropall of so greate a kingdome, and not contente to haue
attayned to that that he could scarcely haue wished for, be-
gan to pryce how to win the empire of Greece and Asia.
Nether tooke he any more pleasure of his Emperre the
of his warres, nether was there any man able to with-
stand the force of Pyrrhus whom he assayed. But as hee
had no pier in conquerig of kingdomes, so did he as light-
ly forgoe them when he had gotten them. So much was
he of better skill to win kingdomes then to kepe them.
Therfore when he had transpored his armye ouer from
Cheronefus, ther receiued him the ambassadoys of the Athe-
niens, the Achians, and the Messenians. Yea and al the
Grekes (for the renown of his name, and for that they were
astonied at his noble dedes agaynst the Romans & Car-
thaginenses) awaited his coming there. The first war
that he had was with the Lacedemonians, where he was
receiued in greater halowntes of the women, then of
the men, there he lost his sonne Ptolomy, and the stron-
ger part of all his armye. For when he assailed the towne
such a sort of women came running to the defence of the
citty that he was not more valiantly vanquished, then
shamefully driuen to retire. Furthermore his sonne Pto-
my is reported to haue bene so coragious and so stout a
man of his handes that with lx. men he took the citty Cor-
cira by force. And also in a battell upon the sea he leyt out
of a cocke hate with seven of his men into a galley & won it.
And last of all chassault of Sparta, he brake with his horse
into the middes of the citty and there was overpressed
with the number of his enemies and slayne. Whose
body whē it was brought to his father Pyrrhus, he is re-
ported he should say that he was slayne somewhat latter
then

then he loked for, or then his owne foolish hardnesse de-
serued. Pyrrhus whē he had taken the repulse at Sparta,
went to Argos. The whyles he endeuored to get Antigo-
nus into his handes, whom he had besieged in the Citty,
as he fought most valiantly amonge the thickest, he was
slayne with a stone throwen from the wall. His head was
cut of and brought to Antigonus who vsing the victorie
gently sent home his sonne. Helen with his Epyrotes
which were yelded vnto him, into his Kingdome with-
out ransome, and deliuered his fathers booke that laye
vnduried to carie home with him into his country. It is
a constant reporte amongest all authours, that there was
not any kynge eyther in those dayes or in the later times
before, worthy to be compared vnto Pyrrhus, and yet it was
a harde matter to find any not onely among kinges, but
also among other famous men either of more help liuing
or of more approued iustice, And as for knowledg in Che-
ualry and states of armes, there was so much in him, that
wheras he had continuall wars with Lysimachus, De-
metrius and Antigonus kinges of so greate power and
puissance, yet was he neuer overcome by any of theim,
neither was he euer brought to so lowe an ebbe, but that
he was able to match the Illirians, Sciciliāns, Romans &
Carthaginenses at all times, yea and sometymes to get the
upper hand of them. By meanes whereof, throughe the
same of his noble actes, and the renoune of his
name he made his country famous and re-
noumed ouer all the world beyng
of it selfe before that tyme
both small and of no
reputation.

THe extreame cruelty of Aristotimus Tyrant of Epyre, the vyse inuention of olde Helematus in suppressing of him, the cruelnes of the French grekes towardes thier Wyues and children, vvhich Antigonus ouercometh and vterly destroyeth, Antigonus inhereth both of his kyngdome and men of war by Alexander the sonne of Pirrhus king of Epyre. Demetrius the sonne of Antigonus not only recouereth his fathers kyngdome, but also spowleth Alexander of his kyngdome of Epyre. Alexander by the helpe of the Archadians & the fauour of his owne countrymen is restored to his kyngdome again. Agas king of Cyrene dieth, Demetrius the Brother of Antigonus by meanes of Beronice the daughter of king Agas is slayn in her mothers bedde.



*A*fter the death of Pirrhus, there arose very great & trouble some war, not onely in Macedone, but also in Asia & Grece. For both y Peloponnesias wer betrayed vnto Antigonus & according as menne were either in feare or gladness, lyke as euery city

hoped for succor of Pirrhus hand, or stood in dread of him, eue in like case epyther they entered in a league wth Antigonus or els vpon malice fel together by the eares amonge themselves. In the time that theyr provinces wer in this turmoyle, Aristotimus a noble man of the Realme, toke perforce the chiefe city of the Epyrotes and made himself king, who after that he had put many of the chief men to death and, vpon mo of them into exile, when as the Actolians requierd by theyr Ambassadors, y he should restore vnto the banished men theyr wyues, as though he had repented him, hee gaue all the Ladies and gentlewomen leaue to goe to theire Husbannes, and appoynted a daye when they should take their iourney. The Ladies as they that thought to liue all theyr lyues in exile with their husbannes, tooke all the preciousst iewels and best thinges that they had with them. But asone as they were all come

The cruelraign
of the Tyrante
Aristodemus.

Come to the gate, of purpose to goe in one companye together, bespoyled them of all that euer they had, slue the little children in theyr mothers bosomes, theyr we the Mothers them selues into prison, and rauyned the Maidens, All men beyng amazed at this bys cruell Tyranny, a Noble man of the Realme named Helemate, beinge an olde man and without children, as one that in respect of bys yeares, and in that he was childlesse was voyde of all feare, called home to his house certain of bys most trusty frendes, and crypted them to the deliuerance of theyr countrye from bondage. When he perceyued that they stucke to put them selues in daunger for the sauegar of the whole Realme, and that they demaunded leysure to take aduysment in the matter, he called his seruantes to hym, commaunding them to locke in the doores, and to beare worde to the Tyrant, that he shoulde sende immediately to his house to apprehend traitours that had conspired against him, threatening vnto each of them, that seeing he could not bee the authoz of deliuerance of his country he woulde at leastwyle finde the meanes to bee reuenged vpon them for withstandinge their helpe from it. Then beinge ouercome wth the doubtfull daunger they chose the honestest waye of bothe and sware the Death of the Tyrant. And so Aristotimus was dispatched the fift moneth after he had vsurped the Kingdome. In the meane season Antigonus beyng wrapped in many warres at once, both of kynge Ptolomy, and the Spartanes, besides the hoste of the French Grekes, whyche newlye became his enemies, left a fewe souldiours in bys campe for a shewe againste the other two, and went himself wth his whole power agaynst the Frenchmen. The Frenchmen hearinge therof, made them selues ready to the batell, and slue sacrifi for the obtaining of good successe in that encounter. By the inwarde of whyche beastes perceining that there was toward them a greate slaughter, and the bitter destruction of them all, they were there

The prudent
censure of He-
lemate in sup-
pressing the
Tyrant.

The politike
celency of An-
tigonus in sup-
pressing his
enemies.

The furious
cruelty of the
frenchmen
towards their
ovne viues
and Children.

there vpon turned not into feare, but into madnesse. For in hope to pacifie the wrath of the Gods, by the bloodshed of their owne people, they killed their wiues & Children, beginning to perforce (through their owne slaughter,) the euil lucke that was manacred them by the Warres. So extreme madnesse was entred into their cruel hartes, that they spared not the ponge children whom euen the enemy would haue spared, but that they made cutthroate warre with theyr children, and the Mothers of them, in defence of whom men are wont to make warres. There fore as though they hadde by theyr unspeakable wickednesse, purchased them selues both life and victorie, bloudy as they were after the freshe slaughter of theyr wiues, & children, they proceeded into battell with as good successe as fore token.

The greates
slaughter of
the Frenchmen

For as they were fighting, the remorse of theyr owne consciences for theyr unspeakable slaughter, (the ghastes of the that they had murdered wauiing before theyr eyes) first and foremost discouraged them ere they were oppressed by the enemy, and so they were slaine euery mothers child. There was made so great a slaughter, that it should seme the Goddes had conspired with Men, to the better destruction of those murderers. After the fortunat chance of this battell, Ptolomy and the Spartanes eschuinge the victorious army of their enemy Antigonus, retired into places of defence. Antigonus when he saw they were retired, while his men were yet fresh and couragious by reason of their late victory, made war to the Atheniens. Now whiles he was occupied in the same, in the meane tyme Alexander kyng of Epyre, coueting to reuenge the death of his father king Pirrhus, invaded the borders of Macedone. Against whom when Antigonus was returned out of Greece, all his souldiours revolted from him, and so he lost both the kingdome of Macedone and his army. His sonne Demetrius being a very child, leaping a power in the absence of his father, not onely recovered Macedone

The wonder-
ful ticklenesse
of fortune.

that

that his father had lost: but also herest Alexander of his kyngdome of Epyre. So great was either the businesse of the souldiours, or els the variableness of fortune, & kynges by course were euen now banished men, and anon kinges agayne. Alexander therfore being fled to the Arcadians, was as well by the sauoure of the Epirotes, as by the helpe of his confederates, restored into his kingdome agayne. About the same tyme deceased Agas kyng of Cyrene who before his last infirmity, to the intent to ease all strife w his brother Ptolamy, betrothed his onely daughter Beronice to his son, but after the death of king Agas Arsinoe the mother of the mayde, to the intent to breake the marriage & was contract against his will, sent for Demetrius the brother of king Antigonus out of Macedone, to take vpon him the marriage of the mayde and the kyngdome of Cyrene who also was begotten of one of Ptolomys daughters, Demetrius made no tarfaunce. Therfore when through prosperous wynd he was speedely arriued at Cyrene vpon trust of his beauty, for which his mother in law began to like so wel of him, by and by after his coming he bare himselfe very proudly in the court & against the men of war, and he cast his desire of lpyng, from the daughter to the mother. Which thing being espyed was ill taken, first of the mayde and also of the common people and of the greates number of the souldiours. Ther vpon all mens myndes were turned to the sonne of Ptolomy & the death of Demetrius was conspired. For as he was in bed with his mother in law, men were sente in to kill hym. But Arsinoe (when she heard the voice of her daughter standing at the chamber doore, and geuing the charge to spare her mother, conered and defended her peramoure a while with her owne body, where the lesse he was slayne, and so Beronice with safety of her naturall loue and duty,

Read more of
the storye
of this in the
next booke

A listing of
Cyrene.

Adultery re-
uenged.

did both reuenge the dishonourable adultry committed with her mother & also followed the determination of his father, in takynge of his husband.

The contents of the xxvij. booke

Seleucus kyng of Syrea putteth his stepmother Beronice, and his sone to death. Ptolomy King of Egypt inuengener of hir death inuadeth Syria, Seleucus suffereth a happy shipwracke, for by meanes therof the cities that Ptolomy had obtayned reuolt again he is vanquished in battell by Ptolomy, and desireth ayd of his brother Antiochus. Ptolomy maketh peace with Seleucus. Antiochus vvarreth vpon his brother, & ouercometh him by the help of the Grekes, vwho after the bartell bend themselves agaynst Antiochus, and he raunsometh himselfe from the. Et menec king of Bythinia setteth vpon Antiochus and the Frenchmen and taketh the most parte of Asia from them. The Brothers continue still at debate, by meanes whereof they come both to a miserable ende.



An example
of womanly
malice.

Beronice is be-
sieged, and by
death taken
and put to
death.

*A*fter the decease of Antiochus kyng of Syrea his sonne Seleucus succeedynge in his counie (by the instigation of his mother Laodice which ought to haue withheld him from doing any such thing.) began his raygne with murder. For he put to death his mother in law Beronice & sister of Ptolomy kyng of Egypte, with his little brother begotten vpon her. By which wickednesse he both brought himselfe in a foule staunder, and also entangled himselfe in the wars of Ptolomy. Further more when Beronice vnderstode that men were sente to kill her, she kept herselfe close in a pleasant maner of his fathers called Daphne. When the cities of Asia heard of her and her little sonne were there besieged in remembrance of the dignity of hir father and of hir ancestors, and for pittie to see her so vnworthely entreated, they set vpon hir. Hir brother Ptolomy also beinge oppressed with the perill of his sister lest his owne kyngdome and came in all haste to her rescue, with all the power hee was able to make. But Beronice before her rescows cam at hir, wher as she could not be taken by force, was surpyled by pol-

lice and put to death. It seemed a cruell and horrible acte to all men. Therefore all the cities that had risen, made a great nauy, and sodainly as well for feare of his exressiue cruelty as also to reuenge the Death of hir whom they purposed to haue defended, yelded themselves to Ptolomy. The doubtlesse had subdured al the kingdom of Seleucus, if he hadde not bin driven to retyre home to suppress an insurrection in Egypt. So great hatred did that abhominable murdering of his mother in lawe and his brother purchase the one party, and the vnworthy death of his sister so cruelly killed, purchase fauour to the other party. After the departure of Ptolomy, Seleucus hauing gathered together a great flecte against the cities that had reuolted, sodainly (as it were by vengeance of the Gods for his horrible murder) by meanes of a great tempest, loste all his Nauy by shipwracke. And of al that great furniture for the warres, fortune left him not any thing at al, more then his naked bodye and his life, and a few companions eskapinge with him from shipwracke. It was surely a miserable case, but yet such a one as Seleucus could not haue wished the lyke for his owne behse. For the cities whiche for hatred that they bare towards him had reuolted vnto Ptolomy, as though they had ben satisfied with the punishment that the Goddes as indifferent iudges hadde layd vpon hym, through a sodaine mutation of their mindes, being moued to pittie him by reason of his shipwracke, submitted them selues vnder his domination again. Wherevpon reioysinge in his happy aduancement, and being made ryche by his losses, as one now able to match him in power and strength, hee made warre againste Ptolomye. But as if he hadde bin borne for none other purpose, but for fortune to make his laughing stocke of hym, or as if he hadde recovered so grea wealth of the kingdom, for none other entent then to lose them againe, he was vanquished in battell, and eskapinge from the field, not much better accompanied then after

The cities of
Asia reuolt
from Seleu-
cus.

The fortunate
mischaunce of
Seleucus.

Seleucus is
vanquished
by Ptolomy,
kyng of Egypt.

his shipwreck, fearfully conveyed himself into Antioche. From thence he directed letters to his brother Antiochus wherein he besought him of his help, offering him in recompence of his pains, all Asia that was within the precinct of the mountaine Taurus. Antiochus being of the age of xlii. yeres, but yet covetous of dominion about his yeres took occasion ere it came to the ground, not with so friendly hart as it was offered. For the hope covetynge lyke a theefe to bereave his brother of all his whole kyngdome, was as bolde in executynge his wyckednesse, as if he had bin a man. Whereupon he was surnamed Hierax, because he spent his life in takynge other mennes goodes away wrongfully, not after the manner of a man, but after the maner of a Gollshauke. In the meane tyme Ptolomy hearing that Antiochus came to rescue Seleucus to thentent he would not have warre with two at once toke a truce with Seleucus for x. yeres. But the peace that was geuen by his enemye, was broken by his brother. Who hiring an hoste of the french souldiours, in stead of helpe brought warre, and in stead of a brother, shewed himself an enemy. In that battell through the puissance of x. french men Antiochus gate the upper hand. But the frenchmen supposynge that Seleucus had bin slaine in the battell turned their weapons against Antiochus in booke to waste the cuntry of Asia the more freely without feare or checke if they mighte utterly destroye the Bloud Royal. Which thing when Antiochus perceiued, hee was faine to ransome himselfe for Honey, as if it hadde bin from robbers and entered in league of society with his hired souldiers. In the meane season Eumenes kinge of Bythinia, perceiuing the brothers, to be consumed and dispersed through inwarde discorde among themselves, intended to invade the wonderinge possession of Asia and assapling the conqueror Antiochus & his frenchmen, whom by reason that they were yett sore and weary of their late conflict, & bys shew stronge and lusty, hee easelye putte to the worke.

The wicked
and ambitious
cur mind of
Antiochus.

A truce be-
twene Seleu-
cus and Pto-
lomy.

warre be-
twene Seleu-
cus and his
brother An-
tiochus.

Antiochus
vntiquished
by Eumenes
king of By-
thinia

For at that time at the warres that were made, tended euer to the destruction of Asia, every man that could make himselfe strongest, setting upon Asia as his pray. The ii. brothers Seleucus and Antiochus made war in Asia. Ptolomy king of Egypt, vnder pretence of reuenging his sisters death, gaped for Asia. On the one side Eumenes, kinge of Bythinia, & on the other side the frenchmen the common lycelynges, wasted Asia. But amonge so many robbers, there was none to be found that woulde once set in his fote to defend Asia. Albeit that Antiochus was vntiquished, and that Eumenes had seised into his hands the most parte of Asia, yet could not the brothers agree, when that the pray was lost, for whiche they liued so sore but leauynge the forrain enemy, they renewed the war one to destroy another. In which Antiochus being againe vntiquished, and wearye, with slaying manye daies together, at length came to his father in lawe Artamenes kyng of Cappadocia. Of whom at the first he was gently entertained. But within a few dayes after, vnderstanding that he went to entrap him, for the safeguard of his life, he fled againe from thence. Therfore when he saw he could rest in safety in no place, he was faine to resorie for succoure to his enemy Ptolomy. whose faith he thought to be more steadfast then his brothers, consideringe either what hee would haue don to his brother, or what he had deserued at his brothers hand. But Ptolomy being by this his submission, made not so much his friend as his enemy, commaunded him to be kept in strait prison. From thence also Antiochus escaped by the helpe of a barlot with whō he had familiare company. But when he was escaped vnto his keepers, as he fled, they met with him & killed him. Seleucus welne about the same time iustat, hauing lost his kingdom, set of his horse and brake his neck. So both the brothers, as it wer by like misfortune, like outlawes, after the losse of their kingdomes, suffered due punishment for their vngacious doings.

Asia the com-
mon praye of
kynges.

Antiochus
is overcome
of Seleucus.

Antiochus is
slain by
theeues.

Seleucus bea-
eth his necke.

The contentes of the xxviii. booke

Olympias Queene of Epire by the marriage of hir Daughter Pythia, letteth variaunce betwene Demetrius king of Macedone, and Antiochus king of Syria. The proude answer of the Aetolians to the Ambassadors of Rome. Olympias dyeth for sorow for the death of hir yve Sonnes Laodamia slain at the Altar of Diana. Demetrius dieth. Antigonus beinge lesse protector of the sonnes of Demetrius maketh himselfe king, and subdueth the Lacedemonians, wherein appeareth as well the stoutnes of the Spartanes in aduersity, as also the modesty and gentle behaviour of Antigonus in prosperity.

Here left the history of Epire in the xxvi. Booke



Lympias the daughter of Pyrrhus king of the Epyrotes, hauing left hir husbnde Alexander, which was also her own brother when she had taken vpon hir the byrning byrpe of Pyrrhus and Ptolomy the sonnes whom he had begotten by hir, and the gouernment of the Realme: was compelled by the Aetolians, (which went about to take from hir, a part of Acarnania, which shee being mother and protector of the children, had receiued to helpe: to maintaine the warres withall,) to resort for succour to Demetrius king of Macedone vnto whom hauinge a wife alreadye the siller of Antiochus king of Syria, she gaue hir daughter Pythia in marriage, to the entent she might get y help at his hand by right of affinity, which she could not get for pity and compassion. The marriage therefore was solemnised, wherby the new wedded wyfe fel in great fauoure, and the old wife in displeasure. For the first wife as though shee had bin deuised of her owne accord, departed to hir brother Antiochus, and prouoked him to warre vpon her husbnde. The Acarninians also distrusting the Epyrotes, and thereby requirynge helpe of the Romaines, obtained of the Senate

He was the fount of Antigonus expelled by Pyrrhus.

Senate of Rome, that ambassadours were sente to command the Aetolians to withdraw their Garrisons from the Citties of Acarnania, and to suffer them to liue out of bondage, who al only in old tyme sent no helpe to the Grekes against the Troyans their first founders. But the Aetolians hard the ambassadours of the Romaines verpe disdainfully: casting the in the tere with the Carthaginenses and the Frenchmen, by whom they had bene so afflicted in so manie battels, and so oftentimes vterlye slayne, saying it was meete for them firste to open their gates agaynst the Carthaginenses whiche they had out by force of the wars of Affricke, ere they toke vpon them to make wars in Grece. Forouer they had the remembrance whom they manased, for they were not able to defende their owne City agaynst the Frenchmenne, but when it was taken they were fayne to reueine it wth monye, and not to recouer it by the sworde. The whiche nation enterpyng into Grece with another maner of hoste, they themselves had not onely without the ayde of anye other forrayne power, but also not so muche as helpe with their owne bowes, vterlye destroyed and made their realme a place for their burial which they had determined to make the seate of their kyngdome. Whereas on the contrary part Italse. (the Romaines yet still trembling for feare of the late burninge of their cytye) was welnye whollye subdued by the Frenchmen. Wherefore it was mete for them first to dyue the Frenchmen out of Italse, ere they presumed to manase the Aetolians, and first to defende their owne, ere they tooke in hand to defende other mennes. And what manner of menne were the Romaines? In good sayth no better but a sort of ragged shepheardes that wrongfully byld a peece of grounde taken from the righte owners by robbery, whiche being not able to get them wyues for the dishonour of their beginning, were fayne to rauish them by open force (as to be seene) which had induced their cytye to most cruel and naturall

The answer of the Aetolians to the Ambassadors of Rome.

naturall murder and bestayned the foundations of thepy
walles w brothers bloude. But the Actolians wer euer
the prynces of Grece, and like as they passed al chocher
in estate and worthynes, so they excelled them in prowesse
and actiue, and were the men alone which had euer des-
pised the Macedones flourishing in the Emperre of all the
whole worlde which feared not that king Philip, whiche
disdayned to obey the lawes of Alexander the great, after
hee had subdued the Persians and Indians, when all other
men did most feare & dread his name. Wherefore they coun-
selled the Romaynes to holde theirownes contente with
their present state, and not to prouoke those weapons a-
gainst them through which they saw both the Frenchme
slayne, and also the Macedones despised. When they had
in this wise dismissed the Romayne Ambassadors, to
the entent they would not seeme to haue bene more bold
in wordes then they would be in dede: they foraged
all the borders of the kyngdome of Acarnania. By this
tyme had Olympias deliuered the kyngdome to hir sonnes,
and in steede of his brother Pyrrhus deceased, Ptolomy
succeeded in his whole kyngdome. Altho gainge with an
host of men well furnished agaynst his enemies. was
by the way taken with a disease and dyed. Olympias al-
so ere it was long tyme after, beinge wounded with so-
row for the death of hir two sonnes, scarce able to drawe
her paynfull breath, liued a small while after hir chyl-
dren.

There remayneth of the bloud to all no moe but onely a
yong mayde called Nereis and hir sister Laodamia.
Nereis was married vnto Gelo sonne of the king of Sicill.
And Laodamia flying for her sauegarde vnto the altar of
Diana was thepy slayne by thepy concourse of the people
which offence the goddes immortall punished wth con-
tinuall slaughters of that nation, and well nere wth the
utter destruction of the whole realme.

For first being punished with dearth and hunger, and
beted wth ciuill discorde, last of all they were in manner
quite consumed by the warres of foraine nations. And
Milo who killed Laodamia falling out of his wittes, so
mangled his owne boope sometime wth Iron, sometime
with stones, and in fine so rent and tare his owne bo-
wels with his teeth, that wthin xii. dayes he dyed moste
miserably. Whyle these thinges were a boyng in Epyre,
Demetrius dyed in Macedone, leauing a lytle sonne cal-
led Philip to be his heire. Duer whom Antigonos being
made protecto, toke the childes Mother to his wife, and
wente about to make him selfe Kyng. Wytlyn a while
after, when the Macedones makinge insurrection agaynst
hym, and threathynge to kyll him, who besieged him in
his owne palace, he came forth to them wthoute anye
gard, and castyn among them his crowne, and his pur-
ple robe of estate, and bad them bestowe those thinges v-
pon some other person, which eyther knewe howe to rule
them, or to whom they could fynd in their hartes to obeye:
for as for him he had not hitherto (durynge the tyme hee
had the gouernement of that odious kyngdome,) tasted of
anye pleasures, but of labour, of trauaile, of perill and of
trouperaye. Then hee reuered what he had don for them,
howe he had punished suche of their confederates as had
squelched, how hee had asswaged the courage of the Dar-
danians and Thessalians triumphynge at the death of De-
metrius, and finally howe hee had not onely mapntay-
ned, but also augmented the state of the empire of Macce-
done. Of whych thynges if so bee it they repented them,
he was content to depose hym selfe, and to surrender his
office into their handes, and let them seeke thm a Kyng
whom they myght rule as they list themselves. When
the people beinge stryken wth shame willed him to take
his kyngdome vpon hym agayne, he refused it vntill hee
longe, vntill the authors of the rebellion were yelged
vnto.

The policy of
Antigonos in
retaining the
kyngdome of
Macedone.

The Actoly-
ans in the
Acarnania.

The final
day of the
royal in Epyre

The venge-
ance of god
for vntill in
der.

Warre he was
ne the Sparta-
nes in the
Macedones.

unto him to punish them at his pleasure. After this he made war against the Spartans which all onely despised the warres of Philip and Alexander, and the Empire of the Macedones, with the knight-hood so sore redoubted o-
uer all the world.

The warre was prepared for with all the furniture and power that could be made on both partes, betweene these two noble and famous nations. The one fighting for the auncient renowne of Macedone, the other not onely for the maintenaunce of their untouched libertie neuer be-
fore violated, but also for their common sauegarde. The Lacedemonians beyng vanquished, not onely the Men themselves, but also their wiues and children, toke theyr misfortune with very stout courage. For there was not any man that spared his life in battayle, nor any woman that wept for the losse of her husband. The old men com-
mended the death of theyr sonnes, and the sonnes reioiced that their fathers was slaine in the field. Every man la-
menteed his owne chaunce, that they had not died for the li-
berty of theyr country. The fathers and mothers recey-
ued into theyr houses all such as were hurt, healed such as
were wounded, and recomforted suche as were stricken
downe. And in all this busynesse there was not in the Cy-
tie any outcry, or any wyling of handes, there was not
any trembling for feare, but euery man betrayled more
the common misfortune, then his owne private case.

The courage-
ousnesse of
Cleomenes
king of the La-
cedemonians.

Whyle these thinges were in doinge, Cleomenes their kynge after he had made great slaughter of his enemies, being all on a gore bloud, as well with his owne woundes as with the bloud, of his enemies, came amonge them. And when he was entered the cite, he sat not downe to rest him, hee called not for Meate nor Drinke, no nor once put of his harness, but leaping his backe to a wal, when hee sawe there remayned no more but onely foure thou-
sand of his men from the battaile he exhorted them to re-
serue themselves to some other time, when they myght
be

be able to do theire countrie better seruice. And then with his wyfe and children, he went his way into Egypte to king Ptolomey of whom he was honourably intertai-
ned, and liued a long tyme in great fauor and estimation
with him like a kynge. But at the last after the decess of
Ptolomey, he and all his household were slayne by his son.
Antigonus hauyng made so great a slaughter of the La-
cedemonians, toke pitye of the misfortune of so worthy a
cite, and therefore would not suffer his souldiours to
sacke it but apardonned all that remayned alke, protes-
tyng that he made war agaynst Cleomenes & not agaynst
the Lacedemonians, Whom for as much as hee had dis-
comfited and put to flight, all his wrath was at an ende:
wherfore he thought it should stand more with his hono-
r to saue theyr cityes then to destroy it. For sepyng ther
remayned no men to shew his mercy vpon, he
sayd he would shewe it vpon the soyle
of the cite, & vpon the houses. It
was not long after but Antigonus died, & lefte his
kingdome to Philip
a child of 14. yea-
res of age.

The modesty
of Antigonus
hauyng gotten
the victory.

The sonne of
Demetrius.

The contents of the xxix. Booke.

THe alteration of the famous kyngdomes, by the succession of yong kyngs. Demetrius king of Illyria leueth to Philippe Kyng of Macedone for helpe agaynst the Romaynes. Philip exorteth the greekes to concorde, and proclaymeth open vvar agaynst the Romaynes. The Dardaniens inuade Macedone. He maketh speace vwith the Romaynes. Philopemenes causeth the Achians, to renolt from him.



An alteration
of kyngdomes
by the succ^{ess} of
yong kynges

Bout the very same season ther hapned an altaratiō almosse in all the kyngdoms of the world for in Macedone Philip, after the decease of his protectoz Antigonus, who also was his father in law, toke the kyngdome vppon him beyng but yitt years old In Asia after that Seleucus was slain

Antiochus as yet vnder þ age of 14. yeres was made king The kyngdome of Capadocia was surrendred by his father to Ariarathes a very child. Ptolomy, who for the wickednesse of his offence was in dition surnamed Philopater, slue his father and mother, and vsurpinge the kyngdome of Egypt, But the Lacedemonians in steed of Cleomenes suozogated Lycurgus. And because ther should be stoz of alterations in those tymes Hannibal being as yet skarse man growen, wis made Captayne of Carthage, not because there was skarsity of men of moze yeres and experience, but for the naturall hatred, that was knowne to be roted in him agaynst the Romaynes euen from his very childhood. bozne to the better distruction, not so much of the Romaynes, as of his owne country of Affricke. Now albeit those children kynges, had no eider persons to be thez protectors, yet notwithstanding euerie one of them so ententiely pursued the steppes of their auncestors, that there was great likelihood of pzoesse and ac-

tinuety

stutty in them. Quely Ptolomy as he was wicked in vsurpinge the kyngdome, so was he also slouthful & negligent in governig of the same. The Dardaniens & other people that were bozzerers, who bare as it were an immortall hatred to the kynges of Macedone, disdaining Philip by reason he was so yong, troubled him continually. On the contrary parte Philip when hee had put his enemies to flight, beyng not content to have defended his owne, purposed to make warre agaynst the Actolians. As he was devising how to antecypse the matter, Demetrius kyng of Illyria being lately vanquished by Paule Consul of Rome, came to him as an humble suer making complayne of þ wrong that the Romaynes had done vnto him, who beyng not content to kepe themselves within the bondes of Italye, but of a wicked desire couetynge the myrre of the whole worlde made war with all kynges. Alledging that for the lyke conecousnesse of the Emprye of Sicill. of Sardinia, of Spayn, & consequentye of al Affricke, they had entered into war. w Hannibal & the Carthaginēses, and that they had made war with him for none other occasion, but only þ he was next neyghbour vnto Italy, as though it were not lawfull for any kyng to dwell neare þ borders of their Emprye. Wherefoze it would stand him in hand also to shew sample how to be war by other means whose kyngdome the nobler and merer it was to the Romaynes, so much shoulde hee fynd theym his fierce enemies. Whereover he protested þ he was contented to surrender to hym the right and title of the kyngdome which the Romayns had taken from him. Saying he could better fynd in his hart to see his neyghbour and frend rather then his enemy to enioy the possession of his kyngdome. With this and such other lyke talk he perswaded Philip to leaue the Actolians, and to turne the hunte of the w-e agaynst the Romaynes, soe much the rather, because hee thought they shoulde be the lesse able to resist him, for that (as he heard say) they had lately befoze bene vanquished by Hannibal.

The occasion
of the vvars be
twene the Ro-
maynes & the
Macedones.

Philip per
suaded the
Greeks to
peace and tra-
quillity.

Hannibal at the take of Thracianus. Therefore because he would not be charged with many warres at ones, he made peace with the Aetolians, not as that they should thinke he did it, to the entent, to make warre in an other place, but as though it had bene for some great regarde he had of the quietnes of all Greece, which he affirmed was neuer in the lyke perill by reason of the new Emperors of the Romains and Carthaginenses lately rise up in the Weste, which had none other let to stop them out of Grece and Asia, but onely this, whyle they wer tryinge by the sword which of them should beare the souerayntye. For which partye soener gat the vpper hande, the same would immediatly vpon the victorie passe directly into the East.

Therefore he saw such a cloude of cruel and bloody warre rising out of Itallye, he saw such a roynge & thundring storme commynge out of the West, that into what part of the world soener the violence force of the victorie should vnto the tempest thereof, it was lyke to wash all thynges with a terrible and bloody shoure. He sayde that Grece had oftentimes before suffered great trouble by the warres, sometyme of the Persians sometyme of the Frenchmen, and sometyme of the Macedones: but they should fynd that neuer is past is but aspyde, whole armies which now were fighting in Itallye, should once passe them selues into Grece. For he saw wel enough howe cruell and bloody, both with puissance of hostes and pollicie of captaynes those two people made warre one agaynst another. The which rage certaynly could not bee ended, in the only destruction of one of the parties, with out the ruine and decaye of such as were next neighbours. Therefore Grece had moze cause a great deale to be affrayde of the cruelty of whether party soener gate the vpper hand, then Macedone, both because Macedone is further of from them, and of no moze strength to defend it selfe. And yet he knewe for a certayntye that those that encounter-

red now with so great puissance, would not be contented to end their conquest so, but that he himselfe should haue cause to feare, least he be diuyned to haue to doe with them that should get the vpper hand. Havinge vnder this prudence broke up his voyage agaynst the Aetolians; and minding nothing but the warres of the Carthaginenses & Romaines, he waied with himselfe the power and habilitie of them both. Neither were the Romaines, (albeit the Carthaginenses and Hannibal were then in maner ready to light vpon their necke,) vnder of feare of warre oute of Macedone also. For they stood in dread of it, bothe for the auncient promise and actiuitie of the Macedones, and for the renowne of their conquests in the East, & also for Philip himselfe, who was enflamed with an earnest desire, to become equal to Alexander in knightboode and chualry, and in whom they knew to be forward and active in feates of armes. Philip therefore when he understood that the Carthaginenses had vanquished the Romaines agayne, sent his open defiance vnto them, and began to builde a flet, wherewith to transport his army into Itallye. Furthermoze he sente an Ambassagore with letters to Hannibal, to conclude a league and society with hym. Who being taken by the way and brought before the Senate, was sent away without any harme done vnto hym, not for any good will they bare to the kynge bys maister but to the intent that of a suspected friend they would not make him an open enemy. But after this: when it was reported that Philip was transporting his army into Itallye, they set the Pretor Leuius, with a nauy wel decked & furnished to stop him of his passage. Who after he was arrived in Grece, with his false & large promises, compelled the Aetolians to take war in hand agaynst Philip: & on the other side, Philip did what he could to perswade the Aetolians to make war agaynst the Romains. In the mean tyme the Dardanians began to wast the borders of Macedone, & hauing led away xx. prisoners constrained Philip to retire hom from

Philip sendeth
defiance to the
Romaines.

The Romai-
nes and Philip
follicite the A-
etolians thence
agaynst the other

The Dardani-
ans invade
Macedone.

Philip is vex-
ed with the
complaints of his
confederates.

Philip taketh
trust with the
Romaynes.

from invading the Romaynes, to the defence of his owne
kingdome. While these things were doinge, the Pre-
tor Leuius entering a league with king Attalus, wasted
the countrey of Greece. With the which losse and destruc-
tion, the cities being stricken in feare, sent diuers Amba-
sades to Philip, desiring ayd of him. The kynge of Illiria
also his next neighbour, dooing vpon the one side of
Macedone, made incessant sute that he should performe
his promysse. Besides that the Macedones called vpon him
instantly to reuenge the wastinge of his owne countrey.
Which which so many and so waighey matters, he was so
for pressed, and as it were besieged at once, that he wylle
not which to remedy first. Yet notwithstandinge he pro-
mised to send succors to every one of them ere it was lgy,
not because hee was not able to performe as much as hee
promised, but to content that by putting them in hope of
comforte, he might keepe them his friends still. But the
first voyage that he toke in hand, was against the Darda-
nians who watching the tyme to find him from hom, de-
termined to take their advantage, & to invade Macedone
with a greater puissance in his absence. Also he made
peace with the Romaynes, and so being contented to have
delayed the Romayn warrs against Macedone for y time
he layd waite to entrap Philopemenes Duke of the Arche-
lains, who as it was reported to him stirred the Ro-
mains, and the minds of his confederates against
him. But Philopemenes hauinge knowledge
thereof, and so auoiding the daunger of the
same, compelled the Acheans by
his authority to rebell a-
gainst him. The

The contentes of the xxx. booke

THE slothfulnes of Ptolomy Kyng of Egypt, Antioch^{us} invadeth
Egypt and is put to the foyle, Ptolomy geueth himself utterly to
sloth and riot, he dieth, his concubynes are hanged vpon the Ro-
mains take the gouernance of the yong kyng, the Grekes rebell a-
gainst Philippe kyng of Macedone, he desireth peace of the Romay-
nes a quauinge of the Sea, an earthquake in Asia, Philip is quilled
in battaile by the Romaynes, and spoyled of all his dominions, sa-
uengeously the Realm of Macedone, the Etolians prouoke Anti-
ochus to vvar vpon the Romaynes.



*V*ringe the time that Philippe

was earnestly occupied about great
& waighey affairs in Macedone. Pto-
lomy behaued himself cleane contra-
ry wise in Egypt. For after hee had
obtainned the kyngdome by murder-
ing both his parentes & that he had
moreouer killed his own brother as though he had achie-
ued all things prosperously, he gaue himselfe to riotte.
And al the realme folowed the steppes of they kyng. By
meanes wherof not onely his noble men and officers, but
also his meane of warre laying assyde the exerceyse of chy-
ualtry and feares of armes utterly spoiled themselves with
sloth and yolenes. Antiochus kyng of Syria beyng prouo-
ked with a certayne olde grudge betwene those 2. Real-
mes, raised a power suddenly, & wan many cities from him
& also entred into Egypt, Ptolomy trembling for feare,
& besought Antiochus by his ambassadours y he woulde
respyte hym, but so long as he might rayse a power. After
ward hauing byed a greater host out of Greece, hee foughte
a prosperous battell, and he had utterly bereft Antiochus
of his kyngdome, if he had furthered his good fortune by
prowesse. But he was content with the recouerie of the
Cities that he had lost, and so concluding a peace, desi-
rously

Sev what the
cruell ensample
of a prince
dothe

God sendeth
fortune to
fooles

The filthy and
abominable
life of Ptolemy
Philopater.

He took the occasion of quietnes when it was offered him: and so wallowing agayne into his olde accustomed slothfulnes, he slew his wyfe Euridice, beinge his owne sister, through the entymement of a harlotte called Agathoclea with whom he was taken in loue.

And for forgetting quite the renoume of his name, and the maiesty of his kingdome, he spent the nights in lecherie, and the dayes in feasting. Besides this the more to enflame his lecherous appetyte he had at his feastes, musick singing and dauncing. Neither coulde the kyng now content himselfe to be a beholder of others but also like a maister of miserie fell to playinge vpon instrumentes himselfe. These were the firste plagues and priuie paynes, which afterward were the decaye of the kynges house. For with in a whyle after, they grew to such a licentious libertie and the harlote waxed so bolde, that the wailles of the court were not able to hold her. Whom the unspeakable lecherie that the kyng vsed daylye with her brother Agathocles a stompette of spytfull beauty made more stately and arrogant. And to the increase thereof came also his mother Euanthe, who with her baliance had so allured the kynges hart vnto her, that he had begotten too sonnes of his. By meanes wherof beinge not content with the kyng, nowe they hild the kyngdome also, now they must come abroad to be sene in the open face of the world, now they must be saluted, now they must be wayted vpon. Agathocles sittinge cheke by cheke with the king ruled the Realme at his owne pleasure. The women disposed Marshalshippes of the hoste, lieutenantshippes of prouinces and captainshippes as pleased them: so that there was no man in al his Realme, that coulde do lesse then the king himselfe.

At the length he dyed leauinge a sonne behynd him of foure yeres old by his sister Euridice. But whyles the woman wente aboute to spoyle the treasure and made con-

fed

seuerace with the wickedest personnes that coulde be picked out, to the intent to deprive the right heire of his kyngdome, his death was kept secret a great while after hee was dead. Neuerthelesse as soon as that matter came to lycht the people ran vpon Agathocles and slew hym, and the women in reuengement of Eurydicie, were hanged by vpon Gibbes. The notorious infamy of the realme bringe thus purged and putte away by the Death of the king, and the punishment of the Harlots, the Senate of Alexandria sente Ambassadors to the Romaines, desyringe them to take vpon them the protection of the Orphan kyng and the gouernement of the Kingdom of Egypt, whych they auouched that Philip and Antiochus had already boughte and solde betwene them encending to parte it betwixt them. The Romaines were verie glad of that Ambassade, as they that sought occasion of warre agaynst Philip to be reuenged for his lying in waite to doe them displeasure in the time of the warres with the Carthaginenses. Besides this, after some time they had subdued the Carthaginenses, and driven awaye Hanniball, they feared no mannes puissance more then Philip, recountinge with themselves what a stre Pyrrhus had kepte in Italye with so small a handfull of Macedones, and howe great enterpryses the Macedones had achieved in the East. Whereupon Ambassadors were sent to Antiochus and Philip withingeringe to medle with the kyngdome of Egypt. Further more M. Lepidus was sente into Egypte, to take vpon hym the protection of the child, and the administration of the Realme. Whyle these things were a doynge, the Ambassadors of Attalus kyng of Perganius, and the Ambassadors of the Rhodians came to Rome, to complaine of whiche that kyng Philip had don vnto them. Whiche thinge caused the Senate to geue in hand wth the warres of Macedon forthe with. For vnder pretence of aduysing their confederats war was decreed agaynst Philip and a Consul was sene

The death of
Ptolemy and
the banishment
of his sisters.

The Romaines
are made pro-
tectors of the
Orphan.

Complantes
of Philip
and Antiochus
to the Romaines.

with

with an army into Macedone. And ere it was long after all Greece upon trust of the Romaynes rose against Philip, in hope to recouer their auncient libertie, and make war upon him. By meanes wherof the kynge was so assaulted on euery side, that hee was constrained to desyre peate. When the articles of peace should be pronounced by the Romans, both Attalus & the Rodians, & the Acheans, and the Etolians demanded restitution of that that had bin theirs. On the other side, Philip granted that hee could find in his hart to be ruled by the Romaynes, but hee said, it was an vnsely matter, that the Greekes beyng vanquished by his predecessors Philip and Alexander, and subdued vnder the yoke of y^e Empire of Macedone, should like conquerors prescribe him articles of peace, and not rather be giuen to a strate accompt for theyr disobedience or euer they ought to chalenge any libertie. Neuerthelesse at length by much entreatance, they granted him truce for 2. monethes, that the peace which could not be agreed vpon in Macedone, might be requested of the Senate at Rome. The same yere, betwene the Islands of Theramene & Therasia, in the midway betwene both shores, there was a great earthquake in the sea. By meanes of which (so the great admiration of such as sailed that way) sobainly out of the depe, shot up an Aile with hot waters. And in Asia the very same day another earthquake shaked the Rhodes and many other cities, shewing downe the houses and buildings, wherof some wer swallowed vp whole. At the which wonder all men were sore afraid, & y^e Southsayers prophessed that the Romaine Empire then beginning to spring vp, should deuour thold Empire of y^e Greekes and Macedones. In the meane season, the peace was rejected by the Senat, wherupon Philip sollicitated the tyrant Nabis to take his part against the Romaynes: and so whē he had brought his host into the field & his enemies were standing in order of battel against him, he began to encourage his men, rehering howe the Macedones had

con-

conquered the Persians, the Bactrians, the Indians, & to be short all Asia eue to the uttermost border of y^e East. Saying that so much more force & courage ought to be shewed in this Battell, thā in the other, as liberty is a thinge of greater price than Dominion.

Philip encourageth the Macedones against the Romaynes.

Elaminus also the Romaine Consul, in like maner encouraged his men to the Encounter, by puttinge them in remembrance of the thinges achieved lately before.

Shewing them howe on the one side Carthage, and Syccill were conquered, and on the other side Italy, and Spayne recovered by the prowesse, and puissance of the Romaynes - and that Hanniball was nothinge Inferiour to great Alexander, after whose expulsiō out of Italy, he had subdued Affrike the third part of the world. And yet the Macedones were not to be esteemed by the auncient renoume of their predecessors, but accordinge to the Power, and strength that they were of at that present. For they should not encounter with great Alexander who was reported to bee Inuincible, nor with his Army that Conquered all the East, but with Philip a child yet scarce come to yeares of discretion, who had much a do to defend his kyngdome against his next neyghbours, and with those Macedones which but euen the other Day almost were Spoiled, and Led away Prisoners by the Dardaniens, & were able to talke of nothinge saue the renoumed actes of their ancestors, whereas the Romaynes might morethely report the deedes done by themselves, and theyr Souldiours. For it was none other hoste that had subdued Hanniball and the Carthaginenses, and almost all the West, than the very same souldiers whom he had there standing in battell ray, with these encouragements the mindes of both armies beinge enflamed, ran fiercely to the Encounter, the one part gloryinge in th^e Empire of the East, the other in th^e Empire of the West, the one bringing into the battell with the auncient, and forwoyne renoume of their predecessors

Flamin'us encourageth the Romaynes.

the.

Ancient
quake,

Philip is over-
cure.

the other the fresh greene flour of their late tried knight-
boode and Chivalry. But the Romaines had the fortune
to vanquish the Macedones, Philip being utterly discour-
aged by this battell, and desiring peace of the Consull
Flaminus, receyved still the name of a kinge, but he was
bereft of all the Cities of Greece, as it were the members
of his Kingdome, which were situate without the bound-
es of the auncient Inheritance, and so hee had no more
left him, but only the countrey of Macedone. And yet the
Aetolians being offended that at their pleasure Macedone
also was not taken from hym and geuen to theym in re-
warde of theyr paynes taken in the warre, sent Ambassa-
dours to Antiochus, who by flattering him in ad-
uancing his puissance and chivalry, might
enforce him to make warre against the
Romaines, in hope that all Greece
would take his part.

* *

The

¶ The contentes of the xxxj. Booke.

Antiochus Inuadeth the Territories of the Dominion of Egypt,
the Romaines proclayne Warre against him, Nabis kinge of La-
cedemon subdueth many cities in Greece, the Romaines send an Am-
bassador to note Hannibals doinges in Africke, and to kill him, he crip-
eth their purpose, and flyeth vnto Antiochus. Nabis vanquished by Fla-
minius, after whose departure he followeth the Warres againe, Han-
nibal is highly enterteyned by Antiochus, geueth counsell how to pro-
ceede in his Warres against the Romaines, sendeth a Messenger to Car-
thage to stir them to rebellion. The Romaines send an Ambassage to
Antiochus who through their daily conuersation with Hannibal,
bring him in the kinges displeasure, who neuertheless sheweth his
opinion concerning the Warres with the Romaines, the which is
neglected, Antiochus is overcome of the Romaines, and taketh Han-
nibal into fauour againe Hannibal is put to the worse vpon the Sea,
the magnanimity of Scipio Affricanus, articles of peace are propoun-
ded, and by Antiochus rejected. The Romaines come to Troy, Antio-
chus is vanquished with a great slaughter, and peace geuen him vpon
the foresayd Articles.



¶ When Ptolomy Philopater was
dead, Antiochus king of Syria dis-
dayninge his little Sonne because
he was so yonge, (who beinge the
only hope of the prosperitie of the
Ptolomyes, left to inherite his king-
dome, was euen as a prey to his
owne Subiectes) purposed to con-
querre Egypt. Whereupon whē he had inuaded Phenice,

Antiochus in-
uadeth the Em-
pire of Egypt.

and the other cities situate in Syria, but under the dominion
of Egypt: the Senate of Rome sent an ambassade vnto him
willinge him to abstaine from the Orphans kingdome, which
was committed to their charge, by the last will of his fa-
ther. Which beinge sent away with a scuelesse answere,
whē a while after came another ambassade, which leaving
the person of their pupil commaunded him to make Re-
stitution with full amendes, of the cities that by the lawe
of armes appertayned of right to the Romaines.

¶ 2

¶ Upon

Kynge of the
Lacedemonians

An ambassage
sent into Arike
to surpris Hannibal.

Hannibal pre-
sente h the de-
uises of the Ro-
maynes.

Upon his refusall they made their defiance, the which as he lightly received: so he as unfortunately performed. The same time the Tyrant Nabis subdued many Cities in Greece. The Senate therefore least the power of the Romayns should be entangled in two warres at one instant, wrote unto Flaminius, that like as hee had deliuered Macedone from bondage of Phillippe, so (if hee thought it good) he should deliuer Greece from the Bondage of Nabis. In consideration whereof his authority was prozged. For the name of Hannibal made the Wars of Antiochus terrible, whom his enuyous Aduersaries had accused to the Romaynes of secreete Conspiracy with Antiochus: alledging that his hart would not serue him to liue vnder a Lawe, who had bin accustomed to Souerapnty, and to the ouer licentious liberty of the Campe, and that he was so wey of the rest and quietnesse of the city, that he enermore sought to picke some quarel, to the intent to haue occasion agayne of some new warres. Which thinges all beie they were reported contrary to truth yet notwithstandinge amonge them that it was in dreade of hym, they were beleued for a truth. For the Senate being stricken wryth feare, sente Scruilius of ambassage into Arike, to note the demeanour of Hannibal, giuinge him secretly in charge, that if it were possible, hee should finde the meanes to kili him by some of his Aduersaries, and so deliuer the Romaines from the dreafeful feare of his hateful name. But this secret workinge coulde not be longe kept from Hannibal beinge a wise and expert person in foresieinge, and auoydinge of dangers, and such a one as looked as wel for Aduersity in the time of Prosperity, as for Prosperity in the time of Aduersity.

Therefore when he had shewed himselfe all day longe before the eyes of the noble men, and of the Romaine ambassadour in the face of the court, euen to the uttermost, in the shutting in of the evening, he tooke horsebacke, and rode to a Panour he had in the Subburbes nere unto the

the sea side, without makinge any of his seruantes hee up wher about he went, and willing them to wait at the gate till he came again. He had at the sayd maner shipps and Mariners hidden for the nonce in a Creeke of the sea. Moreover he had there a great sum of Money in a readiness in the same pece of ground, to the intent if he were driuen to such necessity, he wold not be letted of his money for want of ships or for want of Money. Therupon with a company of his most picked seruantes (the number of whom was increased with Italian prisoners,) hee tooke shipping and directed his course toward Antiochus. The next day the city waited in the iudgement Hall for their prince, and the same time their Consul. When they heard that he was gone they trembled for feare, as if the City had ben taken by the enemy, mistrusting that bys departure wold turn to the utter destruction. And the Romaine ambassadour (as though Hannibal had not then made war again vpon Italy, made no more a doe, but returned to Rome, and brought sorrowful tidings thereof with him. In the meane time Flaminius having made confederacy with certain Cities in Greece, banquished Nabis in two pitched fieldes one after another. By meanes wherof hauing brought him to a low ebbe, he left him in his kyngdom lyke a man without lyfe or soule. But after that he had withdrawn his Garrisons out of the cities, and conueried his host again into Italy, Nabis being entised again, for as much as he saw no man to kepe possession against him, raised a power, and suddenly invaded many cities. Wherewith the Acheans being put in fear, for doubte least the mischief wherewith their neighbors were entangled should crepe vpon them, determined to make warre against Nabis. Of whych warres they made liuetenaunt generall their Pretor Philopemenes a man of excellent actiuitie, who behaued himself so valiantly in that warre that by all mennes iudgement, he was to be compared to Flaminius the graund captaine of the Romaines.

Nabis is ouer-
come.

Nabis reneweth
the warres a-
gain.

The prayse of
Philopemenes.

The same time Hannibal when hee was come to Antiochus, was entertained and welcomed as a gift sent from God and the kyng tooke such a courage to him vppon his coming, that he seemed not so carefull for the warre, as how he might reward him for getting the victorie.

But Hannibal who knew by profe the prowesse and payssaunce of the Romaines, denied that it was possible to ouercome them but in Italy. To the performance whereof, he willed him to deliuer him an hundred shippes with tenne thousand footemen and thye thousande Horsemen, promising to make as hot wars in Italy with that litle band, as euer he had done before, so by his maiesty sittinge in quiet in Asia, he would epyther bring him home victorie and conquest, or else indifferent articles of finall peate and attonement. For both the Spanyards were desirous to renew the warres if they had a capitaine to sette them a worke, and he himself was better acquainted with Italy now, than he had bin in former times. Moreover he knew that Carthage would not sit at rest, but adioyn himself as partaker of his enterprises out of hand. The king liked the counsell well, and there vpon one of Hannibals retinue was sent vnto Carthage, to stirre them to the war beinge of themselves all ready desirous thereof, declaringe vnto them that Hannibal would shortly come thither with an army.

Nevertheless he was charged to saye nothinge to the factions, but only that the Carthaginēses wanted hart, for Asia should find them both men and Money. When newes hereof came to Carthage, the messenger was apprehended by the enemies of Hannibal, and beinge brought into the Senat, and there examined to whom he was sent he answered like a subtle Asse, that he was sent to the whole Senate. In as much as this matter was not the peculier case of any one of the, but appertained in general to them all. While they were debating of the matter in counsel many daies together, whether it were best for discharging of their

Hannibals entertainment with Antiochus.

He that received without his hollie will taken to vile.

Hannibals counsel to Antiochus against the Romaines.

A messenger is sent to Carthage from Hannibal.

The messenger is apprehended.

stone consciences to send him to Rome, there to make his purgation or no: he tooke shippes priuily, and returned to Hannibal. Whereupon the Carthagi. immediatly sente ambassadours to Rome. The Romains also sent ambassadours to Antiochus the which vnder colour of ambassade should both note the kynges furniture for the warres and also epyther reconcile Hannibal to the Romaynes, or els through their dayly & continual comoning with him bying him in suspicion and hatred with the kyng. The ambassadours therefore when they were come before kyng Antiochus at Ephesus, deliuered him their commission from the Senate. Durynge the tyme they lay there getting attendance for the answer, day by day they were euer in hand with Hannibal, sayinge that there was no cause why he should haue fled so fearfully out of his country sayinge the Romaynes with all faythfulnes obserued the peate concluded not so much with the body of the common weale of Carthage, as with him: consideringe they knew he had made warre agaynst the Romaynes, not so much for ill will be bare towardes them, as for the loue he bare towardes his country, in which quarell euery good man ought to spend his life. For the occasiō of those warres, grew vpon the displeasure that the one country bare openly agaynst the other, and not vpon any priuate quarell of the captaynes among themselves. Here vpon they tooke occasion to commend his noble actes, by which communication so greatly delighed him that hee was desirous to talke with the ambassadours oftener, not forgetting that for the familiaritee he had with the Romaines he should purchase himselfe the kings displeasure. For Antiochus vpon this his dayly communication, thinkinge him to be reconciled, and saue in fauour with the Romaynes, would not aske his aduise as he was wont to do, nor make him priuy to any part of his doinges, but hated him as an enemy, and abhorred him as a traitour. Which thinge layde a water all that greates furniture

The messenger escapeth and returneth to Hannibal.

And ambassad sent fro Rome to Antioch.

Flattery,

Antiochus displeased with Hannibal keeping company with the Romaines.

for the wars after the tyme that the pollicy of the graund
captayne was thus dashed out of countenance. The effect
of the commission, was to commaund Antiochus in the
name of the Senate, to bee contente wth the boundes of
Asia, vnles he would dyue them to enter into Asia, whi
ther they woulde, or no. Antiochus makynge lyght there-
of, answered how hee was fully resolved before, not to re-
ceyue war at their handes, but to make war vpon them.
When he had oftentimes debated with his counsell and
his captaynes concerning this warre, without makynge
Hanniball, p'styme therto, at the last he sette for him, not
to do anye thinge by his aduise, but because hee woulde
not seme to haue vterly despyed hym, and there vppon
when every man had sayd his mynd, lastly he asked him
his aduise. Which thinge Hannibal vnderstanding wel
inoughe, sayde that hee perceived hee was called not be-
cause y^e kyng thought himself to haue neede of his counsell
but onely to supply the number of sentences. Neuerthe-
les for the hatred he bare to the Romaynes & for the good
wil he bare to the kyng, as in whose court only he hadde
had safe refuge in the tyme of his banishment, hee woulde
discusse what way he were best to enterpryse his warres.
Thereupon he desired pardon in that he would speake so
largely: for he sayd he lyked no part of their counsels nor
opinions in that behalfe, as that Grece should be appoin-
ted the place of the warre, seing that Italy was better for
the mainteuanance of the same, for the Romaynes myght
not be vanquished, but by their owne weapons, nor Italy
otherwise be subdued, then by her owne power.

For those kyngd of people were of a cleane contrary Na-
ture from all other men, and therefore the warres were
to be ordered far otherwise agaynst theyn, then agaynst
all other men. In other warres it is wouite to bee a great
furtheraunce for a Manne too haue taken some aduanti-
tage of the place, or of the tyme, or too haue wasted the
felde, or to haue wonne some Cityes. But with the Ro-

main-

main whether yee haue gotten anye aduantage before,
or whether ye haue overcome him, ye muste bee sayne e-
uen then to wrestle with him, when he is vanquished and
lyeth at your fote. Wherefore if a man assayle thrym
in Italy, he myght overcome them with their own wea-
pons, their owne richesse, and their owne power, lyke as
he himself hath done. But if any manne shall suffer the
to enioy Italy, as the wellspringe of their strength, hee
shalbe as farre from his purpose, as if a man woulde goe
aboute to dyue bake a ryuer agaynst the streame, or to
dye it vp, not begynning to stoppe it at the heade, but at
such place as the waters were deepest, and moste en-
cafed. This he sayd was his oppinion to himselfe, where-
vpon hee was mynded to haue offered his seruice and ad-
uise vnrquested, the which hee now hadde vttered in the
presence of all his frendes, to thetente they myghte all
vnderstand how to make warres with the Romaynes,
who out of their owne countrey were inuincible, and at
home at theyr owne doores weake and easie too bee over-
come. Inso much that it was an easier matter to set the
besyde Rome, than besyde their Emperre, & to dyue the
out of Italy, the out of theyr prouinces. For theyr city had
ben sacked by the Frenchmen, & they themselves almost
vterly destroyed by him, and yet hee neuer was vanquish-
ed before he departed out of their country. But laste
as he was returned to Carthage, immediatly wth the
place, was also altered the fortune of the warres.

The kynges counsell bilde a much agaynst this aduise as
could be, not waying the profitableness of the matter, but
for leere lest if his counsel should be allowed he shoulde be
more in fauour with the kyng then any of them. Antio-
chus mistyked not so much the counsel as the authoz ther
of, least the glozpe of the victoyp shoulde rebounde to Han-
niball, and not to him. Thus through flattery all was
made, and nothing was done by counsell or reason. The
king al the winter tyme geuiug himself to riot & pastime.

was

The nature of
enue and am-
bition.

The effect of
the Romaine
ambassade, and
the answer of
Antiochus.

Consulta-
tion
concerning the
vntres of the
Romaines.

Hannibals ad-
uise as concer-
ning the main-
tenance of the
warre with
the Romaines.

was euery day making of newe mariages. On the contrarie part Attilius the Romayne consul, who was sente to these warres (with al diligence preparing men and armour, withal other munition, artillery and habiliments for the warre) strenghtned the ctyes that were in confederacy allured such as were neutrals, and in conclusion according as epyther part layde before hande for thepp furniture, so did they speake in the warre. In the first encounter when the kynge saw his men geue backee he did not re-
leue them with fresh succours, but offered himself captain of such as first ran awaye and left his campe replenished with al richesse to his ennemy. When he hadde escaped by flight into Asia while the Romans were occupied in gathering the spoyle he began to repent him that he had rejected Hanniballes counsell, and therupon taking hym into fauoure agayne, sayde he would doe all thinges by his aduise. In the meane season it was told him that Liuius Menenius, a Romayne captain, appoynted admiral of the sea by the Senate, was comminge towardes him with foure score shippes of warre, which thinges putte him in good comfort to recouer his misfortune. Therfore he determined to encounter with him by the waye, before that the ctyes which as yet held theire aliance with hym were reuoluted to the Romayns, hopinge to abolishe the dishonour of y^e discomfytur taken in Grece, by a new victory. And therupon Hanniball was sent to the sea with the kynges flete. But neither were the men of Asia able to match the Romaynes, nor thepp shippes of like force as were the Romayne galleys, whose stemmes were armed with brasse. Yet notwithstanding the slaughter was the lesse, by meanes of the pollicy of the captain. The fame of the victorie was not yet reported at Rome, & therefore the cty stayed the creating of their consuls. But who was better to be made captain agaynst Hannibal, than y^e brother of Affricanus, seeing it was the peculiar worke of the Scipions to banquish the Carthaginenses? Lucius

Scipio.

Antiochus is put to flight

Hannibal is taken into fauour agayne.

Hannibal being made admiral of Antiochus navy is vanquished by the Romaynes.

Scipio was created Consul, and his brother Affricanus was geuen him to be his liutenant, to the entente Antiochus should vnderstande that they had as much confidence in their conquerour Scipio, as he hadde in his vanquished Hanniball. As the Scipios were conueyng ouer their hoste into Asia. word was broughte them, that the war in both places was al ready brought past the worst, and so they found Antiochus banquished in battell on the land, and Hanniball overcome upon the sea. At their first arrival Antiochus sent his ambassadours vnto them for peace, sendyng moreover by them as a peculiere present vnto Affricanus, his sonne whome the kynge hadde taken passyng ouer in a little barke. But Affricanus answered that there was greate difference betwene benefites done to any one person priuately, and the benefites that were done to the publyke weale of a whole country, & that the person of a father was one thinge, and the person of a common weale was another, whych ought in dede to be preferred, not only before children, but also before the very selfe it self, wherfore he thanked the kynge withall his hartte for his honozable present, promysinge to requite his hounteous liberalitie, by some good turne that lay in his owne pryncely power to doe. But as touching warre and peace, he answered that hee coulde shewe him no fauour, neyther that he would doe more or lesse than was requisite to the behouise of his country. For he neuer entreated for the ransomynge of his sonne, nor suffered the Senate to go about it, but (as appertained to his honoz) he said alwayes he would recouer him by force of armes. After this, were articles of peace propounded, & contents wherof was that he should departe out of Asia, suffryng the Romaynes to enioy it peaceablye, deliuer them their prissoners and runnagates, withall thepp shippes, and make restitution of al charges and expences that the Romaynes hadde bin putte to in those warres.

Antiochus

Antiochus desisteth peace

The constant and vncorrupt mind of Affricanus toward his country.

Articles of peace recited.

The Romaines
can to Troye

A bodel be-
tweene Antio-
chus and the
Romaines.

Antiochus hauing intelligence therof, answered that he was not as yet so utterly vanquished that he should suffer hymself to bee spoyled of his kyngdom, saying that it was the next waye to prouoke him to warre, rather then to allure hym to peace. In the meane time that the warre was in preparyng on bothe sides, the Romaines enterpyng into Asia came to Troy wher was great reioycement betwene the Troyanes and the Romaines, the Troyanes declaringe howe Eneas and other Captains came from them, and the Romaines boasting themselves to bee descended of them. And there was as greates reioycement betwene bothe parties, as there is wont to be at the metyng of the parentes and their chyldren, after longe beynge a sonder. It dyd the Troyanes good, that their linage hauynge conquered the weste and suboued Affricke, dyd now challenge the pice of Asia also, as they auncient inheritaunce and the rightful posselliō of theyr forefathers: sayinge it was good fortune to Troy that it was destroyed, consideryng howe luckelpe it hadde risen againe. On the other side, the Romaines had an immeasurable desire, to see the houses of theyr auncistype, and the places where theyr forefathers were bredde and borne, with the Temples and Images of theyr Goddes. When the Romaines were departed from Troye, King Eumenes met them with a number of men to ayd them. And ere it was long after, a fiesde was foughte agaynst Antiochus, in whiche when a legion of the rpyghe wyng of the Romaine battell, beynge putte out of erape fled to the campe with moxe shame then daunger. Marcus Aemilius marshall of the hoste, beynge left behynde for the defence of the campe, commaunded his souldiours to arme themselves, and to goe oute of the trench, and wyth theyr swordes drawn to manace suche as fledde awaye they should ope for it euerychone, if they returned not into the battell agayn, and that they should find their owne

Campe

Campe whotter for them, than the battell of their Enemies. The Legion being astonied at so great daunger accompanied with their felowes that stopped them of their flight, returned into the field, and there makinge a great slaughter vpon their Enemies, were the begininge of the victorie. There were of the Enemies fifty thousande slayne, and a. xj. thousand taken Prisoners. Yet notwithstanding when Antiochus desired peace, nothinge was added to the former articles. For Affricanus said it was not the custome of the Romaines, to bee discouraged for losse, nor to be proude for prosperitie. The Cities that they had taken, they deuided amonge their confederates, Iudginge it a greater rewarde to the Romaines to haue honour, than possessions. For he sayd, it was meete for a Romaine to challenge Glory, and Fame, and to leaue superfluitie of richesse to his

Partakers.

* *

The

The magnanimity of the Romaines.

¶ The contentes of the. xxxij. Booke.

THe Aetolians, are subdued, the Messenians, & Acheans strive for the soueraynty philopemenes Captayne of the Acheans is take prisoner & poysoned by the Messenians, the Messenians are ouercome & punished for the death of philopemenes. Antiochus & al his host is slain by the men of the countrey: the cities of Greece make complaine of philip kinge of Macedone at Rome, he is acquit for the modelty of his sonne Demetrius, vvhoby the false acutations of his brother peres, brought in displeasure vvith his father & put to death. philip dieth for torow. peres maketh prouision for Warre against the Romaines. The original of the Aetolians. The shame of the Daces. prusias vpon trust of Hanniball that fled from Antiochus vnto him breaketh the truce against Eumenes, the pollicy of Hanniball in conueying himself out of Candie, prusias is ouercome vpon the land. Hanniball through a suble inuencion vanquisheth thisenemy vpon the sea. An balladours are sente from Rome to set the tivo Kinges at one, and to desire to haue Hanniball yelded vnto them, Hanniball poysoneth himselfe.

The Aetolians
are subdued by
the Romaines.



UHe Aetolians which had prouoked Antiochus to Warre agaynst the Romaines, after the time that he was ouercome, remayned all alone against the Romaines, both unable to match them in strength, and also destitute of all help, & comfozt. By meanes whereof within a while after, they were Vanquished and lost their liberty, which they all only amonge so many Cities of Grece had retained vntouched, against the dominion of the Athenians, and Lacedemonians. Which estate of bondage was so much bitterer vnto them, as it was later of it came when they called to mynde those tymes, in which vvith the onely power of their owne Countrey, they had borne out the greate force of the Persians, and repressed the violence of the frenchemen, so terrible to Asia, & Italy, in the Battell at Delphos, the Glorious remembraunce whereof kindlet in them a greater desire of liberty,

While

While these thinges were a doinge in the meane tyme the Messenians, and the Acheans fell first at contention, & anone after to plaine Battell for the soueraynty.

The content
berreue the
Messenians &
the Acheans.

In this battell Philopemenes the noble graund Captaine of the Acheans was take prisoner, not through his owne faulte because he durste not fyghte for sauinge of his lyfe, but as hee was about to bynge his men in aray that were scattered, in the leapinge of a Dyche his Horse ouerthrew, and so his Enemies clustered about him, and tooke him ere hee coulde recouer by againe. And yet the Messenians when they found him ouerthowen, whyther it were for feare of his Prowesse, or for reuerence of his estate, durst not kill him. Therefore as thongh by takinge of him they had finished all the Warre, they led him lyke a Prisoner about all the City in manner of a Triumphy, and the People ranne out by heapes to meete hym, as if their owne Captayne, and not the Captayne of their Enemies had bin cōpyngge. And I beleue the Acheans would not haue bin moze desirous to haue sene him if he had gotten the vpper bande, than were the Messenians his Enemies, to beholde him a Prisoner. For they led hym into a Theatre, to the entente they might all beholde hym, whom they thought an vncredible, and vnpowable matter to bee taken. From thence they conueyed him to Prison where for shame of the Villany they had offered such a worthy Estate, they gaue him poyson: which hee dranke vvith as meary a Cheere as if he had wonne the Victory. But first hee asked whither Lycortas the Lieutenant of the Acheans (whom he knew to be the man of best knowledge in feates of armes next vnto himselfe,) had escaped in safety or no.

The inuincible
courage of philo-
pemenes at
his death.

When he vnderstode that he was escaped, he sayde, the World goeth not altogether against the Acheans, & vvith that word he gaue by the ghoste. But ere it was longe after the Warre was renewed, in which the Messenians beinge vanquished, suffered worthy punishment for purtyng Philo-

The death of
Antiochus.

Philopemenes to Drach. In the meane season Antiochus king of Syria, beinge soe overcharged with tribute that he should pay to the Romaines, & seinge hymselfe hampered and burdened, wth ther it were that hee were compelled soe want of monye, or that he were allured with covetousnesse, because he hoped that vnder pretence of the necessity which he was put to soe the payment of the tribute he should be hild the better excused if he committed sacrilege, hee assembled an Army, & in the nyght tyme assaulted the Temple of Iupiter of Dodon, which attempt was betrayed, and he wth all his hoste was slayne by the Inhabitantes of the countrey & resorted to the rescue.

The modesty
of Demetrius
wth p^{er}fect
thereof.

At Rome, wth many citties of Grece were come thither to complaine of the iniuries that Phillip King of Macedone had done vnto them, and that there was great contention in wordes in the Senate house, betweene Demetrius the sonne of Phillippe sent thither by his Father to make his excuse to the Senate, and the ambassadours of the Cities: the yong man beinge confounded wth the noise and exclamation of the appellantes, sodenly hild his peace. Then the Senate beinge moued with his modest shamefastnesse, (soe the which hee had bin well becloued of all men befoze times when he lay in hostage at Rome,) gaue iudgement on his syde. And so Demetrius obtained Pardon soe for his father, not by defendinge his right, but by the helpe of his shamefastnesse. And hercof the kynge was aduertised by the decree of the senate, to ch^{er}entent hee should vnderstand, hee was not acquitted as guiltlesse, but rather pardoned soe for his sonnes sake, which thinge purchased vnto Demetrius, not thanke soe for his behaviour in that ambassage, but hatred though the maliciousnes of backbiters. For wth his brother Perces, who sought by all meanes to surpaze him,) it procured him enuy, and wth his father (when he knew the occasion of his acquittall) it procured him displeasure: disdaininge that the person of his sonne should be of moze force wth the Senate, than the

Virtue procu-
reth enuy.

authoritie of the father, or the estimation of his estate beinge a king. Perces therfore perceiuing his fathers disease, made complaints dayly vnto him of his brother Demetrius, and first brought him in mistrust wth him, and shortly after in bitter Displeasure, obiectinge agaynst hym that he sought the friendship of the Romaines to betray his Father.

Where shall a
man haue a
worfe neygh-
bour: then she
bringeth from
home.

At the last hee surmised that hee went about treason, soe the proofe wherof he brought in record, and suborned false witnesses to hypocrite the crime that he charged him wth. By meanes wherof hee compelled his father to murder his owne sonne, and brought all the court in sorow, and heauinesse. After Demetrius was thus put to death, (the party beinge dispatched oute of the way, whom hee feared as his enemy) Perces begaune to be not onely moze slacke in doinge his duety, but also moze stubborn agaynst his father behauing hymselfe, not like an heire, but like a kinge. Philip beinge soe offended wth his misdeuour, bewailed the death of Demetrius very vnpartiently from day to day. And by reason mistrustinge hymselfe to be deceyued by cautele and treason, hee put the witnesses to torture.

Through which hauinge bouted out their treason, hee was vexed as much wth the wickednesse of Perces, as wth the vnderferued death of Demetrius. And he had punished him soe for his Laboure had not death prevented hym of his purpose. For shortly after, through very sorow and penituenesse of hart, he fel sicke and dyed, leauinge behinde him great furniture soe for w^{arres} agaynst the Romaines, the which Perces after wards used. Moreover he had assured the Frenchme, called Rascias, to take his part, & was minded to haue made greuous warres vpon the Romaines, if he had not dyed. For the Frenchmen after the vnforgotten battell at Delphos, (in the which the Wrath of God, did cheyem moze displeasure than the puissance of their enemies) hauinge lost their Captayne Brenne, fled lyke outlawes, some into Asia, and some into Thrace. From thence they

The death of
Philip king of
Macedone.

What Nations
Perces procu-
red to take hye
part agaynst the
Romaines.

they retired into their native countrey, by the very same way they came out. A certayne of them rested at the meeting of the Rhyvers of Danowe and Saye, and called themselves Rascians. The people of Languedocke, beinge returned into their old countrey of Tolouse, and there stricken with a pestilent murreyne, could not recover their health, untill such tyme as by th' admonishment of their Southsayers, they had throwne into the lake of Tolouse, all the gold and silver that they had gotten in the warres, by the robbing and spoilinge of Temples. At which Scypio the Romaine Consull, longe tyme after tooke away euery penny. There was of golde, a hundred and tenne thousand pound weight, and of silver fifty hundred thousand pound weight: which sacriledge was after ward the confusion of Scypio and his host. Anone after there followed the warre of the Cymbrians agaynst the Romaines, as it were to punishe them for takinge away of the holpe Money. A great number of the people of Languedock, beinge enticed with the sweetenes of the pray, (as men wont to lye altogether vpon the spoyle) went into Illyria, and there hauinge spoiled the Istrians, rested in Pannonie. It is reported that the nation of the Istrians, descended from the men of Colchus, that were sent by kinge Etas, to pursue the Argonantes, and Iason that led away his daughter by force. Who entring out of the Sea of Pontus into the ryuer of Istre, and so directly into the ryuer Say, following the Argonantes, at the hard beeles, caried their shippes vpon their shoulders, ouer the toppes of the Mountaynes, euen vnto the shoer of the Adriatike Sea, which thynge they vnderstoode, that the Argonantes for the length of their shippes, had done before them. But when the men of Colchos could not finde them, (whither it were for feare of the kinge, or for tediousnes of the longe saylinge) they setteled themselves nere vnto the Citie Aquilea, and called themselves Istrians, after the name of the Ryuer,

The punishment
of sacriledge.

The original of
the Istrians.

into whych they first entered out of the Sea. The Daces also are the 3rd of the Gotes: who with Olor their kinge, bringe vanquished in battell by the Baltharcs, were put to this penance for their cowardyse, that woen they shoulde take their sleepe, they shoulde lay their heades, where their sette shoulde lye, and serue their wyues in such sorte, as their wyues were wonte to serue them.

Cowardise punished
with reproche.

Which penalty layd vpon them by the commaundement of their king they shoulde not be so bold to infringe, before they had by their manhoode, put away the slaunder purchased by their former cowardyse. Perles therfore, beinge crowned king in his father Philips dead, stirred all these nations, to take bys part agaynst the Romaines. In y mean while, there arole warre betwene Prusias, (vnto whom Hanniball was fled: after y peace was concluden betwene Antiochus, and the Romaines) and Eumenes: the which warre, Prusias (breakinge the league vpon trust that hee had in Hanniball) first moue. For when the Romaines (amonge other articles of peace) put in the deliuerance of Hanniball for one: the kinge gaue him warninge of it, and he fled into Candie.

War betwene
Prusias & Eumenes.

In which tyme, when hee had lyued quietly a longe tyme, and sawe that Men grudged at him for his greate wealth and rychesse: he filled portes with Lead, and sette them in the Temple of Diana, as a bowe for the prosecution of his lyfe and good fortune. By meanes whereof the Citizens hauinge no mistrust of his doinges, in as much as they beleued that they had bys rychesse for a pledge: hee went to Prusias, caryinge all his Golde wyth him, poured into Images of Tymber, least if his rychesse shoulde be espyed, he myght happen, to be put in Acoperoy of his lyfe for them.

The pollicy of
Hanniball in
sparing himself.

Afterwarde when Eumenes had overcome Prusias in Battell vpon the lande, and that Prusias woulde try the

Hannibals policy.

aduenture of the sea, Hanniball by a newe deuise was the occasion that he gat the victory. For he caused of all kindes of Serpentes to bee put into Carden Pottes, and in the mids of the Battell cast them into th' Enemies shippes.

This policy seemed at the firste to the men of Pontus, to be but a mockery to leaue weapons & fight with earthe Pottes. But when the Serpents began to swarme about them in the shippes, they were so troubled with the doubtfull daunger, that they wist not what to do, & so they gaue their enemy the vpper hand.

The death of Hanniball.

When tidings hereof came to Rome, the Senate sent Ambassadors to cease the strife betwene both the kinges, and demanded to haue Hanniball yelued vnto them. But Hanniball hauinge knowledge of the matter, postponed himselfe, and dyed ere the Ambassadors coulde come by him.

The commendation of Hanniball.

This yeare was notable for the deatnes of three of the most puissant captaynes in all the whole worlde. that is to say, of Hanniball, Philopemenes, & Scipio Africanus. Of which it is wel known that Hannibale, neither in the time that Italy quaked to see hym thunderinge lyke a Tempest in the Romaine Empire, nor when hee was returned to Carthage: and helde the sonerapnty, did euer spe downe to his meat, or drinke about a pinte and a halfe of Wine at a meale. And as for chastity he kept it so vndefiled among so many Prysoners as hee had, that a man woulde sweare hee had neuer bin bozne in Affricke. Certes hee was of that modesty and Government, that all be it he had sundry kindes of People to rule in his host, yet his Soule toures neuer went about to Betray him; neyther coulde hee be entrapped by any policy, bothe which chinges his enemies ful often attempted agaynst him.

The contents of the xxxiii. Booke.

Paul^e Emili^e encountereth with Perces & valiant demeanor of Cato Perces is overcome & taken with his sons, flyinge towarde Samothrace, with whom Thempire of Macedone endeth. The noble men of Etole with their wyues and children are led prisoners to Rome.



The Romaines accomplished & warres of Macedone with far lesse trouble then they didde the Warres of Carthage: but the Warres was so muche the more honourable, as the Macedones excelled the Carthaginenses in renowne and estimation.

The preparation of the Romaines & of Philip one against another.

For they were furthered partly with the gloze of the Conquest of the Caste, and in especialllye with the ayd and helpe of all kynges. And therfore the Romaines made forth a greater number of menne of Warre, and also sent for succours to Masinissa kyng of Numidie & to all other they considered. Furthermoze they charged Eumenes kyng of Bythina to help them with all the power he was able to make. Perces besides his host of Macedones (who by the opinion of al men were accepted invincible) had in his treasure and in his store houses therewith al to mayntayne ten yeares warre; prepared before hand by his father. By meanes wherof being puffed up with pryde and forgetting what chance his father hadde before him, he willed his men to consider the aunient renounce of Alexander. The firste encounter was of horsemen; in which Perces gettinge the vpper hand, procured himselfe the fauor of all men, which before stode in doubt what way to encline, because they wist not which way the worlde wold goe. Nevertheless hee sent Ambassadors to the Romain Consul, to request peace as they had before graunted to his father when he was vanquished, promising to pay the charges of the warre, as if he hadde bene o-

uercome. But the Consul Sulpitius propounded as foze conditions as if he had bene banquished inbede. While these thynges were a doing the Romaynes for dread of so dangerous a warre, created Acemilius Paulus. Confull & made him extraordinaryly Liuetenante of the wars of Macedone. Who as sone as he came to the army, made no long delayere he encountered with his ennemyes. The night before the battel should bee fought the Moone was Eclipsed. All men indged it to be a sorrowful foetoken to Perles, as which signified that The myre of Macedone shew fast to an ende.

The Eclips of
the moe.

The valiauntes
M. Cato,

In that conflict M. Cato the sonne of Cato the Dia-
tor, as he was fighting among the thickest of all his enne-
myes: fell of his horse, and was sayne to fight a foze: for
when he was down, a bande of his enemyes enclosed him
about with horrible noyse to haue kyled him as he laye
on the ground. But he recovered himselfe quickly, and
made great slaughter amonge them, For while his enne-
myes clustred together on all sides to dispatche him, alone
as he strake at one of their noble men his sword flew out
of his hand into the mys of his enemyes. To recover þ
which, hee throwed himselfe with his target, and in cho-
pen sight of both the armies, thruste himselfe in amonge
his enemyes weapons and hauyng recovered his sword
with the receit of manye woundes, returned to his owne
fellows, with a greate shout of the whole feld. The re-
soure of his compayn ensuwing his bold example wan þ
victory. King Perles fledde out of the feld, and with ten
thousand Talentes sayled to Samothrace: whom Cneus
Octanius being sent by the Consul, to pursue him, toke
with his two sonnes Alexander & Phillip, & brought
them prisoners to the Confull. Macedone, from þ time
of Caranus who first raygned ther, vnto Perles who was
the last, had thirty kynges, vnder whose gouernance it
continued, by the space of nyne hundred twenty and thre
yeres, but it held the Souerayne no moze but a hundred
fower

Perles flieth &
and is takē pri-
soner with his
childre.

The end of the
Monarchi of
Macedone.

fower score and twelue yeares. After that it came in sub-
jection to the Romaines: Officers were appointed in e-
uery Citie and it was set at liberty receyvinge of Maile þ
Lawes which they vse at this day. The Senatours of all
the Cities of Aetoly with their wiues and children (which
hitherto had remayned as neuters) were sent to Rome, &
there deteyned a long time because they should not work
any alteration in their country, vntil at length after ma-
ny peres entreatice, by often Ambassadors sent from the
Cities to the Senate of Rome, euery man was dismissed
into his owne coudrye.

The contentes of the xxxiiii. booke.

S He Romaines subdue the Acheas Corinth is beatē down
Antiochus maketh warre against Ptolomy king of Egypt,
& driueth him out of his country. P. Popilius is sent Am-
bassador to byd him departe out of Egypt. The severity of
Popilius in executing his commission. Antiochus dieth, his
brother Demetrius stealeth priuely from Rome, and killing his yong
Nepheue surpeth the crowne. Prusias is deposed and murdered by
his owne sonne.



T He Carthaginēses & the Ma-
cedones, beinge subdued and the po-
wer of the Aetolians weakened by the
captiuitie of the noble mē, the Ache-
ans only of al Grece, semed to the Ro-
mains to bee at that time of so much
power not for the ouer great wealte
of euery Citie by themselves, but for the earnest agree-
ment of them all together. For although the Acheans be
deuided by Cities, (as it were into members) yet they haue
one Copozacion, and one kind of gouernment, and if any
wounge be offered to any one Citie, the residue make all
the power they can to redresse it.

The vvarres of
the Romaines a-
gainst the Ache-
ans.

C. liii.

Their

Therefore as the Romaines sought to picke some quarrel
of warres against the: by fortune a complaint was brought
against them in due season by the Lacedemonians, whose
selves (for a mutual hatred betwene the two peoples) the
Acheans had foraged. The Senate made answer to the
Lacedemonians, that they would send Ambassadors into
Greece, to see how their confederates were delt withal, &
to defend them from taking any wrong. But the Ambassa-
dors had prively in charge to disolue the agreeable consent
of the Acheans, and to sette euery city free from other, to
the intent they might the easier be brought in subiection:
and if any cities shewed themselves stout, they should be
compelled by force. The Ambassadors therfore calling
the princes of all the cities before them to Corynthe, re-
cited the decre of the Senate, declaring what they would
counsell them to do. They sayd it was expedient for them
that every Citty should be governed by their own lawes
and by their owne customes. When this was once noty-
fied, they were in such a rage, that like mad men, they kil-
led al the forrain people within the realme. And they
had done as much to the Romain Ambassadors also, if
they had not had intelligence of the hurly burly, and shif-
ted for themselves by flight. As soon as tydings hereof
came to Rome, forthwith the Senat appointed Mūnius
the Consull to make warre against the Acheans. Who
without further delay, conuoying thither his armye, and
hauing stoutly provided for all thinges beforehand, offer-
red his ennemys battaile. But the Acheans (as though
they had take a matter of no importance in hande by ma-
king warre against the Romaines were utterly carelesse
& sayd for nothing. For minding the booty and not the bat-
telle, they brought wagons with them to lade them home
with the spoile of the ennemys, and set their wyues, &
chiloxen in the mountaynes to behold the conflict.

But when they came to hand strokes, they were slaine
ryght downe before thei frendes faces, and left them a
[sorrows

loosfull remembraunce of grieve all the dayes of thei
lyfe. Thei wyues and chiloxen also beyng aflokers on
made captiues, were a pray to the enemye. The chiefe cy-
tye Corynthe was beaten downe. All the people ther shuld
by the by, to the intent that by the ensample therof, the
other cities might be afraid to make any insurrection.

While these thinges were a doing, Antiochus Kinge of
Syria made war vpon Ptolomy the elder his sisters sonne
king of Egypt, who was giuen altogether to sloth, & so
vnweeldy through daily riot, that he not only omitted al
thinges appertayning to the estate and office of a king,
but also by meanes of suer much pamperinge by of hym
selfe, became in maner voppe that reason which ought
to be in man. Beyng therfore driuen out of his kingdom,
he fled to Alexandria, to Ptolomye his yonger brother,
with whom hee parted his kingdom, and so they sent Am-
bassadors ioynly together to the Senate of Rome, re-
questing helpe by vertue of the league that was betwene
them. The Senate beyng moued at the sute of þ brethren
sent Pub. Popilius ambassadour to Antiochus to wil him
to abstaine from Egypt, or if he were all ready entered, to
auoyd thence. When he had found him in Egypt, and that
the kinge offered to kisse him, (for at such times as Antio-
chus lay in hostage at Rome, amonge others he had Po-
pilius in great reuerence) Popilius willed him: to let cease
all priuate friendship, while matters concerning his coun-
trye were in hand. And therewithall drawing forth the de-
cre of the Senate, and deliuerpng it vnto him (when hee
saw him pause at the matter and aske him leysure to
consult with his frendes) Popilius with a wand that he
had in his hande, drew a wide circle aboute him, wplyng
him to call his frendes to counsell to him, and not to set
foote out of the place before he had giuen the Senate a
direct answer, whether he would haue prate or warre
with the Romaines. This rigorousnesse so much abated
the kinges courage, that hee made answer he was con-
tents

Corynthe is
beaten downe,

Antiochus
maketh vvaie
vpon Ptolomy
king of Egypt,

An example
of an vncorrupt
mind & of
great severity.

The Acheans
doe fish before
the Net.

The death of
Antiochus.

tent to bee ruled by the Senate. Antiochus after his returne into his kingdom deceased, leaving his heire a very babe. Whom the realme assigned to the gouernance of certayne protectours. Whereupon his vnckle Demetrius, who laye in hostage at Rome, hearing of the death of his brother Antiochus, went vnto the senate, saying that hee came thither for an hostage duringe his brothers life, after whose decease hee knewe not for whom he should lye any longer in hostage. Wherefore he ought of right, to be discharged, that he mighte goe challenge the Kingdome, whiche as by the vniuersall lawe of all nations, it appertained to his elder brother, so now of reason: it was due to hym, because he was of more yeares of discretion then the babe. When hee perceyued the Senate would not licence him to goe, (because they were of opinion, that the kyngdome should remayne in more safte in the childe than in hym,) vnder pretence of retyng a huntinge, hee stole to Ostia, and there with a fewe of his retinue priuely tooke shippinge. As soone as hee arrived in Syria, hee was receiued with great ioy and fauoure of all men, and the protectours killing their warde did put hym in possession of the kingdom. The same time almost, Prusias, kinge of Bythinia, wente about secretly to kyll his owne sonne Nicomedes, for none other cause but onely to aduance his younger sonnes that he had begotten vpon his second wife, & were as then at Rome. But the matter was betrayed to the yonger man, by them that should haue done the dedde, whyche counsayled him, that for as much as his father by his cruelty had prouoked him thereto, hee should prevent the conspiracie, and turne the myschance vpon the deuplers heade. It was no harde matter to perswade hym. Therefore as soone as hee was called home into his fathers Realme, hee proclaymed himselfe kyng. Prusias beinge depoyed by his owne sonne and made a priuate person, was forsaken even of his owne seruantes. And as he laye hydden in a secret place, his

Demetrius
stealeth, from
Rome, and ob-
taineth the
kingdom of
Syria.

Prusias dig-
geth a pit for his
sonne, and fal-
leth therein
himself.

Some

sonne as cruelly slue him, as he had wickedly commaunded his sonne to be put to death before.

The contents of the xxxv. Booke.

Demetrius maketh warre against Ariarathes king of Capadocia & supporteth his brother Holofernes against him, who after warde for treason prepared he kepeth in prison, one Ptolemaeus is suborned as the son of Antiochus by the name of Alexander against Demetrius, by whom Demetrius is deprived of life and kingdom. Demetrius the sonne of Demetrius recouereth his fathers kyngdome.



Demetrius the Usurper of the kingdom of Syria, supposynge it to be a dangerous matter, if vpon his new aduancement he should geue himselfe to tolenes determined to enlarge his kingdom, and to augment his riches by subduinge his neighbours. Whereupon for displeasure he bare to Ariarathes kinge of Capadocia for refusinge his sister in marriage he maintained against his brother Holofernes, who being wrongfully driven out of this realme, resorted to him for succour. And for ioy that hee had so honest a title to make warre he purposed to set him in possession of the kyngdome agayne. But Holofernes beinge of a cankered nature, made a compact with the Antiochiens, who were at that tyme defended with Demetrius, and practysed wth them to depyue him of his kyngdome that went about to restore him into his kyngdome. Demetrius hauynge knowledge therof, spared his life because Ariarathes should not be deliuered from feare of his brothers war.

An example of
singular Ingra-
titude,

But

The hatred of
diuers kynges
against Demetrius.

Neuerthelesse he caused hym to be apprehended and put him in prison in the city Seleucia, notwithstandinge, the Antiochiens were not so discouraged by the detection of their conspiracy, that they would cease from their rebellion. Therfore by the helpe of Ptolomy king of Egypt Antalus kyng of Asia, and Ariarathes king of Cappadocia, at which Demetrius had by his warres stirred against him, they suborned one Prompalus a mā of the basest sorte, to chalenge the kingdom by battell as though it had ben his by ryght of inheritaunce. And to the entent there shoulde want nothing to spyte Demetrius with all, they proclaymed him by the name of Alexander, & reported him to be son of Antiochus. So sore hated was Demetrius among all men, that by an vniuersal consent they not onely gaue his aduersarye the power of a kyng, but also attributed vnto him nobility of lygnage. Alexander therfore by meanes of this wonderfull exchange of thinges, forgettinge his own former villainage, and being accompanied wth the power (almost of all the whole East) made warre agaynst Demetrius, whom hee vanquished and depyched him both of lyfe and kyngdome. Now hee se, Demetrius wanted no courage to withstand the byrne. For at the first encounter hee putte his ennemyes to flighte, and when the kynges renewed the battell agayne, he slue many thousands of their men in the field; and yet at the last (beinge of an invincible courage) hee was slayne sightynge moste valiantly among the thickest of his ennemyes. In the beginning of the warre Demetrius had committed to the charge of his hoste of Guydus in Lycia, his two sonnes & a great sum of Gold, to the entent they myght be both out of jeopardy of the warre, and also (if neede required) be preferred to reuenge theyr fathers death. The elder of them named Demetrius, beinge past childe age, and hearynge of the ryotous demeanour of Alexander (who for the ioye he had in his richesse vnhoped for, and in the ornaments of an other mannes felicity, kept himselfe like a cowardly

Demetrius the
son of Demetrius
recoureth
his fathers king-
dome.

carpet knyght at home in his Palace among a company of Concubines and boyeths, by the helpe of the Candians, assailed him carelesse and fearing no hostility at all. The Antiochians also to make a mēces with their newe Benefices, for the old displeasure done to his father, yelded the selues vnto him. Whereover his fathers vouldours being inflamed in fauour towarde the younge Prince, & preferringe the conscience of their oth made to his father, before their promise made to the new proud king, reuolued wth al their ancient signes to Demetrius. And so Alexander being wth like rage of fortune ouerthrowne as hee was lifted vp, was in the first Battell vanquished and slaine, and so suffered due punishment, both in the behalfe of Demetrius whom hee had slayne, & in the behalfe of Antiochus, whose Rothe hee had slandered.

The contentes of the. xxxvj. Booke.

Demetrius maketh Warre against the Parthians, and is taken prisoner. Trylo vsurpeth the kingdom of Syria. Antiochus the brother of Demetrius wresteth it out of his handes, & subdueth the Iewes. The originall of the Iewes. The commendation of Ioseph, he going of the Israelites out of Egypt vnder Moyses, the halovvinge of the Saboth day, the fruitfullnesse of Iury, with a description of the vale of Hiericho, and of the dead Sea. Of Antalus kinge of Pargamus, of his cruelty, and his madnesse, & howe hee made the people of Rome his Hey. e. Aristonilcus the battard sonne of Eumenes challengeth the Cr. vnto and is overcome by the Romaynes.



Demetrius hauing recovered his fathers kingdom, was himselfe also corrupted through the prosperous successe of his affayres. And through the inclination to vice that is commonly wont to be in youth, he fel to sloth, and Tolence. By meanes whereof, hee purchased himselfe, as much hated at all in as he was for his cowardnesse, as by his father hee gotten for his valournesse. Whereupon y. reuynge

Demetrius maketh Warre against the Parthians.

Demetrius taken prisoner, & kept like a kinge.

Trifo vsurpeth.

Antiochus the brother of Demetrius recovereth his brothers kingdome.

howe Cities euery where beganne to withdraue their obedience (to th'entent he might wype out the spot of cowardise hee determined to make warre vpon the Parthians. Whose cominge the people of the East were not unwilling to behold both by reason of the cruelty of Arsaces kinge of the Parthians, and also because the countreys, beinge enured with the gentle entreatance of the auncient Dominion of the Macedones, could not well away wth the pride of the new Emppye of the Parthians. By meanes whereof, beinge aided with the power of the Parthians, Emylians, & Bactrians, he hauqthed the Parthians in many Battels. Neuerthelesse at the last, beinge deceaued vnder a counterfayt colour of peace, he was taken Prisoner, and by that throughe open face of the cities that had rebelled, and shewed in mockage to the people that had rebelled: as who should say they should see what a one hee was, whom they had so highly fauoured. Afterward hee was sent into Hircanie, and there courteously entertained, accordinge to his former estate.

Whyle these thinges were a doinge, in the meane time Tryfo, who throughe great suite had obteyned to be admitted Protector ouer Antiochus sounne in Lawe to Demetrius: kyled the childe, and vsurped the Kingdome of Syria, which hee enioyned a greate whyle. But at the length, when the fauoure that men bare him when hee was newe crowned began to weare oute: Antiochus the brother of Demetrius (who all that time was brought vp in Asia) beinge but a very childe, overcame him in battel, and so the kingdome of Syria was reduced againe to the stocke of Demetrius. Antiochus therefore remembreinge, that both his father was hated for his pride, and his brother despised for his thoughtfulness: (because hee woulde not fall into the same vices himselfe) after hee had taken in marriage Cleopatra his Brothers Wife, he with all diligence pursued the Cytties that had rebelled from his brother at the beginninge of his Regne, and hauinge sub-

dued them, brought them againe to the obedience of th' Empire. Also hee subdued the Iewes, who in the tyme of his father Demetrius, takinge Weapon in hande, had pulsed their Neckes from subiection of th' Empire of Macedone, and set themselves at liberty. And they grew to such strength, that after the decease of this man, there was no kinge of Macedone able to keepe them in obedience, but that they made a Ruler amonge themselves, & distressed all Syria wth great warres. The originall of the Iewes was Damasco, which is the noblest City of all Syria, and out of it the kinges of Syria also fetch their Pedegree from Semyramis: The City had that name of a Kinge called Damascus, in honour of whom, the Syrians worshipped the Sepulchre of his wife Aratos for a Temple, and reuerenced her with much deuotion, and Superstitious Ceremonies for a Goddesse.

The originall of the Iewes.

After Damascus, reygned Abraham, Israll & Moyses. But Israll was more notable then his aunccestors by reason of the signifiull increase of his ten sonnes. Therefore hee deuided his people into ten kingdomes, and deliuered it to his sonnes, callinge them all Iewes after the name of Iuda, which deceased anone after the deuision, the remembraunce of whom, hee commaunded all the rest to haue in reuerence. (His portion was the head of all the other) the yongest of his brothers was Ioseph, of whose excellent Witt his brothers beinge afrayde, laid wait for him priuely, and solde hym to Marchauntes straungers, by whom hee was caried into Egypt. Where throughe the sharpnesse of his Witte hee so profited in the Magicall Artes, that wthin a shorte space, hee became in greate fauoure with the Kinge. For hee was both a very witte diuinoz of wonders and soetokens, and also hee was the first that inuented the interpretation of Dreames. Nea therewas nothinge appertayninge eyther to God or man, wherein he seemed not to haue had exact knowledge. In so much that hee foresaw the barrennesse of the Land, many

The Hystorie of Ioseph in Egypt.

years

peares before it cam: and at Egypt had perished for hun-
ger, if the kinge through his counsell had not geuen strait
Commaundemente, to lay vp in store the Coyne of many
yeares before hand. Finally he was so well tried, that his
answers seemed not to be geue by man, but by God. His
sonne was Moyse, who besides the Inheritance of his
fathers knowledge, was also comended for his excellent
Beauty and personage, But the Egyptians beinge stricken
with a great Itch, & Scabbednesse, to the extent the con-
tagion should infect no mo, by the warnyng of an Oracle,
bane him, and al the infected out of the borders of Egypt.
Moyse therfore being made Captayne of his banished peo-
ple, sle away the halowes of the Egyptians: which ha-
lowes the Egyptians entendinge to recouer by force, were
compelled by tēpests to retire home again. Moyse at lōnes
reloving to Damasco the native country of his ancestors,
went by into the mountayn Synai: in which, (forasmuch
as he first rested there after seven dayes fasting, & traueil
of himselfe, and his people through the desertes of Arabie)
hee hallowed the seventh day, and called it after the maner
and vsage of the countrey, the Saboth day commaunding
it to bee kept Fastyng day for euer after, because that, that
day made an ende of all their trauayle, and hunger. And
in memorial that they were ouercome out of Egypt, for feare
of Infection, because they would not be bated for the same
cause where they should inhabite they made a lawe, neuer
after to communicate with straungers: which thinge ry-
nge at the first vpon good consideration, by litle, and litle
grew into custome of Superstition. After Moyse, his
brother Aruas was consecrated, first Highpriest of the Cere-
monies of Israell, and anon after Kinge. And euer after
it remayned as a custome amonge the Iewes, that they that
were their Highpriests were also their Kinges. Though
whose Iustice topped with Religion, it is incredible how
greatly they encreased. The Enrichyng of the Iewes cam
by the reuenues of Balme, which groweth no where,

An true tale
Moyse, & of his
goinge of the
Iraclies out of
Egypt.

The hallovy-
ng of the sa-
bath day.

Aaron.

but only in their countrey. For there is a certayne valey,
inclosed rounde about with continuall hylls, as it were
Walles, lyke vnto Gardynes. The place conteyninge two
hundred thousande Acres, is named Iericho. In the same
valey there is a wood, notable, both for the fruitfulnessse
and for the pleasauntnesse thereof. For it is beset with
Date trees, and Balme trees. The Balme trees are lyke in
makinge and growinge, vnto Pitch trees, sauinge that they
be much lower, and are dressed as vines are. These at cer-
tayne times of the yere do sweate out Balme. But the place
is not so much to be wondered at for the fruitfulnessse, as
for the coolenesse thereof. For whereas throughout al the
Clymate of that Countrey, the Sunne is exceedinge whot
there is in that place, as it were a naturall warmenesse of
the Aire, and a continuall shadowe.

In this countrey is a Lake, which for the greatnes there-
of, and for the vnmonable standing of the water, is called
the dead sea. For neither is it moued with the Wyndes,
by reason, the bytumen resisteth the force of them, where
withall the water is made immouable: neyther can it bee
sayled vpon, because all thynges wantynge lyfe, synke
downe to the bottome, and it wil not beare any substance,
onlesse it bee overlaid with Alūme. Xerxes Kyng of
Persia first subdued the Iewes. Afterward they and the
Persians also, were brought in subiecton by great Alexā-
der, and continued a longe tyme vnder the Gouvernaunce
of the Empire of Macedone. Lastely rebellinge agaynst
Demetrius, by seekinge the frendship, and Alliance of the
Romaines, (who at that time did cut large thonges of o-
ther mens Lether,) they were the firste of all the Nacions
of the East, that recouered liberty. Duringe the same
time that there was such alteration of the Kingdome of
Syria amonge the new kinges. Attalus Kinge of Asia, di-
uided his most flourishing Kingdome (which he had re-
ceyued of his Uncle Eumenes,) with the slaughter of his
friends,

Of Balme
growinge on-
ly in Ierury.

The descriptiō
of the countrey
of Iericho.

The dead Sea.

Who first sub-
dued the Iewes.

The doinges of
Attalus Kinge
of Asia the Ies-
ser.

The sorrowful
repentance of
Attalus.

friends, and the execution of his kinsfolke, falsely surmi-
sing, one while, that the olde Lady his mother, another
while, that his own wife Beronice were by their Sorcery
and Enchaunmētes killed. After the committinge of this
wicked and outrageous cruelty, he put on filthy Apparel
and let his head and his Beard grow longe, like as offen-
ders are wont to do in Prison: he would not come abroad:
he would not shew himselfe to the people: hee would not
make any myght in his House no nor shewe any lykely-
hoode of a man that is in his right wittes: so that it was
not to be thought, but that he punished himselfe, to pacify
the Ghostes of such as he had wrongfully put to death.
Thereupon leauinge the gouernment of the Kingdome,
he gaue himselfe to makinge of Gardens, & sowed Seedes,
settinge Herbes and Trees mingled together, at which
he would stepe in benemous liquors, and send as speciall
presentes to his friends. Furthermore he gaue himselfe
to the Study of Smythes craft, & to Foudinge of Metals,
maruelously delightinge in Meltinge, and Casting of
Brasse. Finally entendinge to make his Mother a Toubie,
as he was earnestly occupied about the same, he caught a
Surfet by the heate of the Sunne, of which he dyed with
in seuen dayes after. By his last will hee made the people
of Rome his Heire. But there was one Aristonicus the
sonne of Eumenes, not begotten in lawfull wedlocke, but
bozne of a single womā of Ephesus, the daughter of a cer-
taine Dynastell, who after the death of Attalus, tooke up-
pon him the Kingdome of Asia, as if it had bin his by right
of Inheritaunce. When he had fought many prosperous
Battles, agsynst such of the Cities as would not yeelde
themselues vnto him for feare of the Romaines, & there-
upon seemed now to be rightfull kinge in deede: Licinius
Crassus the Consul, was appoynted to haue the charge of
Asia: who hauinge more minde of Attalus riches, than of
the Warre, (by aduenturing in the later end of y^e Winter,
without

The death of
Attalus.

Aristonicus v-
surper h.

The reward of
counsaile.

without good order was ouertumme, and with the losse
of his lyfe, suffered due punishment for his rashe coun-
saile. In his tyme was sent the Consul Perpenna,
who in the first encounter vanquished Aristonicus, and
tooke him prisoner, and also shipped all the riches of Atta-
lus, belonginge to the Romaines, by force of Legacie, and
conuered them to Rome. The which his successor, Mar-
cus Aquilius the Consul, takinge soze to hart, made al the
hast and speede he coulde deuise, to take Aristonicus oute
ought rather to haue the honour of Triumph for vanqui-
shinge him. But the death of Perpenna brake the Course of
the Consules: and so Asia beinge made the right of
the Romaines, with his riches, sende also
his bodyes vnto Rome.

* *

V 2

The

¶ The contentes of the xxxvij. Booke.

THE Massyliens entreate the Romaines, to release their displeasure against the Phocenses, the Romaines rewarde the kinges that ayded them against Aristonicus. The cruelty of Loadice towards her owne children. The Birth, Education, & Daungers of Mythridates: he subdueth the Scythians, he trauaileth through Asia disguised, he putteth his Wyfe to death for goinge about to poyson him, his Warlike conuerfation, he entereth in league with Nicomedes Kinge of Bythinia, and they ioyntly conquer Paphlagonia, he subdueth also Galatia contrary to the prohibition of the Romaines, Nicomedes altereth the name of his sonne, and proclaymeth him Kinge of Paphlagonia.

After that Aristonicus was taken prisoner, the Massylians sent Ambassadors to Rome, humbly requestinge Pardon for the Phocenses their Founders vpon whose City, Senate, peace and Name, the Romaines had geuen sentence that they should bee utterly rooted oute, because that both, at that time and before times, when they had Warres with Antiochus the same like deadly Enemies had euer furthered the Warre agaynst them: which request with much suite the Massylians obtayned. Thys done, they rewarded the Kinges that had ayded them agaynst Aristonicus. Unto Mythridates Kinge of Pontus, they gaue the lesser Syria, and vnto the Sonnes of Ariarathes Kinge of Cappadocia, who lost his Life in the same Battell, they gaue Licaonia and Silicia. And the People of Rome delt more faithfully with the sonnes of their Confederates, than the Mother delt with her owne Children. For by th'one the childe had his kingdome enlarged, by th'other, he was bereft of his life. For Loadice, of sixe sonnes that Ariarathes had begotten by her, (for feare, least by continuall succession in the Gouvernement of the Kingdome, some of theym might happen to come to Mans Estate) killed five of the. One of the yongest by the helpe of hys Mother, was saued from his Mothers Cruelty, who after the death of hys Lady

Loadice

The Romaines
reuarde their
partakers.

The vnnatural
cruelty of a
mother.

Loadice (for the people had put her to death for her cruelty) nioped the kingdome, alone Mythridates, also beinge surpysed by sodayne death, left a sonne behind him of his owne name, who afterwarde grew so great, that hee surmounted in estate, not onely the kinges of his tyme, but also all the kinges that had ben before him and his wars with the Romaines sixe and forty yeres together, some tyme with conquest and some tyme with losse. Whom the most expert and valiant captaynes Sylla & Lucullus, with diuers others and in fine. Cneus Pompeius ouercame in such sort, that he stil rose with greater force and promysse to renewe the wars, & by his losses seemed euer to be made more terrible to them. Finally at the length he was not vanquished as an enemy, but in his old age leaping his sonne to bee his heire, hee dispatched himselfe by wilful death in his owne kingdome, where his ancessors had reigned of long continuance. The very wonders of heauen did prognosticate what a great man he should bee for both the same yere that he was borne, and the same yere he first began his reigne, there appeared by the space of threescore and ten dayes, at both tymes such a blazing star that all the sky seemed to be on fier. For it was so big, that it occupped a quarter of the heauen and it was so bright, that it blemished the light of the Sunne, and when it rose or wente downe, it consumed four bowres at eche tyme. When he was a child his owne Gouvernours went about to destroye him setting him vpon a rough horse, and compelling him to learue to ryde & to turne. The which attempt following not they mynds as they would haue had because hys wyfe Mythridates, ruled hys horse better then was looked for in one of his age) they assayed him with poyson. Whereof he casting perilles before vpon ke repaile oftentimes by meanes wherof, he so stayed his bodye, with tried and exquisite medicines, that when he was old he would haue poysoned himselfe & could not. After this, fearyng least his enemies would compass hys

¶ iii.

thyng

Not without
desert.

Mythridates,
the great, & of
his birth, edu-
cation successe
perils & aduentures.

A Comete.

elyng by weapon, which they coulde not do by bentm, hee counterfayted a desire of huntinge where throughte by the space of fower yeres, he came not vnder any roose, eyther of house in the Cittye, or cottage in the country: but wandered by and dwayne in forrestes and woodes, and rested the night tyme in mountaynes, sometyme one where, and som tyme another, no man knowing tohere was his haunt, & enured himselfe eyther to chase or to pursue the wylde beastes on fote, and wylch some of them to encounter by playn force. By meanes wherof he both auoyded al treason, and also hardened his body to abyde all kynde of trauell and labor. Afterward when hee came to take the kyngdome vpon him, immediatly he set his mynde, not so muche too gouerning as to enlarginge the same. Therfore he mariuelous fortunatly subdued the Scythians who before that Dage wer neuer conquered, who had utterly destroyed Zopyron the captayne of greate Alexander with thyrtye thousand armed menne, which had slayne Cyrus kyng of Persia, with two hundred thousand menne of war and had put to flight Phillip king of Macedone. Being thus encreased in strength, he conquered Pontus, & consequently Cappadocia. Then with certayne of his frendes, hee went secretlye disguised out of his owne kyngdome, wythout knowledge of any man, wandring throughe Asia, betwix the situation of all the citties and Prouinces of the same. From thence hee trauailed ouer Bythinia, and as though he had bene already Lord of Asia he deuyled all thynges that myght help to further him towarde his conquest. After this, when all men beleued he had bene dead, he returned home into his owne realme, where hee found a lyttle sonne, whom Laodice his sister and wyfe, hadde brought him forth in his absence. But in the middes of the ioy that was made for his retorne and for the byrth of his Chylde, he was in daunger to be poisoned. For his sister Laodice, beleuyng him to be deade, and therupon abusing her body wylch his frendes (as though, hee mighte haue hidden his

offence,

Mythridates
subdueth the
Scythians

offence by committinge of a greater cryme) prepared a cuppe with popson to welcome him home wylchal. Therof Mythridates haupng intelligence by a Damsel, punished the offence vpon the deuilers thereof.

The wyfe of
Mythridates
purch him
in daunger of
his life.

After, when wynter oze to nigh, he spente not the tyme in feastyng, but in seates of armes: not in ydlenesse, but in exercise: not among carpet knyghtes, but eyther in iussing and tournyng, in runnyng on fote & on horsebacke, or els in wrestlyng and repall of strength among his pieres.

The exercise of
Mythridates in
the vynter
time.

Also he dayly enured his men of warre by lyke exercyse, to abyde labor and trauell as well as himselfe. By meanes wherof as he was inuincible himself, so made he his host inuincible also. Then entred he in league with Nycomedes and inuaded Paphlagonia, the whiche he conquered, and parted it with his companions. When woode was brought to the Senat, that these kyngs had subdued this country, they sent Ambassadors to them both, commaunding them to set it in like estate as they found it. Mythridates thinkyng himselfe now able ynough to matche the puissaunce of the Romains, answered proudly that his kyngdome was his fathers by inheritaunce, and that hee married, they should make alteration wylch him for it. haupng not done the lyke to his father. And he set so lyght by their Danaces, that he inuaded Galatia also Nicomedes, for asmuch as he was not able to make his party good by any tytle) answered he would surrender it to the rightfull king. And therupon chaunging the name of his owne sonne, he called him Phylomeneas by the name of the kynges of Paphlagonia. By which conueiaunce, vnder a counterfeit name, he held still the kyngdome, as though he had restored it to the right heire, The Romain Ambassadors beinge thus had in derision, returned to Rome wylch a mocke.

He conquereth
Paphlagonia.

The Romaine
ambassade to
Mythridates,
and his aun-
tyver therunto

¶.liii.

Mithridates destroyeth Ariarathes king of Cappadocia, and Nicomedes inuadeth the kingdom, Mythridates vnder pretence of helping hys sisters sonne, driueth Nicomedes out of the Realme, by a cautell: ryddeth hys said sisters sonne of his life, and maketh one of his ovvn sonnes kyng. The Cappadocians rebel & set vp Ariarathes, the brother of the king slain before, vvhom Mythridates ouercomieth, & driueth him out of the realm, the sayde Ariarathes dieth, vvhetherupō Nicomedes suborneth a beautiful yong man vnder the collour of being brother to the said Ariarathes to sue to the Senat of Rome for the kingdom. Mithridates doth the like vwith an other of his ovvne sonnes. The Cappadocians being set at liberty desire a king. Ariobarzanes is appointed by the Senat. Mythridates entereth in league vwith Tygranēs kyng of Armeny, vvhich expulseth Ariobarzanes out of Cappadocia, the Romans send theyr Liutenantes to set Ariobarzanes again in his kingdom. Mythridates maketh great preparation and furniture for the vvarres, he encourageth his souldiers and consulteth of the ordering of his vvarre. Ptolomy king of Cyrene obreining the kingdom of Ægypt after the death of his brother, vworketh most extreame cruelty against the authors of his promotion. The Ambassadors of Rome come to Alexandria, Ptolomy flieth out of Ægypt, maketh vvarre against the same, and comitteth most cursed crueltie against his ovvn children. The courtesie shewed by the king of Parthia to Demetrius, his prysoner. Demetrius stealeth avay to wife, and is set back again. Antiochus the brother of Demetrius, maketh vvarre against the parthians. Demetrius is let go into Syria, Antiochus is slain and al his host murdered by a Iodain conspiracy. Demetrius escapeth into his Kingdome.

Ambition
hath no re-
gard of kindred.



Mythridates, beginning to fall to murder, with puttinge his wife to death fyrst, determined to rpd out of the way, & children of his other sister Laodice, whose husband Ariarathes, king of Cappadocia, he had traiterously slain, by the working of Gordius. For he thought it was to no purpose to kyll the father, if the yongmen should enjoye their inheritance of the kyngdome, whiche he so sore desired for. Therefore, whiles he was busie about these matters, in the meane season Nicomedes kyng of Bythinia, invaded Cappadocia,

Cappadocia, then destitute of a head by reason of the death of the king. Whereof, when tydings came to Mythridates vnder a fayned coloz of ppteing his sister, he sent hys succor to expulse Nicomedes out of Cappadocia: But Laodice had by that time, yelved hys self to Nicomedes, vpon condition he should take hys to wyfe. Whiche thing Mythridates takynge in displeasure, dyaue the Garrisons of Nicomedes out of Cappadocia, and restored the kingdome to hys sisters sonne. Wherein he did a very wofull & etc, had ther not followed deceit, vpon the doing thereof.

Mythridates
driuech Nico-
medes out of
Cappadocia

For wthin a fewe dayes after, hee made as though he would restore Gordius into his countrie, whose he had used in slepyng of Ariarathes hoppyng that if the yong kyng would seeme to make respyence, he should then haue some quarrell to make warre vpon him, or if he were contented therewithall, that he then might dispatch the sonne by the same man that had dispatched the father. Whiche thinge when Ariarathes the yonge vnderstode to be wrought agaynst hym, takynge in displeasure that the murderer of his father should be called out of exile, (and that in especiall by his vnckle) he raysed a greate army. Mithridates therfore hauynge brought into the field xxx thousande footemenne, and ten thousande menne of armes, with syxe hundred armed chariots, and that bys aduersarye Ariarathes by the helpe of the kynges that were his neyghbours hadde as greate a power also: for feare of the vncertayne chaunce of the battell, altered bys purpose to the working of treason. And thereupon procuring the yonge man to come to communication, he had a dagger in the vpper stocke of his hose, & when the searcher that was sente by Ariarathes (as the manner of kynges is) began to feele narrowly the neather part of his belly, he had him beware that he found not another weapon thē he sought for. So by meanes of this mockery the treason was vndisclosed. Then he called Ariarathes a good waye from his frendes, as it had bin to haue secrete communication

The great treacherye of
Mithridates.

munication with hym, and there in the open sight of bothe the armies slew him, & made a sonne of his own, of the age of eight yeres king of Cappadocia, geuing him the name of Ariarathes and assigning Gordius to be his gouernor. But the Cappadocians being vexed with the cruelty and trecherie of the fornamed persones, reuolted from Mithridates, and sent for the kynges brother, whose name was Ariarathes also out of Asia where he was brought vp. Against whom Mythridates renewed the warres, & hauyng overcome him, dyaue him out of the Realm of Cappadocia. Ere it was long after, the poingman caughte a sicknesse and dyed. After his death, Nicomedes fearing least Mythridates by obtaining Cappadocia, would also inuade Bythinia as next neighbour vnto it, suborned a childe of excellent beauty (as though Ariarathes had begotten the sonnes, and not two only) to desire of the Senat of Rome the kingdom of Cappadocia, as his ryghtfull inheritance from his father.

Whereouer, he sent his wyfe Laodice to Rome, to testifie that shee bare three sonnes by Ariarathes. Wherby the thing when Mithridates knew of, he also with like vnshamefastnesse, sent Gordius vnto Rome, to auouch before the Senate, that the chylde, to whom he had deliuered the kingdom of Cappadocia, was the sonne of the same Ariarathes, wherby in the quarrell of the Romaynes was slayne in the battell against Aristonicus. But the Senat vnderstandyng the meanyng and endeuer of both the Kings, would not giue other mennes kyngdomes to vsurpers that tooke wrong names vpon them. Whereupon they tooke Cappadocia from Mythridates and to comfort hit withall, they tooke Paphlagonia from Nicomedes. And to the entent it shoulde not seeme they woulde take anye thynge from the kynges in despite of them to bestowe it vpon others: both the Nations were set at free libertie, But the Cappadocians refusyng the gifte of libertie sayd that their country could not liue without a kyng. Where-

vpon

The sonne of Mythridates is expelled out of Cappadocia.

The intended fate of Mythridates & Nicomedes before the Senat of Rome

The order taken by the Senat

vpon Ariobarzanes was appoynted by the Senate to be the kyng. There was at the same tyme, one Tyranes kyng of Armenia, kept in hostage not long before by the Parthians, and now lately remytted by them into his fathers kyngdome. Him Mithridates couet, to allure to take his part in the warres, that he had of long tyme purposed agaynst the Romaynes. Wherefore by the inuances of Gordius he perswaded him as one that knew not what it was to displease the Romaynes to make warre vpon Ariobarzanes who was a very coward. And to the entent it shoulde not seeme, he did it for any cautele or pollicy, he gaue him his daughter Cleopatra in marriage. At the comyng of Tyranes Ariobarzanes conuaying awaye all his stuffe, gat him straght to Rome: as so by the meanes of Tyranes, Cappadocia was agayne vnder the dominion of Mithridates. The same tyme died Nicomedes who son named Nicomedes also, beyng driuen out of his kingdom by Mythridates, resorted to Rome for succour vpon whose humble sute, it was decreed by the Senat, that both he & Ariobarzanes shoulde be set in possession of their kingdomes agayne. For the performance wherof Acquilus Manlius and Malthinius were sent to bee Lieutenantes of the Warre Mythridates hauyng knowledge hereof, and intending to make warre with the Romaynes, alled himselfe with Tyranes And it was couenaunted betwixt them, that Mythridates shoulde haue for his part the cyties and landes, and Tyranes shoulde haue for his share, the men and cattell, and whatsoeuer els was moueable. After this, Mythridates perceuyng what a war he had taken in hand, sent out his Ambassadors, some to the Cymbrians, some too the French grekes, some too to the Sarmatians, and some to the Bastarnes, to request them of theyr ayd and help For all these Nations had he allured a good while before, by shewyng them frendship and pleasure diuers wayes, euer since he had purposed warre agaynst the Romaynes. Whereouer he raysed an host

Ariobarzanes is made king of Cappadocia.

Mithridates is reconciled Cappadocia

Confederacye betwixt Mythridates and Tyranes, king of Armenia.

The nations solicited by Mithridates agaynst the Romaynes

of

of menne in Scythia, and armed all the Caste agaynst the Romaines. It was no greate matter for him therfore, to overcome Aquilius and Malchinius hauinge none but the men of Asia, about them. After the discomfiture of whom and of Nicomedes, all the cities were glad to seeke his fauor. There he found great plenty of gold and silver, layd vp in store by the kynges in tymes past, and much furniture for the wars. And for as much as those things made greatly to his furtherance, (he released the cities at their vettes, as well publique as priuate, and exempted theym freely from all charges, as wel of the warres, as of Tributes and taxes for fye yere space. Then assembled hee his souldiers before them, and encouraged them with diuers exhortations to war against the Romaines, other wise cald the wars of Asia. The copy of which Oracion I haue thought worthy to be put into this worke (albeit I couet to be shor in the same maner, as Pompeius Trogus hath indirectly set it forth because he suspecth fault with Lincius and Salust, for putting Oracions in theyr works directly as they were spoken, for that by so doing they exceede y^e bondes of an hystory. He sayd he wold gladly haue wished that he myght haue consulted vpon this poynte whether it were better to haue war or peace with y^e Romaines: but now there was no remedye but to goe throughe with the matter, and not to feare them yea though there were no hope of victorie at al. For all men wold draw theire weapons vpon theues, though not to defend themselves, yet to reuenge their deaths. But for as much as he purposed not to debate, whether it were mete to be in quiet (considering they were not onely enemies in hart, but also had encountered like enemies in open felde) he wold faine know by what meanes, and vpon what hope they shoulde maintayn y^e wars y^e they had begon. Nevertheless he had good hope of the victorie, if so be they had good hartes. That the Romaines myght be overcome, his souldiers that vanquished Aquilius in Bythinia and Malchinius in

Cappa-

Cappadocia, knewe as well as he. But if hee thought the Examples of other Men coulde moue them more, than their owne experiences, he herd say that Pyrrhus kinge of Epyre, hauinge no more but fye thousande Macedones in his host, vanquished the Romaines in the pitched felde. He hearde say that Hanniball, by the space of .xvi. yeres abode in Italy lyke a conquerour, and had taken the City of Rome it selfe had not the pryncipalite and enuy of his owne Countrey men, bin a greater hinderaunce to hym, than the power of the Romaines. He heard say that the Frenchmen inhabitinge on the other side of the Alpes, entered into Italy, and there placed themselves in most of the welthiest cities of all the countrey, seylings into their possession somewhat a larger piece of ground euery way, than that which they had gotten in Asia, for all it is counted so weake and cowardly. Moreover that y^e sayd Frenchmen had not onely vanquished the Romaines, but also taken their city, in so much that they left them no more in all the Countrey, but one Hill from whence they were faine to remoue their ennemy, not by Battell, but by Ransome. The which Frenchmen (whose name had alwayes bin so terrible to the Romaines) he had to strengthen him in his host. For there was no difference betwene the Frenchmen that Inhabite Asia, and the Frenchmen that inhabite Italy, but onely the distance of their dwellinge a sunder. As for their originall, their prowesse, and their maner of fightinge was all one, sauinge that these in Asia muste needs be of so much more pollicy and witte, as they haue com a more long & tedious iourney throughe Scelauony and Thrace, beinge a farre paynfuller matter to make themselves way throughe those Countreys, than to place themselves where they natre Inhabite.

Furthermore he heard say that Italy it selfe was neuer yet well pleased with Rome, sence it was first Builed, but that continually from yere to yere, incessant Warre had bin made, by some for their liberty, and by other some

for

The oracion of
Mythridates.
to his capitaines
& men of war.

for the right of th' Empire: in so much þ (by report) many Cities of Italy, had utterly destroyed the Romaine Armies by the Sworde, and some with a new kynde of reproche had compelled them shamefully to creepe vnder a Yoke. And least he might seeme to make long tariance in matters of olde time, even the very same presente, al Italy was ryisen to erre Popenly together with the Marles, not to demaund liberty, but Societie in th' Empire, and in the City it selfe. Myther was the City oppressed moze by the Warres of their neyghbours in Italy, than by the partakinge of her owne Noblemen at home: so that the Ciuiti warres were farre moze dangerous, than the foren Warres of Italy. Besides that, the Cymbrians that vnmearable, and hewge rable of Sauage, and vnumersfull Rascalles, were swarmed out of Germany, and overwhelmed all Italy lyke a floume. Of all which forenamed Nations, although the Romaines might perchance be able to withstande the hzunt one after an other, yet by all at once, they must nedes be oppressed: and that so sone, that they shoulde haue no leasure at all, to thinke vpon his Warres: wherefore occasion ought to be taken, when it was offered, and good hold ought to be layd, with speede vpon the increasment of their strength, least if they now sat still, whiles th' other were busie and had their handes full, anone after they mighte haue moze a doe wth them when they were in quiet, and had nothyng else to do. For it was not in Question, whyther Warre ought to bee made or no, but whether it ought to bee done to their owne behoofe, or to the behoofe of the Romaines.

For the warres were begon betwene him and them, from the time that they toke from him in his nonage, the lesser Phrygia, whych they had geuen vnto his father, in rewarde, for apdinge them in the battell agaynst Aristonicus: the which countrey Seleucus Callinicus also had geuen in Dowry with his daughter to his great Graundfather Mychridates what shoulde a man say to that they com-

maunded

maunded him to depart out of Paphlagonia? Was it not an other kinde of defiance? Whych Realme fell to hym father, not by force of armes, nor by conquest, but by adoption, and Legacy of last Will and Testament, but by the death of the rightfull kinges, and so consequently by lawfull Inheritance: whereas neuer the less, all his humble obedience to their bitter decrees, coulde not one whit mitigate them, but rather was an occasion that they vire themselves moze cruelly agaynst him for what Submission coulde they deuise, but he vsed it towarde them? Did he not let go Phrygia and Paphlagonia? Did he not with drawe his sonne out of Cappadocia, which he had conquered, and therefore was bys by the lawe of armes? and yet his conquest was taken out of his Wange, by them whych haue nothyng of their owne, but that whych they holde by the sworde? did he not for their pleasure kill Cresson, kynge of Bythunia, agaynst whom the Senate had proclaymed Warre? And yet notwithstandinge whatsoeuer Gordius or Tygranes hath done, was imputed altogether to hym. Moreouer in despight of him, the Senate had of their owne Voluntary will, set Cappadocia at Liberty, which thinge they themselves had taken from other Nations. Afterward when the people of Cappadocia, thankinge thē for their Liberty, sued to haue Gordius to their Kinge, it mighte not be graunted, and that for none other occasion, but because he was counted his freende. Nicomedes at their commandment, made Warre vpon him, and because he coulde not bee reuenged vpon him as hee would, they themselves toke the matter in hande. Wherevpon partly grew th' occasion of his warres wth them, namely because hee woulde not sit still lyke a Cowarde, and suffer that Dauncing Damocelles sonne Nicomedes, to teare him in peeces at his pleasure. For it was not the faultis of kinges, that they were offended wth, or sought to redresse, but wth their Power and Maiesty whych they sought to suppress. Whych causell they vndoubtedly

use agaynst him onely, but agaynst all other kynges. At the same maner, his Graundfather Pharnax, by right of kynred, appoynted as heire and successor to Eumenes kinge of Pergamus, and again, Eumenes himself, in whose hyppes they were first broughte ouer into Asia, by the helpe of whose menne of warre, more than by their owne putsaunce first they conquered the great Antiochas, and the Frenchmen in Asia, and anon after Kinge Perles in Macedone, they bittered as an ennemie, forbiddinge hym to come within Italy, and (which they thought they might not do to hym for shame) made warre vpon his sone Aristonicus. There was neuer any þe deserued more at their hand, or that had done more for the, than Massinissa kinge of Numidie. To him they imputed the ouercomynge of Hanniball, him they thanked for the taking of Syphax, to him they imputed the destroyinge of Carthage: hym they registred amonge the two Affricanes, as the thyrd preseruer of their City: and yet with the same mans Nephewe, they euen this other day had made warre in Affricke, so deadly cruell, that after they had vanquished hym, they could not fynde in their hartes for his Graundfathers sake to pardon him, but that they emprisoned him, and led him through the City in maner of Triumphe, and made hym a gazinge stock to all þe world. Thus had they made a law to themselves, to beare continuall hatred agaynst all kynges, verely, because they had such kinges themselves who they may bee ashamed to beare spoken of, that is to say, either sheepehearbes of Thaborignes, or Southfayers of the Sabynes, or outlawes of Corynthe, or els (which is the honorablest name that euer was amonge them) proud men, and (as they themselves report) such Founders as a Wolfe gaue sucke to: which may well be, in that al the offsprynge of that people haue wolues hartes, insatiablen of bloud, greedy of Dominion, and raueners of riches: whereas hymself for his owne person (if comparison should be made betwene him and the, as touchinge nobility) was of a more

Famous

famous lynage than that ragged heape of rascalles. For hee did fetch his pedigree, on the fathers syde from Cyrus and Darius the first founders of the Monarchie of the Persians: and on the mothers syde from greate Alexander, from Nicanor and Seleucus the first founders of the Emppye of Macedone. or if he should copate his people with theirs, he sayd he was ruler of those Nations, which not only are able to match the Romain Emppye, but had also withstode the Emppye of Macedone. For there was none of the nations, of whom he was ruler, that had bene subdued vnder foere Dyners, or that euer submitted themselves to any kyng, but if he were of their owne countrie, chose whether they would name Cappadocia or Paphlagonia, again Pontus or Bythinia, Armenia the greater or Armenia the lesse, of which countries, neither Alexander (euen he that conquered all Asia) nor anye of his successors or posterity euer touched any. As for Scythia, these were neuer but two kynges before hym namely Darius & Philip that durst so much as enter into it, who beinge not able to make any conquest, had much a do to wynde themselves out agayne with their lyues, from whence hee had a grate part of his strength agaynst the Romaynes.

Wherefore he had more cause to be afrayed when hee entered into the warres of Pontus, at such time as he himself was but a spongye nouice, and a freshwater souldier. For the Scythians, besides that they be well harnessed, & well harted, are also fenced, eyther wth deserts & wast groundes or els wth cold, which biddeth the souldiers looke for greate trauel and perill, amonge which distresses, there was not almost any hope of rewarde to be gotten of the wanderpynge enemy, which had not onely no monye, but also not so much as a house to hyde his head in. But now he was entered into a farre other kynde of warfare. For neyther was the ayre more temperate in al the world the in Asia, nor the soyle more fertile, nor more plente of saye and pleasant Cities: so that they shoulde spende a
 great

Great part of the tyme, not as in warfare, but as in sea-
 Ryng: and it was to be doubted, whether the war shoulde
 bee moze easie or profitable whether they aduenture vpon
 the riches of the kingdome of Attalus next vnto them, or
 vpon Lydia, and Ionia, so greatly renoumed for their re-
 cheisse in olde tyme, whiche they shoulde not neede to go to
 fyght for, but to goe to take possession of. For Asia was
 so desyrours of their comming, that she called and cryed to
 them aloude to make speede. So greates a hatred toward
 the Romaynes, had the greedy rauensness of their Pro-
 consules, the polling & chaupng of theyr tolle gatherers
 the vngongfull dealyng in lutes and controuersies in the
 law of their officers, rooted in the hartes of them all.

Wherefore he willed them to doe no moze, but follow him
 manfully, and ponder wpth themselves what so great an
 armie myght be able to doe, haupdg such a captayne as
 he was whom they themselves had sene without the help
 of any of his souldiers, by his owne industrie onely, slea
 the kyng of Cappadocia, and seize his kingdome, who on-
 ly of all the men that euer liued, conquered all the coun-
 tries bozderynge vpon the sea of Pontus, & Scithia also,
 whiche befoze this tyme no manne could trauell throughe,
 no nor goe vnto in sauetie. As for his owne Justice, and
 liberality, he would not refuse that his souldiers whiche
 had had sufficient tryall & experience of them, shoulde bear
 witnesse to the same as of the whiche these were manifest
 tokens, that he onely of all kynges had enioyed, not only
 þe kingdomes that his father possessed befoze him, but also
 for his bountifullnesse and royalte, was adopted to bee
 heire of other fozeine Realmes as Colchos Paphlagonia
 and Bosphorus, whiche he now peacably bylde. When
 hee had thus encouraged his Souldiers, after xlii peare
 of his reigne he entered into warre agaynst the Romay-
 nes.

At that tyme in Egypte after the death of Ptolomy the
 kyng

He returneth
 to the histories
 of Egypt

king, Commissioners did putte the other Ptolomy whiche
 reigned at Cyrene, in possession of the kingdome, and af-
 fianced the Queene Cleopatra, his sister to him to be his
 wife. Ptolomy reioycing that hee had recouered his bro-
 thers kyngdome without battell, the whiche he knew his
 mother Cleopatra & certaine of the noble men went pry-
 uely about to assure vnto his brothers sonne, as lone as he
 came vnto Alexandria (to the great displeasure of al the
 Cytye) caused all suche as fauored the childe, to be put to
 death. The childe himself also, he slue in his mothers ar-
 mes, the verie same day that hee married hir, in the mid-
 dlest of all the feasting and solēpne ceremonies of wed-
 locke. And so he went to bed with his syster, all bestained
 with the bloud of his sonne. After whiche dede he became
 euen as meke to his other cōsūrim, that had called him
 to the kingdome. For he gaue his souldiers (whiche were
 strangers) leaue to kill, whom they would, so that dally
 all places were on a goze bloud: and he put away his s-
 ister, and toke to wife her daughter a fayre yonge maiden
 haupng first rauished her perforce: with whiche things the
 people were so dismayd, that they thynke away, som one
 whither, and some another, forsakinge their natie coun-
 try like bannished folke for dread of death.

Ptolomy bringe left alone with his Souldiours, in so
 great a Citie when hee sawe hymselfe kyng of emptye
 houses and not of men, made Proclamacion that straun-
 gers shoulde come and inhabyte the Cytye, after whose
 resorte thither, hee wente forth to meete the Romayne
 Ambassadors, Scipio Affricanus, Spurius Mummius, &
 Lucius Metellus, whiche came to see howe the Realmes
 of their confederates were ordered. But loke how cruel
 hee was to all his owne cōnērimenne, so muche was
 hee a laughinge stocke to the Romaynes. For he was
 yll visaged, a dwarfe of stature, and had such a fat paunch
 that hee seemed moze lyk a beast then a manne, whiche

The cruelty of
 Ptolomy.

Ptolomy is
 had in derision
 by the Romain
 Ambassadors,

¶ it.

sonlo-

solennesse and deformitie, his smale mylle boyce, and his thinne garments did moze encrease as though of set purpose he had set out the thinges to be seene, which he that had any regard of shame, ought wylhall care to haue hid: ven. After the departure of Cha'mbassadors (of whom Affricanus, whyles he behelde, the Citie, was himself a spectacle to the Alexandrians) Ptolomy beinge nowe hated euen of his Alients also, fled priuely out of the realme with his sonne, whom hee had begotten of his sister, and with his wife, his owne mothers paramour, for feare of treason: and hauninge gotten an host of hyed iouliours, hee made warre, both agaynst his sister, and against his owne Countrey. Afterwarde hee sente for his eldest sonne from Cyrene, and because the Alexandrians should not make him Kyng agaynst hym, hee putte hym to death.

Then his people in despyghte of him: brake downe his images, and tare down his pictures. Which thing thinkinge to be doone by the procurement of his sister, hee slue the sonne whom hee hadde begotten by hir, and cuttinge his body in gobbettes, closed it vp in a Basket, and sent it for a present to the mother, as shee was making a feast vpon the day of his birth. This was a bitter & sorrowfull sight, not only to the Queene herselfe, but also to all the whole Citie, and it cast such a grieue vpon that joyfull feast, that sodaynly in all the court was nothyng but mourninge and lamentacion. The noble men therefore, turninge themselves from feastinge to funerall, shewed the people the mangled booke, declaringe what hope they ought to haue of their king, who had so cruelly murdered his own Child. Cleopatra after that the sorrow for losse of his son was ceased, perceiuing herself to be sore infested by her brothers war: demaunded help of Demetrius kyng of Syria by his Ambassadors whose chaunces were strang & worthy to be spoken of, for Demetrius (as it is shewed before) making war agaynst the Parthians, & getting

The unnatural
crueltye
of Ptolomy
toward his
own children.

tinge the Victory in many Encounters, was sodaynly surprised by Pollicy, and besides the losse of his Army, was also himselfe taken prisoner. Whom Arsaces kinge of the Parthians, sent into Hyrcanie, and of his noble, and Royal Courage, not onely gaue him Entertainment lyke a king, but also gaue him his daughter in marriage, promisinge moreouer to restore him to the Kingdome of Syria, which Tryso had vsurped in his absence. After whose death Demetrius beinge past hope of returninge into his kyngdome, and beinge not able to away with captiuitie, for weariness of his priuate life though hee liued neuer so wealthy, assayed to steale home into his owne kingdome.

His Counsailler & Companion in this enterpryse was a frend of his, called Callimander, who after his maisters long captiuitie bying guides for money & disguisinge himselfe in Parthian Apparel, came out of Syria through the desertes of Arabic vnto Babylon. But Phrahartes which succeeded Arsaces, sent out posthoyses after him, who made such speede by waynes, that they ouertoke him, & brought him backe agayne. When he came before the kinge, Callimander was not onely pardoned, but also highly Rewarded for his saythfulness towards his master. But Demetrius with a great rebuke was sent agayn to his wife into Hyrcanie, and there kept moze straightly then he was before. In procelle of time when it was thought, hee would haue tarped for his childrens sake that hee had by his wyfe: accompanied with his foresayd frend, he stole away again. But euen with like felicity as before, he was apprehended, neere vnto the borders of his owne kingdome, and beinge brought backe againe vnto the Kinge, was commaunded out of his presence in great displeasure. Nevertheless beinge thus also graunted his Wife and children, he was sent agayne into Hyrcanie his olde place of Penauce, and rewarded with a paye of Golden Shewes in reproofe of his chyldeish lightnesse. But this so gentle and fauourable demeanour of the Parthians toward Demetrius, proceeded not

Hee returneth
to the story of
Demetrius taken
prisoner by
the parthians in
the 36. Booke.

A saythfull
Frende.

An example of
clemency in a
Barbarous
prince.

Demetrius is
taken flyinge &
second time and
brought back
agayne.

of any mercy naturally engendered in that Nation, or in respect of alliance and affinity, but because they coveted the kingdom of Syria extending to be Demetrius as an Instrument against his brother Antiochus, according as either the matter, the time, or the chance of the war should require. Antiochus hearing thereof, thought by wisdom to prevent the warre, and thereupon led his host (which he had hardened through many blazes and battelles against his neighbours) against the Parthians. But he made preparation as much for Rest, as for warre. For whereas he had eight hundred thousand men of warre, there were evermore, three hundred thousand others that followed the host, of which the most part were Cooks, Bakers, & Minstrels, & Players of Enterludes. Surely of Golde & silver there was so great abundance, that even the common soldiers wore their bosse embordered with gold, and trode under their feet the metal, for love of which other people were wont to fight and kill one another. Moreover all the furniture of his Kitchens were of cleane silver, as though they had gone to banquetting, & not to battell. At Antiochus first coming, many Kings of the East met him, and yielded themselves and their Kingdoms unto him, utterly detesting the pride of the Parthians. It was not long ere it came to the encounter. Antiochus getting the upper hand in the fought fieldes, & thereupon winning Babylon by force began to be counted great. By means whereof all Countries revolted so fast unto him that the Parthians had nothing left them, more then the bare Soyle of their owne Realme of Parthia. Then Phraortes sent Demetrius into Syria, with an host of Parthians to invade the Kingdom, to the intent that by that policy, Antiochus might be enforced to withdraw himselfe out of Parthia, to the defence of his owne Realme. In the meane while because he could not overcome Antiochus by force, he sought means to surpris him by policy. Antiochus by reason hee had such a multitude, dispersed all his army into the Cities, during

Antiochus lea-
deth an host a-
gainst the Par-
thians.

Antiochus vi-
queth the
parthians.

Demetrius is
let go into Sy-
ria.

the Winter season, which thinge was his better undoing. For the Cities feeling themselves greued with victualing of his host, and also with the inurious demeanour of the Soldiers, revolted again to the Parthians, and on a day appointed for the next all at one time by traitorous conspiracy set upon the host, as it was divided amonge them severally, to the intent they should be able to rescow one another, when tidings hereof came to Antiochus, hee assembled such as wintered with him, and went to rescow them that were nere. But in his way hee met with the king of Parthians, against whom hee fought more valiantly himselfe, then did his host. Notwithstanding at the last (forasmuch his enemies were of more force, and courage) his men for feare forsooke him, and so hee was slayne. For whom Phraortes made a royall Buriall, & kept funerals after the manner of Princes, and moreover beinge taken in love with the daughter of Demetrius, whom Antiochus had brought with him, hee tooke her to Wife. Then he repented him, that he had let go Demetrius, and he sent out men in post after him to fetch him backe. But Demetrius, dredding the same thinge before hande, had made such speede that they founde him in his owne Kingdom, and so beinge disapoynted of their traualle and expectation, they returned to the Ryng.

A todayne co-
spiracy against
Antiochus.

The death, of
Antiochus.

* *

The

¶ The contentes of the, xxxix. Booke.

Demetrius, while he goeth about to conquer the whole realme of Egypt, loseth his owne Realme by sodayne rebellion. The King of Egypt soborneth one as adopted by Antiochus, to challenge the kingdome of Syria, proclayming him by the name of Alexander, vvhich ouercometh Demetrius & killeth him, Grypho the sonne of Demetrius is crownd king by name, (his mother bearing al the rule) and is supported by the power of the Egyptians against Alexander, vvhich he vanquisheth. Alexander is taken by Theeues, brought vnto Grypho, & put to death. The mother of Grypho, offering her son a cup of poyson is compelled to drinke it hir self. His brother Cyricenus maketh insurrection against him, the king of Egypt dieth. Grypho ouercometh Cyricenus, the Cruelty of Grypho towards hir sister Cleopatra the Wyfe of Cyricenus. Cyricenus vanquisheth Grypho, & reuengehys Wyues death vpon hir sister. Cleopatra Queene of Egypt, setteth vp and pulleth downe hir sonnes at hir pleasure, and at length is slayne by Alexander the younger of them, who for his labour is banished the Realme, & his brother Ptolomy made king in his stede. The king of Cyrene bequeatheth his Kingdome to the Romaynes. Herotymus Kyng of Araby infecteth Egypt, and Syria.



After that Antiochus with all his army was thus destroyed in Parthia, his brother Demetrius, being deliuered from captiuitie of the Parthians, and restored to his Kingdome, (when as at Syria as yet mourned for the losse of the Army as though the warres that he & his Brother made in Parthia, in the which one was taken prisoner, & the other slayne. had had prosperous successe) he purposed to make warre in Egypt at the request of Cleopatra his Wifes mother, who promised to giue the kingdome of Egypt, in recompence, if he would support hir against his brother. But whiles hee went about to get that which was another mans. hee lost his owne, by meanes of a sodaine insurrection in Syria. For first the Citizens of Antioche, through the Instigation of

Demetrius is
hated of his
Subiectes for
his pryde.

of their captain Tryfo, detestling the hinges of the (which by his conuersation, amonge the cruell Parthians was become intolerable,) & anon after the Apameniens, with all the rest of the Cyties followinge their ensample, toke occasion vpon the Kynge's absence, and Rebelled agaynst hym.

Ptolomy also kinge of Egypt agaynst whom the sayd Demetrius made warre, when he vnderstoode that his Sister Cleopatra had shipped all her goods and treasure, and was fled into Syria to her daughter and her sonne in lawe Demetrius, soborned a certayne younge man of Egypt, & sonne of a Marchauntman called Protarchus, to challenge the kingdome of Syria by battell, forginge a Pedegree, as though Antiochus had adopted him into the bloud royall. And the Syrians cared not who were their Kinge, so they might be deliuered from the pride of Demetrius. So the younge man was proclaymed by the name of Alexander, & great succour was sent to him out of Egypt. In the meane while the booy of Antiochus slayn by the king of Parthia, was sente into Syria in a Coffin of Siluer to bee buried, which was receyued with great solemnity by the Cities, but chiefly by Alexander himself, to the intent to make men credit the tale, that he was Adopted to be his Heire. The which his doinge, wan him much fauour of the Commonalty, all men thinkinge no lesse, but that he ment good sayth without dissimulation, in his sorrowfull mourninge. Demetrius beinge vanquished by Alexander, and environed on all sides with vnauoydable Daungers was at the last forsaken of his owne wife and Children. Being therefore left desolate sauinge a fewe seruantes, as he was purposed to have fled to the Temple of Tyrus, there to registre himselfe as a sanctuary man, if perchance the reuerence of the place might saue his life, when he went out to land, he was slayne by the commandement of the Mayster of the shippe. The one of his sonnes, whose name was Selucus, because he crowned himselfe Kinge, without his Mothers

An Egyptian
is Proclaymed
Kinge against
Demetrius.

The due re-
vvard of sacri-
ledge & vsur-
ped Authority.
The Desire of
Souverainety.

Her consent, was by her dayne. Th'other of his sonnes,
who for the greynesse of his nose was surnamed Grypho,
was created king by his mother upon this condicion, that
hee should beare the name, and she all authoritey. But A-
lexander the blaspemer of the kingdome of Syria, being pur-
sued by with continuall successe in his Affaires, beganne of
great pryde to despise Ptolomy himselfe, by whom he was
ruled in that Kingdome.

Ptolomy therefore recalling himselfe to his sister, ende-
uored by all the meanes he coulde deuise, to depose Alexan-
der from his Royalty, & which he had obtained by his helpe
for hatred that he bare towards Demetrius. Whereupon
he sent ayd to Grypho into Greece, and his daughter Gri-
phin also to bee his wife, to the intent he might procure
people to helpe his Nephew, not only by confederacy, but
also by alliance of affinity. And the matter came so to passe
in deede. For after the time they perceyued, that Grypho
was supported with the power of Egypt, they began by li-
tle, and litle to requaite euerythynge from Alexander. After-
ward there was a battaile fought between them, in which
Alexander beinge put to the worse, fled vnto Antioche.
There for want of money, hauing not wherewith to pay his
souldiers their wages, hee commaunded a signe of victo-
ry of many gold to bee taken out of the Temple of Iupiter,
coloringe his sacriledge with a pleasant scoffe: For hee
sayd that Iupiter had lent him Victory. Within a fewe
dayes after, when hee had geuen commaundement priue-
ly, to pull out of the Temple the Image of Iupiter made
of cleane Golde, of an vnknown weight, and that beinge
taken in doinge of the deede, hee was put to flight by the
multitude that came to the Rescue, hee was oppressed
by the violence of a tempest, and forsaken of his owne men
and taken by theues, and brought vnto Grypho, and there
put to death. Furthermoze Grypho hauinge recovered his
fathers Kingdome, and beinge deliuered from outwarde
daungers, was assauled by the treason of his owne Mo-
ther

ther: Who beinge inflamed with desire of Souerainety, af-
ter she had betrayed her husband Demetrius, and killed his
other son, for spight and malice that her authoritey should
be diminished by the victory of this her other sonne, she of-
fered him a Cup of popson, as he came from his pastyme,
But Grypho by using intelligence of his Mothers treason,
(as though hee had argued with her for Curtesy) desired
her to drinke to him, which thinge vpon her refusal, hee
requested moze earnestly. At the length bringinge forth
author of the report, hee layd the matter to her charge, af-
firminge he would admit none other excuse of her offence,
but if she would drinke the same herselfe that she had pro-
fered to him. The Queene beinge by this meanes conui-
cted of her mischievous intent, by receyuing the popson, her
selfe that shee had prepared for her sonne, was depriued of
her life. Grypho hauing thus brought his realme in quiet-
nesse, not only liued himselfe at heartes ease, but also go-
uerned his kingdome in tranquillity, by the space of eigh-
teares after. The which Terme beinge expired, there arose
an Enemy to his Kingdome, namely his owne Brother,
Cyrrenus, borne by his owne Mother, but begotten by
his vncle Antiochus. Whom whiles he went about to rid
out of the way by popsoninge, hee stryred him the sooner to
contend with him for the kingdome. Amonge these mur-
derly discords of the Realme of Syria, died Ptolomy king
of Egypt, leauinge the Kingdome to his wife & one of his
sonnes, which soeuer she would chuse, as though the State
of Egypt should be in better quiet then the realme of Sy-
ria, when the mother by chosinge the one of her Sonnes,
should make th'other her enemy. Therefore whereas she
was of herselfe moze enclined to the younger son, the peo-
ple compelled her to chuse th'Elder. From whom (before
she gaue him the kingdome) shee tooke away his wife, and
hauinge compelled him to forgo his most deere beloued si-
ster Cleopatra, she caused him to marry his younger sister
Seleuce. Wherein shee felt not like a mother betwixt her
Daughters.

The due re-
vvard of sacri-
ledge and vsur-
ped Authority.

The desire of
Souverainety.

The death of
the Queene.

The death of
Ptolomy kinge
of Egypt.

An vnequall
dealinge of a
Mother.

daughters, consideringe she toke her husband from th'one and gave him to th'other. Cleopatra beinge not so much put away by hir husbando, as by violent divorce separated from him by meanes of her mother, was married to Cyricenus in Syria. And to th'entent shee should not seeme to haue brought nothinge elles vnto him moze then the bare name of a Wyfe, she rayled an host of men in Cyprus, and brought it to her husband for her Dowry.

Cyricenus beinge now made as stronge as his Brother Encountred with him in open fye, where beinge vanquished and put to flight, hee came vnto Antioche. Then Gripho besieged Antioche, where Cleopatra the wyfe of Cyricenus lay. At the takinge whereof, Gripho the wyfe of Gripho, toke care for nothinge so much, as to finde out her sister Cleopatra: not to saue her out of captiuitie, but to th'entent shee should not escape the miseries of captiuitie: Because (as shee thought) in disdain of her estate, she had entered forcibly into that Kingdome in especially, and by marpyng her selfe to her Sisters enemy, had made her selfe an Enemy to her. Alleadginge against her mozeouer, that she had rayled forren powers against her brother and married herselfe agaynst her mothers will, out of the realme of Egypt: On the contrary part, Gripho besought her, that shee would not constrain him, to comit so shamefull an acte. For it was neuer hard, that any of his auncestours amonge so many Ciuill, and soe many outwarde warres, did after the victorie exte'd cruelty agaynst womē, which for weaknesse of their nature, had euer him exempted, both from daunger of warres, and also from the cruelty of the Conquerours.

And now in this case besides the lawes of Armes, there was also the bond of alliance, to withhold him from doinge such a wickednesse. For on th'one side, shee was her owne sister whose bloud shee sought so cruelly, and on the other side, shee was his Cousine Germanye, yea and mozeouer she was Aunte to the children of them both. For euer by sides

sydes all those bondes of kindred and alliance, he superstitiously alledged, that it was not lawfull to violate the Temple, in whiche she had byd herself and which shee had taken for sauegarde of hir life. but that the Goddess with so much the moze humilitey and deuotion ought to bee reuerenced on his part, as by their great mercy & fauour, he had gotten the victorie at that time ouer his enemies. For neither by killing hir, could he any thingeuate the strength of Cyricenus, neyther by preserving hir life, any thing encrease his power. But the moze willinge that Gripho was, the moze was shee of womanlye malice incensed againste hir sister, supposinge him to speake these wordes, not of compassion but of loue. Whereupon callinge to hir the souldiers, shee sent certayne of them hir selfe to thrust hir sister through. Who enteringe into the Temple, when they could not pull hir out they cut of hir handes as she had clasped them about the Images of the Goddess. Then Cleopatra cursing those wicked murderers, and beseeching the Goddes (whose sanctuary they had defiled) to reuenge hir vpon them, died. It was not long after that, but Cyricenus encountred again with his brother where gettinge the upper hand, hee toke Gripho the wife of Gripho prisoner, who latelie had put her sister to death: with execution of whom, hee did sacrifice to his wifes Ghost. But in Egypt, Cleopatra beinge grieved that hir son Ptolomy, should be partener with hir in the kingdome, incensed the people againste him, and haupnge taken bys wyfe Seleuce awaye from hym, (whych was so muche moze greefe to him, because he hadde two sonnes by hir) banished him the Realme: sendinge for hir, younger sonne Alexander, whom she crowned king in his brothers stead. And yet beinge not contented to haue banished hir sonne, shee pursued him with battell, wher he kept as a banished mā in Cyprus. When he had bypyn hym from thence also, shee put the Captain of hir host to death

War betwene
Gryphus & his
brother Cyri-
cenus.
A cruell sister.

The disuasio
of Gryphus fro
the cruelty.

Grypho inter-
cedeth for his
sister Cleo-
patra.

The death of
Cleopatra.

Such measure
as shee did mete
is metten to
her.

The Queene
of Egypt depo-
seth one of her
sonnes & set-
teth vpon
another.

Life is dearer
then a kingdō.

The death of
the Queene of
Egypt.

Alexander is
depoied.

death, because hee had suffered him to escape alive out of his handes. Albeit to save the truth: Ptolomy departed out of the Island rather because hee was ashamed to fight with his owne mother, then for that he was not of power able to encounter hir, Alexander therfore dreading this his mothers cruelty, departed his way, and left her alone, desiring rather to live meanly in sauegard, than to reigne as a king, alwayes in daunger of his life. Cleopatra fearing least Cyricenus should help hir elder sonne Ptolomy to recouer the kingdom of Egypt, sent great ayde to Grypho, and hir daughter Seleuce to be his wife, to the intent, hee would persist enemy to her first husbande, as hee had bin before: and also shee sente Ambassadors to hir sonne Alexander to call him to the kingdome agayne. Against whom as shee was practising mischief to bring him to destruction, shee was by him prevented and put to death. and soe she ended her life, not by naturall destiny, but by deserved murder. Surely shee was well worthy of such a slanderous death, which had defiled hir owne mothers bed, and put her besid her husband: which had made hir owne two daughters so oftentimes widows by chopping and chaunging their husbands: whych had banished thone of hir sonnes, pursuing him with battaile when she had done, and wrested the kingdome from the other, practising also to bring him to his end by treason. Neuer thelesse Alexander himself escaped not altogether unpunished, for committing so abhominable a murder. For as sone as it was knowne, that the Mother was slaine by the wickednesse of hir sonne, the people rose against him, and drove him out of the Realm, and callpuge home Ptolomy againe, set him in possession of the kingdome: who was of that modesty, that hee would neyther make war against his mother, nor yet challenge that of his brother by force, which was his before by right of inheritance. While these thinges were a doying, a bastarde brother of his to whom his father had by his last will bequeathed the king-

kingdome of Cyrene, deceased, and left the people of Rome to bee his heyre. For by this time the fortune of Rome was such, that being not content with the boundes of Italie, it began to stretch it selfe to the kingdomes of the East. By means whereof, that part, of Libie was at that tyme made a province, and shortly after Candie & Calicia, being subdued in the warres against the Pirats, were brought in likewise in order of provinces. By the which dede both the kingdomes of Syria and Egypt, were streightned by the neighbored of the Romans, & whereas before tymes they were wont to encrease there Dominion, by warring upon their borders now being abridged of their liberty to rove where they list, they turned their power to their owne confusion. In so much that being consumed through continual fighting, they were had in dispayne of their next neighbours, and were as a prey to the Arabians, which before that tyme were neuer knowne to be menne of war. Whose kyng Herotimus, upon trust that he had in his sixe hundred sonnes (whiche hee had begotten of his concubynes) with sondrye Armys made robes, somtyme into Egypt, & sometime into Syria: by means whereof within a whyle, through the feblenes of his neighbours, hee made the name, of the Arabians famous and redbouted.

Cyrene is be-
queathed to
the Romans.

Herotim^s had
a great number
of Sonnes.

¶ The contents of the. xl. Booke.

Tygranes, kyng of Armeny is created kyng of Syria, by election. A great earthquake in Syria. Tygranes is vanquished by Lucullus, by whom the kyngdome of Syria is giuen to Antiochus the son of Cyrenus, whom Pompeius afterwarde deposeth & maketh the Realme a prouince of the Romaynes.



HE kynges and kyngdomes of Syria being consumed through the naturall hatred of the brothers, and through the deadly enmitie of their children, succeeding in their fathers steps one after another, with so mortal war as neuer could be appraised: the people resorted to strangers for refuge, and began to loke aboute the for some forreign king. Therfor whē some thought it good to send for Myrhidates, kyng of Pontus, & som for Ptolomy kyng of Egypt, and yit came to the remembrance, y Myrhidates on th'one syde was entangled wth the warres of the Romaynes, and that Ptolomy on th'other syde, had euer bene an enemy to the kyngdom of Syria, they consented all vppon Tygranes kyng of Armenia: who besydes the power of his owne countrey, was also supported by confederacy, wth the Parthians, and by alliance wth Mithridates. Being therfore crowned kyng of Syria, he enioied the kyngdom very quietly by the space of eghtene yeares, hauing no neede at all eyther to assaile others himself, or to repulse others that assailed him. But as Syria was in safety from forreign ennemys, so was it greatly wasted wth earthquakes, in the which they perished an hundred thyscore and ten thousand men besides the ruine of many cities. Whiche wonder the southerly sapers interpreted to be taken a great altaraid of things.

Tygranes is made kyng of Syria.

An horrible earthquake,

For when Lucullus had overcome Tygranes, he proclaimed Antiochus; the sonne of Cyricenus kyng. But that which Lucullus had giuen, Pompeius afterwarde took away, who told him that he wold not haue made him kyng of Syria, no though he had sued for it, and much lesse put it in his mouthe without suinge for it. Consideringe that duringe the eghtene yeares that Tygranes helde Syria, he had lyen lurking in a corner of Cyhcia but assone as the Romains had overcome the sayde Tygranes, he put himselfe forth to sue for the reward of other mennes trauell. Therfore lyke as if he had had the kyngdome before, hee wold not haue taken it from him: neuer so, seeing he coulde lyde in his hart, to suffer Tygranes too enioie it perceayble so long, he wold not bestowe the thyng vppon him, which he knew not how to defend, for doubtes he might be an occasion, that the Jewes and Arabians shoulde enterpryse to robbe and spoile the countrey of Siria again. So he brought Syria into the order of a prouince, and by Iudea and Iude, through the discorde of the bloud Ropall, the East came in subiection to the Romaynes.

Lucullus overcome Tygranes, & maketh Antiochus kyng.

Syria is made a prouince of the Romains.

The contentes of the xli. booke.

The Originall, enticement and habitation of the Parthians, the order of their common weale, their language and apparel, the manner of he vvaies and the education of their bondmen, their trade of lying, buill, supersticion, and naturall inclination. How they serued vnder diuers kynges, whose Realmes they afterward brought in subiection. Of the kyngdom of Baetia. The foundation of the Parthian Empire by Arsaces with a reliefe of his acts of him and his successours, the cause of the sonne of Eueratides and the fortunate assayres of Myrhidates kyng of the Parthians.

HE Parthians in whose bad, (the whole worlde, being as it were deuised between them and the Romains) Theppye of the East as theyan was, were banished men of Scythia. The which thing the very name of the bewzaiech, for in the Scythian language

Of the Parthians with their encrease and battels.

W.i.

language

language, bannished men ate called Parthians. These in the time of Thassyrian & Median Emppres, wer of al the peoples of the East most base. Afterward also when Chē ppe was translated from the Medes to the Persians, they wer as a sorte of Rascalles without name, and a continuall pray to the Conquerors. Lastly when the Macedones ruled the East like triumphant conquerors, they wer in subiection vnto the, in so much that there is no man, but would wonder to se, how by their prowesse and actiuitie, they shoulde aspyre to so great felicitie, as to haue dominion, euen ouer those kyngs & kyngdomes vnder whose Emppre they serued sometimes as vassalles. Furthermoze, bepng assayled of the Romaines, in thye battels by Captaynes of great experience & actiuitie, in the chyeftest time of their prosperity, when they florished most in the renown of chualtry, they only of all Nations were able, not only to match the, but also to banquish the. Although in dibe it may be counted a greater gloze, that they could ryle and put by their head from amonge those Emppres of Assyria, Media and Persia, that were so renowned in tymes past, and also from vnder that moste ryche & wealthy Empire Bactria, that had a thousande cyties vnder it, than to haue vanguished the force of straungers so far from them. Furthermoze while the Scythians were soze vexed with the continuall wars of their neighbours, and in maner oppressed with the continuance of dangerous encounters, these Parthians, bepng through ciuill dissension expelled out of Scithia, toke by the deserts betwene Hyrcanie and the Daces, and the Arcans, & the Spartanes, and the Maianes. In continuance of time, first with out let of their neighbours, and after ward mangre they beades, they dilated the borders of their country so far, that they possessed not onely the wyde feldes and bottomes of the champion country, but also the cragged clifles and the Toppes of the highe Mountaynes. Wherby it cometh to pass, that most places within the Coast of

The situation
of Parthia.

Parthia

Parthia are either excessively whote, or extremely colde: by reason that the mountaynes are commonly infected with snowe, and the open fieldes with beate of the sunne. After the decay of the emppre of Macedone, the country was gouerned by kyngs. Next vnto the Dynastie of the kyng is the state of the communaltie: for of it are chosen captaynes in tyme of warre, and magistrates in tyme of peace. Their language is a meane betwene the Scythian and Median, mixed indifferently of them both. They haue somtyme a fashion of apparell peculiar by them selues, but after the tyme they grewe ryche, it became sune, and full of clothe after the maner of the Medes. They kept the same order in they warres and in sepygh-tyng, as do the Scithians they ancestors. Their armye is not as other Nations bee of free menne, but the more part of bondmenne. The which sorte of people (sozasmuch as it is not lawfull for anye man to sette anye of theym at libertie, and thereupon all are boundmen bozne) dayly multiplyeth and encreaseth, instructing them with great diligence to ryde horses and to shoote. Accordyng as euer man is of wealch so syndeth be the kyng more horsemen to the warres. For nallie when Antony made warre agaynst the Parthians, of sycpe thousande horsemen, that were free bozne. They cannot skyll at sepyghinge as haunde in the battell, nor of wyning Cityes by siege. They sepyght eyther running righte forth with theyre horses, or els rettyng back: oftentymes also they wil make as though they fled to the intent their ennemye pursuing them vnabysedly may lye more open to receyue a wounde of the, when they shall toyne battel, they vse not to sound a trumpet, but a Tympane, neyther can they endure to sepyght any longe whyle. But if they were of like force & as good in continuance as they are at the firste bunte, no Nation in the world were able too abyde them. For the moste part euen in the whotest of the skyrmyche, they for-
P. 11. take.

The estate of
the common
wealth of Pat-
thia.

Their language

Their apparel.

The order of
their warres.

The bringinge
vp of their
bondmen.

The order of
their warres.

Their Armour

Their feuchinge
in their
vynues.

Their dyet.

Their cotinual
riding.The difference
betwene the
gentlemen and
their slaues.

Their burial

Their supersti-
tion.Their naturall
disposition.

take the felds, and anon after retorne agayne, and be-
gyne the battel afreſhe, in ſo muche that when a manne
thynkes hymſelfe moſt ſure of the victory, then ſtandes he
in moſt halarde of diſcomfiture. Theire armour as
wel for themſelues as for theyr horyes, are made all of
plates of ſtele overlaid wth ſethers, wherewithal both
of theym are couered from toppe to toe. Golde and ſyluer
they occupy not, but in theire Armour. Euerye man (for
deſpyght that they haue in ſenſuality) hath manye wyues
apiece, and yet they chaſtice no offence ſo ſore as aduoutry
and whoredome. Theruppon they bitterly forbydde wo-
men, not onely conuerſation with men but alſo commu-
nication or once to loke vpon a man. They eat no fleſhe,
vneſſe they catch it in hunting. They are caried on horye
backe at all tymes: On horyebacke the ſeyghte wth the
enemy, on horyebacke the feaſte, on horyebacke the exe-
cute all affayres, as wel publique as priuate, on horyebacke
they goe from place to place, on horyebacke they buy and
ſell: and on horyebacke they talke one with another.
ſpecially this is the difference betwene a gentleman and
a ſlaue, that the ſlaue neuer rydeth, nor the gentlemen ne-
uer goeth on foote. Their common buriall is either to be
deuoured with dogges, or too bee eaten with byrdes, and
when the bones are left bare, then to burie theym in the
earth. They are all a lyke wonderfull ſuperſtitious in
doyng honoz and reuerence to the Goddes. The nature of
the people be arrogant, ſeditious, deceitful and malapert
for they thynke that boyſhouſelle is meete for menne,
and mekenelle mete for women. They are euer vnquiet,
gynen to quarrell eyther with ſtraungers, or els amonge
themſelues of nature cloſe and ſecret moze readye to doe
then to talke: and therfore whither they ſpede well or yll
they make no hoſt of it. They obaye their rulers for feare
moze then for ſhame. To ſenſualitye they are altogether
proue and enclyned, and yet they are but ſmali feders.
There is no truſt to be giuen to theyr wordes, for they
wid

will kepe promiſe no further then is for their owne pro-
fite. After the death of great Alexander, when the kyng-
domes of the Eaſt were deuided among his ſucceſſours.
There was none of the Macedones that woulde vouch-
ſafe to take vpon him the kyngdome of Parthia. By mea-
nes wherof it was committed to Stagenora ſtraunger
that had ſerued Alexander in his warres. Theſe after-
ward when the Macedones fell to ciuill warre with tho-
ther nations of thupper Asia, tooke part wth Eumenes,
after whoſe diſcomfiture they ſubmitted themſelues too
Antigonus. After Antigonus, they were kepte in ſubtec-
tion, firſt by Seleucus Nicanor, and afterward by Anti-
ochus & his ſucceſſours, from whoſe great graundchilde
Seleucus, they firſt of all reuolted in the firſt war y was
betwene the Romaynes & the Carthaginenſes L. Milius
Piſo, and M. Attilius Regulus beyng Conſuls. The oc-
caſion y they eſcaped clere wth this their rebellion, was
the diſcoyue betwene the two brothers king Seleucus and
kyng Antiochus who were ſo earneſt to plucke the kyng-
dome one from another, that they had no leaſure to pur-
ſue the rebelles.

The ſame tyme alſo rebelled one called Theodotus
Lieutenaunt of the thouſand Cittyes of the Bactrians,
and proclaymed himſelfe kyng. Whose enſample all the
reſidewe of the people of the Eaſt enſwinge, reuolted
fro the Macedones. There was at that tyme one Arſa-
ces, as of vknowne lynage, ſo of approued actiuity. This
man beyng wonte to lyue vpon the ſpoyle, and hearyng
ſay that the frenchmen had vanquiſhed Seleucus in Asia,
as one oute of feare of his Prince entered into Parthia
with a band of outlawes, and ſlew their Lieutenaunt An-
dragoras, and vſurped the dominion of the cuntry.
It was not longe after but he conquered the kyngdome
of Hyrcanie alſo, and ſo being eſtabliſhed in the Empire
of two Realmes, he leuid an huge buſt for feare of Seleu-
cus, and Theodotus kyng of the Bactrians. But he was

Vnder whom
the Parthians
ſerued.When the Par-
thians ſurren-
dered.Arſaces the
king of Par-
thia.

some delivered from feare of Theodotus, for he died: with whose sonne called Theodotus also, hee concluded a league and continual peace. And within a while after he encountered with Seleucus that came to subdue the rebellies, and overcame him. The which daye the Parthians haue euer since kept holpe, with much solemnitye, as the beginning of their libertie. Afterward when Seleucus was through the newe Insurrection called backe into Asia, Arsaces hauinge thereby respyce and oportunitie, set order in the publique weale of Parthia, mustered souldiers, builded fortresses and holdes, strengthened cities, and also edified a Citie newe out of the grounde in the mountayne Thabozene, wher he named Dara. The situation of which place is such, that there canne not be anye decayed eyther more stronge & defensible, or more pleasant and delectable. For it is so enuyroned rounde about with stepe rockes, that the place of it selfe is able to hold out the enemy, though there were no bodie to defend it. And the soyle thereaboutes is so fertile and fruite full, that it is able to suffice the whole city without helpe of any other place. Besydes this, there is such a boundace of spynges, and woodde, that besydes the commoditie of the water, wherewith it is most plentifully moistured, they may also haue the pleasure of hauking and huntyng when they list. Arsaces hauyng in this tyme both gotten and established his kyngdome at at once, dyed an olde mā as greatly renowned among the Parthians as was Cyrus among the Persians, Alexander among the Macedonians, or Romulus among the Romaynes. In remembrance wher of, the Parthians gaue him this honoure, that they called all theyr kynges by the name of Arsaces euer after. This mans sonne and heire named Arsaces also hauing an armie of an hundred thousand souldiers & twentye thousand bowemenne, fought very valiantly agaynst Antiochus the sonne of Seleucus, and at length was receyued by hym into aliance and friendship. The thirde kyng of the

Arsaces reformeth the commonwealth of Parthia.

The buildinge & situation of the city Dara.

The decease of Arsaces.

The second Emperour of Parthia.

the Parthians was Pampatius likewise surnamed Arsaces, (for as I told you before) they called all their kings by that name, lyke as the Romaynes call theirs by the name of Caesar and Augustus. This Man haupnge reigned twelue yeres, deceased leauyng two sonnes, Mythrdates and Pharnax. Of which, Pharnax the elder inherityng the kyngdome accordyng to the custome of theyr countrey, conquered a stoute kynde of people called the Mardes and within a while after deceased, leauyng many sonnes behynde hym, wherby hee made no accompte of in that case, but left the kyngdome to his brother Mythrdates a manne of excellent prowesse and actiuitie: for he was of opinion that the kyngdome was more to be regarded, than the name of father, and that he ought rather to prouide for his native countrey, then for his children. The same time like as Mythrdates in Parthia, so Eucratides in Bactria, both of the notable Princes, began their raygnes at once. But the Parthians had the happier fortune. For though the pollicie gouernance of their kyng, they aspyred to the Souerayne prebeminence of the myrre. Whereas the Bactrians beyng tossed too and fro with vncertaine fortune of the warres, lost not onely their kyngdome, but also their libertie. For after the tyme they had wearied themselves with the continual wars of the Sogdians, Dranganitanes, and Indians, lost of all as menne halfe dead, and out of hart, they were saddened by the Parthians, wherby were weaker than they. Yet notwithstanding Eucratides achieved many battles with great prowesse, though the whiche beyng brought lowe, when Demetrius kyng of Inde had besyged him, he hauyng no more but thre hundred souldiours about him, by his continual pssuing oute priuelie, vanquished thre score thousand of his enemies. Whereupon beyng after five Monethes siege enlarged agayne, hee brought Inde vnder his subiection. From whence as hee was returnyng homeward, he was slayn in his iourney

The third Emperour Pampatius.

The fourth Emperour.

An example of howe gouerned an ancient country. The title Emperour.

Eucratides King of Bactria.

The valiant prowesse of Eucratides.

An unnatural and abominable murder.

by his owne sonne, whome he had made fellow in Them-
pyre. Who nothing dissembling the unnatural murder
but rather reioicing, as though he had killed his enemy,
and not his father, drane his chariot through his blood, &
so maintained his body to be thrown away unburied.
While these things were a doing among the Bactrians,
in the meane space there arose warre betwene the Par-
thians and the Medes, in wch after diuers aduentures
of bothe nations, at length the Parthians gate the upper
hand Mythridate, being increased in strengthe by their
power, made one Bachafus Regent of Media, and himself
went into Hyrcania. At his returne from whence he made
warre vpon the kynge of the Elymeans, whom he over-
came, and adnered that Realme also to his Kingdome.
And there vpon receiuing many countries by conuol-
sion, he dilated the myre of Parthia from the mountayn
Caucasus, even vnto the river of Euphrates. Finally
being taken with a sicknesse, he dyed honorably
in his old age, of no lesse fame and renowne
than his great grandfather Arsaces

¶ The contents of the xlii. Book.

THE Scythians make vvaie vpon the Parthians. Phraortes king
of Parthia for his cruelty is betrayed and slaine. Artabanus suc-
ceedeth after whose death reyneth Mythridates, surnamed the
Great, who greatly enlarged the Parthian Emperie. The originall and
Description of Armenia, the History of Isen & Medea, & the Argo-
nantes. The originall of the Albanes in the East the description of the
river Tygris. Mythridates is deposed and slaine by his brother Horo-
des. The battels of the Parthians against the Romans, the furye and
madnesse of Horodes for the death of his sonne Pacorus, the greates
vickednesse of Phraortes, who overcometh The emperor, An-
tony, is deposed and set vp againe by the Scythians, Tiridates, who
during his absence, was created kyng hearing of his returne, flyeth
to Augustus The emperor. Phraortes send Ambassadors from him
Augustus subdueth the Parthians vvyth the Maietye of his Name.

After



After the decease of Mythridates
king of the Parthians, his sonne Phra-
ortes was crowned king. Who being
fully purposed to war vpon Syria, to bee
revenge of Antiochus for attempting
the kingdome of Parthia, was by insur-
rection of the Scythians reuoked to the defence of his owne.
For the Scythians beinge solicted vpon promise of wa-
ges, to abide the Parthians against Antiochus Kinge of
Syria, when the warre was finished ere they came, and
they in reproch of their late comming were defrauded of
their paye, beinge greued to haue traualled so farre for no-
thing, when they demanded either their wages for their
paines taking, or els some other enemy to fight with, such
a scornful answer was given them, that they beinge of-
fended therewith, began to wast the borders of Parthia.

Phraortes therefore, when he should take his tour-
ney against the Scythians, left to gouerne his Realme
in his absence one Hymerus, highly in fauour with him,
for that he of him in the flourishing prime of his childhood.
Who forgetting bothe, his owne former Life, and whose
person hee represented, through his tyrannous crueltye,
deuoted impoynted vlt, both, Babilon and many other Ci-
ties. And Phraortes himselfe tooke to the warres with
him, the Greckish warre, which he had taken in the warres
of Antiochus, and had encreased cruelly and proudly,
quite forgettinge that their captiuitie had not mitigated
their enemylike mindes so muche, but that his wronge-
full demeanour towards them, had more stirred them to dis-
pleasure against him. Therefore whē they perceiued that
the Parthien battell began to haue a worse end of the stoffe
they turned themselves and tooke part with the enemy.
and so with the bloudie slaughter of the Parthien hoste, &
of the king Phraortes himselfe they recured the reuē-
gement of their wrongfull captiuitie, wherby they had so
long

The conquests
of Mythrida-
tes the
king of Par-
thia.

The i. Em-
perour of
Parthia, & of
his doings.

It is ill trusting
them to vvhō
a man bath
done displea-
sure.

The sixth Em-
perour of
Parthia.

The seventh
Emperour and
of his doings.

long tyme desired. In stead of hym, his uncle Artabanus was created kyng. And the Scythians, beyng contented with the victorie, after that they hadde wasted Parthia, returned into their owne country: But Artabanus died immediately: of a wounde in his arme that hee receiued in a battell against the Colcharians. After him succeeded his sonne Mithridates, who, for his noble actes was surnamed the greate. For being inflamed with desyre to excell in prowesse, he behaued himselfe so nobly, that in princelynesse he surmounted all his famous progenitors. Therefore hee accomplished many warres agaynst his neyghbours with greate prowesse, and subdued manye nations, vnder the dominion of Parthia. Whereof hee soughte diuerse tymes to his aduantage, agaynst the Scythians, and reuenged the displeasure doone to his predecessours. At the laste he made warre against Artodastes, kyng of the Armenians, But soasmuche as we see passynge into Armenie, I thinke it necessarie to repecte the originall thereof some what deper. For we thinke, it is not lawfull to passe ouer so greate a kingdom with silence, conspyryng that next vnto Parthia, it surmounteth all other kingdomes in greatnes. For Armenia is in length from Cappadocia vnto the Caspian sea, eleuen hundred miles, and in bredth seuen hundred miles. It was founded by Armenius one of the companions of Iason the Thessalian, whome kyng Pelias conuynge to destroye for his natable prowes, whiche seemed daungerous to his kyngdome, for feare lest he shoulde depose him, tolde him what a noble voyage ther was for him into Colchos, perswadyng him to take the enterpryse vpon him and to fetch the golden fleece, that was so famous and notably talked of in all the worlde. Dopyng that either through so long and perillous a sayling, or els by fighting agaynst so sauage & Barbarous a people, he mighte bring the aduenturous knyght to confusion. Iason therefore when he hadde made proclamation of so notable a voyage

The originall
of the Armenians.

The situation
of Armenie.

The voyage
for the golden
fleece

voyage and that thereupon the noble yonge men almoste of all the whole worlde resorted in great number vnto him, he assembled an armie of most valiant knyghtes, whiche were all called by the name of Argonautes. Whom when after the accomplishment of his aduenturous enterpryses, he had brought home agayne in safety, hee was expulsed agayne out of Thessaly by the sonnes of Pelias. Whereupon with a great multitude (which for the renowne of his prowesse, daily resorted to him out of all realmes,) hauyng in his company, his wyfe Medea (begotten by Egeus kyng of Athenes) he went agayne to Colchus, and restored his father in lawe to his kyngdome, from which he was deposed. After that hee made many battells with his neyghbours: and their cities which he had taken, he partly annexed to the kyngdome of his father in lawe (to the entenie to abolishe the reproche of his former warfare, wherein hee hadde bothe lede away his Daughter Medea, and also slayne his sonne Aegialus, and partly gaue them to the people that he brought with him to inhabite. By report he was the firste of all menne next after Hercules and Liber (whiche as the same goeth were kyngs of the East) that conquered that climate of the worlde.ouer some Nations hee assigned captaynes, Phrygius and Ancistratus, the wagoners of Castor, and Pollux. He made a league with the Albanes, whiche as it is reported followed Hercules out of Italye from his moother Albanus, when after the slaying of Gerion, he drave his cattell through Italye: who also becomynge in mynde that they came out of Italye saluted the army of Pompeius by the name of brothers, when he warred with Mithridates. By meanes wherof all the whole East almost builded Temples and did diuine honours too Iason, as to their fyrst founder. The whiche Parmenon one of the Captaynes of great Alexander, manye yeares after

The actes of
Iason.

The originall
of the Albanes
in Asia.

The great estimation
of Iason

1031

The originall of
the Medes.

commanded to be beaten downe to the cent & no mans
name should be had in more honour in the East, than the
name of Alexandre. After the death of Iason, Medus being
an earnest follower of his vertues, in hono^r of his mother
Medea, builded the citie Medea, and established the king
dome of the Medes calling it after his owne name, which
in continuance of tyme grew to that estate, that all the
East was in subiection to the empyre thereof. The Albans
are next neighbors to the Amazones, whose Quene Tha
lestris, manie autho^rs haue reported to haue despyed the
carnall company of Alexander. Armenius beinge also a
Tha. lian, and one of the number of Iasons Captaynes,
haupng gathered together the multitude (whiche after
the death of Iason their kynge, wandred vp and downe e
uery where, founded the towne of Armenie, in the mou
ntaynes wherout of, springeth the Riuer Tigris, which at
the first is a very small streame. Then a good waye from
the heade, it sinketh into the ground, and a spue & twentye
myles beyond it ryseth vp a great flud in the countrie So
phone, and so is receiued into the lakes of Eufates. Ther
foze Mithridates king of the Parthians (after his warre in
Armenie) was for his cruelty deposed fro the kingdome
by the counel of the Realme. His brother Horodes inua
ding the Royall Sea beinge vacant, besieged Babilon a
great while because his brother Mithridates was fledde
thither, so longe until he constrained them for sauyne to
yeld vp the Towne.

The originall of
the Armenians.

The head of
the Riuer Tigris

Hee returneth
to the story of
the Parthians.

The villayne
of Parthia.

The cruelty of
of Horodes to
wards his bro
ther.

The death of
Crassus.

Mythridates vpon confidence in that hee was so nere
of his kynne, willingly submytted himselfe to his brother
Horodes. But Horodes takng him rather for an enemy
than for a brother commaunded him to be cruellie slayne
befoze his face. After this he made warre with the Ro
maynes, and betterly destroyed the graunde Captayne
Crassus, with his sonne and all the Romayne host. His
sonne Pacorus beinge sente to pursue the remnaunte of
the Romayne battel, after that hee hadde atched manie
haule

haule enterpryses in Syria, was called home agayn, as mi
strusted of his father vuyng whose absence, the hoste of
the Parthians, that he left behynd him in Syria, was with
al the Captaynes therof betterly slayne by Crassus Lieue
tenant to Crassus. These thinges thus done, not longe
tyme after arose the Ciuill warres betwene Cesar and
Pompey, in which the Parthians toke part with Pompey
both for the frendship that was betwene them and Pom
pey in his warres agaynst Mythridates, and also for the
death of Crassus, whose son they hard say, shoulde with Ce
sar whom they knew wel ynough, would reuenge his fa
thers death, if Cesar should chance to get the upper hande.
Therfoze after that Pompey and his adherents had takē
the fople, they both ministered ayde to Cassius and Brutus
against Augustus and Antonie. and also after the end of the
warre entyrng in leage with Labienus, vnder the con
duct of Pacorus, they wasted Siria and Asia, and mozeouer
gave a proude assaulte vpon the campe of Ventidius, who
after Cassius, in the absence of Pacorus, hadde giuen the
Parthien army an ouerthrowe.

A slaughter of
the Parthians.
The ciuill wars
betwene Cesar
and Pompey.

But Ventidius pretending a counterfayt feare, keppe
himselfe in a good whyle, and suffered the Parthians for a
tyme to haunt theselues. At the length he sent out a part
of his host, vpon the ym as they were mery and carelesse,
with whose sodayne assault the Parthians beinge dismayde
fled hither and thither to saue themselves. Pacorus suppo
sing that his menne which were fledde, had withdrawen
all the Romayne Legions after them, assayled in hast the
Campe of Ventidius, in hope that he should haue founde
it without defendantes. Then Ventidius sendinge quicke
ly out the residue of his Legions. slue al the whole bande
of the Parthians with the kynge Pacorus himselfe also.
Neither did the Parthians at any tyme receyue a grea
ter losse. When tydings herof was brought into Parthia,
Horodes the father of Pacorus, who latelie befoze (bea
ryng that the Parthians hadde wasted Siria, & inuaded

The policy of
Ventidius.

A great slaugh
ter of the Par
thians with the
kynge's sonne.

Asia

Horodes fall-
leth beside
himselfe for
sorrow.

Asia) hadde boasted that his sonne Pacorus, was a con-
queror of the Romaines) when he ones heard of his death
and of the slaughter of his armie, sodaynlye for sorowe
fell mad. Many dayes after, he would not talke to any
man, he would not take anye sustenance, he would not
speake any one worde, in so muche that a manne would
haue thought he had bene domb. After that many dayes
were expyed, when sorow loosened his courage) he spake
of nothyng but Pacorus, he thought he saw Pacorus, he
thought he had Pacorus, he would talke as though he
had bene wyth him, he would stand still as though he had
stoode wyth him, and anone he would lamentably bewail
the losse of him. When he had mourned thus a longe sea-
son, an other beauietie came vpon the mysfable olde
manne, namely which of his thirtie sonnes he should
ordeyne kyng in Pacorus stead. He had many concuby-
nes, of whom he begate all that pouche, of whiche euerye
one makynge sure for her owne child, diide as it were be-
siege the old mannes mynde. But it was the despenye of
Parthia (in the whiche it is an ordynary custome, to haue
vnnatural murderers to theyr kynges) that the wicke-
dest and vngaciousst of the all, whose name was, Phra-
hertes was substituted kyng. Therfore as though it semed
hys father would not dye naturally, he forthwyth kyllen
him, and put his thirtie sonnes too death. Neither cea-
sed he his slaughter in the chyldren. For when he percei-
ued that the noble menne hated him for his outragious
cruelty, and continual working of mischiese, and that ther
was none that myght be nominated kyng, he commaun-
ded his sonne who was man growen, too bee putte too
death. Agaynst this manne Antonye with sixtene of his
strongeste Legions, made warre for ministring, ayde
agaynst hymselfe and Cesar. But he was so sore afflicted in
many battels that he was fayne to fflye backe out of Par-
thia. Thoughe which victorie Phrahartes bringe made
more proude when he persisted to deale cruellye in ma-
ny

The nynthe
Emperour of
Parthia.

Horodes is kil-
led by his son
Phrahartes.

ny things, he was diuen into exile, by his owne subiec-
tes. Whereupon after longe and earnest sute made vnto
the countries bordering vpon Parthia, at the length by
much intreatance, he so perswaded the Scythians, that
through their ayde he was restored to his kingdom again.
In the tyme of his absence, the Parthians had constituted
one Tyridates kyng, who hearing of the comming of
Scythians, fled with a great bande of his frends to Cesar
Augustus who was makynge warre at that tyme in Spain
bynging with him to Emperour, the yongest sonne of
Phrahartes for a pledge, whom through the negligence of
such as were put in trust with the keepynge of hym, he had
stolen away. Upon knowledge whereof, Phrahartes forth
with sent his Ambassadors to Cesar, requirynge him to
sende him home his seruant Tyridates and his son with
him. Emperour when he had heard thambassadors of
Phrahartes, and vnderstoode the requestes of Tyridates
(for he also desired to be sette in possession of his kyng-
dome againe assuring that Parthia should euer after bee
at the commaundement of the Romaines, if it would
please him to bestowe the kyngdome vpon him) answer-
ed howe he would neither deliuer Tyridates into the
handes of the Parthians, nor yet minister ayde to Tyrida-
tes agaynst them.

Phrahartes is
deposed, & re-
stored by the
Scythians.

The tenth
Emperour of
Parthia.

Phrahartes
sendes Amba-
sadors to
Rome.

Neuer thelesse because it should not seme, that they had
obteyned no part of their demaund at Emperours hand
he sent Phrahartes his sonne without ranfome, and al-
lowed Tyridates honorable entertainment to staye hym
with as longe as he lysted to abyde with the Romaines
After this, hauinge finished hys warres in Spaine, when
he came into Syria too sette a stape in the affayres of the
East, he put Phrahartes in suche a feare, that to the enten-
ce he should not make warre vpon Parthia, all the priso-
ners that were in the realme, either of the army of Cra-
sus, or of the army of Antony, wer gathered together, and
withal the baners & Antefignes that wer taken at those
times) sent

The Parthians
submit them-
selues to Au-
gustus.

sent again to Augustus. Moreover Phraortes gave to Augustus, his sunnes and nephewes in hostage, & Themperoz dyd moze with the onely Maistie of his name, than any other Emperour could haue done by force of Armes

The contentes of the. xliij. Booke

The fyrst inhabitors of Italy, the coming thither of Euander, and Eneas and of his Warres there, the building of long Alba, with the succellio of the kings therof & the building of Rome by Remus and Romulus, the building of Maritimes in Fraunce, with the prayse commendacion and vvarres therof. The steadfast faith of the Malitians toward the Romaynes the ancestors of the author of this vvoike.



Rogus Popeius hauing made a longe discourse of the doinges of the Parthians, of the East, and welny of all the whole worlde, returneth as it wer after a long pilgrimage, hom to the foundation of the cite of Rome: thinking it the parte of an vnthank-

full cytizen, if when he had painted out the actes of al nations, he should speake nothing at all of his owne native countreie. Therfore he toucheth briesly the beginninge of the Romayn Emppre, so that he neither excedeth his boundes which he propounded to himself in his worke, nor yet passeth ouer with silence the foundation of that Cytie, which out of doubt is head of all the worlde. The first inhabters of Italy, wer the Aborigines, whose kyng Saturne is reported to haue bin of such Iustice and vprightnesse, that during his Reygne, ther was not any slaue or bondman, nor any man that had ought priuate to himselfe, but all thinges were common and vndeuided to all men a like as though it had bin one Patrimoine, and one Inheritaunce, equallie belongyng to all Men.

In remembraunce of whiche example, it is enacted that

The first inhabters of Italy.

The Iustice, and equitie, in the tyme of Saturne.

that in the feast of Saturne, no man should be moze sette by then other, but that the bondmen should sit downe to their Meale Fellowes like with their Masters euerywhere. Furthermore Italy was called Saturnia after the name of the foresayd kyng: The Hill also where he dwelled was called Saturne, on the which at this day (Iupiter hauinge, as it were removed Saturne out of his place)

standeth the Capito. After him in the third place by report, reigned Faunus, in whose tyme Euander with a small company of his countrey men, came from Palanteu, a cite of Arcadie into Italy, to whom Faunus of gentlenesse and courtesy, assigned Landes to lyue vpon, and the Mountayne which after ward he called Palantine. In the foot of this hill, he builded a Temple to Lyceus, whom the Grekes call Pan, and the Romaynes Lupercus. The Image of his God beinge otherwise naked, is clad in a Goates skynne, in which maner of actye, men are yet wonte to runne vp and downe the staires of Rome, in the celebration of the Feasts kept vnto Pan. Faunus had a wife named Fatua, which beinge continually rauished with a holy spirite, as it were in a fury prophesied of thinges to come: whereupon such as are wont to be so inspired, are sayd to play Fatua vnto this day. Of the daughter of Faunus and Hercules (who at same tyme hauing killed Gerio, braue his cattell which he had gotten in rewarde of his victory, through Italy) was vnlawfully begotten Latinus. During whose reygne, Aneas after that Troy was destroyed by the Greekes, came from thence into Italy. When at his first arriuall he was bidden battell.

But when he had brought his men into the field, before they encounter they fell to communication. In the which he brought Latinus in such admiration of him, that he was content to make him Copetener of his Kingdome, and also his Sonne in lawe, by geuinge him his Daughter Lauinia in marriage.

After this they made warre soynally againste Turnus Kyng

The feast of Saturne.

The Capito

The coming of Euander into Italy.

The getting of Latinus.

The coming of Eneas into Italy.

The building
of Lavinium.

king of the Rutilians, who chalenged them for defrauding him of Lavinia that by promise should have been his wife. In which battle both Turnus and Latinus were slain. Aeneas therefore obtained both the Nations by the law of armes, builded a Citie and gave it the name of his wife. Afterwarde he made war against Mezentius king of the Hetruscians, in which he was slain, and his sonne Ascanius succeeded in his steade. Who leaving Lavinium, builded Alba longa, the which for the space of three hundred yeares together, was the head of the kingdom. After many kinges of this Cite, at length raygned Numitor and Amulius. But Amulius having wrongfully deposed his elder Brother Numitor, to the entente none issue should come of the stock of Numitor to chalenge the crowne thrust his daughter Rhea, into a nunnery there to leade al her life in bowed virginity, clokinge his iniurie with an honorable color, that men might suppose shee was not put there as a condemned person, but rather made chiefe prisoner of the place by election. Beinge therefore as a recluse in the Grove consecrated to Mars, shee was deliuered of two sonnes, whither shee conceived them by Counterfeite or by Mars, no manne is able to saye of a truthe. Amulius upon knowledge hereof, beinge in more feare then euer hee was: by reason of the Birth of the two children, commanded them to be cast away, and layd their mother in prison, through distresse whereof she died, but fortune providinge before hand for the originall of the Romaynes, sente a shee Wolfe to nource the children, the which havinge lost hir whelpes, for desyre to have her teethes drawn that were payned with fulnesse of milke, offered herself to be nource to the Children. As shee came and wente oftentimes to the children, like as if they had ben hir whelpes, a Shepheard named Faustulus, perceived the matter, and stealing them from the wolfe broughte them by like shepherdes among his cattell. Now whether it were for that they were borne in the Grove of Mars, or for that they

The birth of
Romulus and
Remus with
their education.

were

were nourished by a wolf which is in the tuition of Mars it was beleued to be as a manifest prooffe that they were the sonnes of Mars. The one of the, was named Remus, and the other Romulus. When they came to mannes estate, they accustomed to trye Pastures daile: one with another wherby they increased as wel in strength as in nimbleness and swiftness. Therefore when they had oftentimes manfully and polittically chased away sheues from stealing their catel, Remus was taken by the said sheues and as though he had bin the same himself which he had prohibited others to doe, was brought before the king, and there accused for a stealer of Numitors catel. Whereupon the king deliuered him to Numitor, to punish as he thought good. But Numitor havinge pitye of the yonge man, had haile a mistrust, that he should be one of his nephewes that were cast away, by reason he resembled his daughter so much in fauor and making, and by reason, that the tyme of her deliuerance was agreeable unto his yeres. As he was in this doubtfull perplexitie with himselfe Faustulus came sodainly in with Romulus, by whom beinge further instructed of the birth and bringinge up of the children, they made a conspiracie, and toke weapon in hand, the yonge men to reuenge their mothers death, and Numitor to recouer the kingdom wrongfully withheld from him. Amulius was slaine, and Numitor restored to the crowne. Anone after the yongmen builded the city of Rome. Whiche beinge finished, there was ordeyned a Senate of an hundred elders, which were called fathers. Then because the neighbours disdayned to marrye their daughters to shepherdes, they rauished the maydens of the Sabines, and havinge subdued the people that were next about them, spoyled they gate the empire of Italye, and anone after the Emperre of the whole worlde. At those dayes, as yet the kinges in stead of Diademes hadde maces, which the Grekes call Scepters. For euen from the first beginninge of thynges, men in old tyme dyd Moores.

Remus is taken
and brought to
the king.

Romulus and
Remus make a
conspiracie a-
gainst Numitor

The building
of Rome.

3. ii.

they

Shipmaces for Goddes in remembrance of whiche Religion the images of the Goddes are yet still made with Maces in theyr handes. In the tyme of kinge Tarquine a companie of the Phosences comminge out of Asia, entered the mouth of Tiber and toynd amitye with the Romaynes from thence they went by water to chuttermost coast of Fraunce and there amonge the Liguriens and the cruell French men they builded the citie Marcielles and did many noble actes both in defending themselves by the sword agaynst the sauge French menne, and also in assailing those that had assailed the before. For the Phosences by reason of the barrenesse of theyr countre, were compelled to sette theyr mynde more earnestly vpon the water, then vpon the land, and so they liued by fishing, by traffike of Marchandise and often tymes by robbinge on the sea, which in those dayes was counted for a praise. By means wherof they aduentred to chuttermost border of the Ocean, and arriued vpon the French coast by the riuer of rone, with the pleasantnes of whiche they were so taken in loue that at theyr returne home they reported what they had sene and procured mo of theyr countymen to goe thither with them. The captains of theyr flete wer Furius and Peranus. Who with their company presented themselves before Senanus kyng of the Segorigians in whose territory they coueted to build them a Citie despyring his amity and frendship. By chaunce the very same day the king was occupied in preparaciō for the mariage of his daughter Gyptis, whom according to the custome of the countrey he purposed to marrye to suche a one, as he herselfe at the feast woulde chuse to his husbāde. Among other that were biddē to the maryage the straungers of Grece wer despyed to the feast also. Anon the pong lady was brought in: who being commaunded by her father to reche a cup of water to him whom she woulde haue to her husband, passed ouer all other gesses and turned herselfe to the Greekes gaue the water to Peran. Who by

The buildinge
of Marcielles.

A mariage.

this meanes being made of a straunger the kyngs sonne in lawe, obteyned of his father a plotte, to build a Citie vpon. So was the Citie of Marcielles builded, hard by the mouth of the riuer of Rone, in an outnooke, as it wer in a croke of the sea. But the Liguriens enuyng the prosperity of the Citie, disourbed the Greekes with their continuall warres. Who though valiaunt defending of themselves, became so renoumed, that after they had banquished their enemies, they builded many cities in the groundes that they toke from them. At their handes, the Frenchmen learned a more ciuil trade of liuing, (though the whiche their Barbarousnesse was layde a syde, and as it were tamed,) together with tyllage of the Grounde, and walling in of their cities. Then they framed themselves to lyue by lawes, & not by force, the they learned to shede their vines: then they learned to plant and graffe their copies, finally both the menne and all other things were so exquisitely polished, that Grece seemed not to be removed into Fraunce: But rather that Fraunce was transformed into Grece. After the death of Senanus king of the Segorigians (by whome the place to build the city vpon was graunted) his sonne Comanus, succeeding him in the kyngdome, was inuegled against the Massiliens, by one of his Lordes, alleging that the tyme would come that Marcielles shoulde bee the destruction of the people that were next neighbors about it, wherfore it was to be suppressed now in that very rising therof, least afterwarde being suffered to grow stronger, it might oppresse hym. For the further manifestation wherof, he recited this fable, how vpon a tyme a wyche, being great with whelpes, desired a shepherde to lende her houseroume to whelpen in: the wyche being obteyned, she desired of him respite, to respite hir so longe, but till she might bringe byr whelpes and that at length when they were full grown, she and her whelpes were so strong, that she chaledged the place to her self for euer.

The actes of
the Massilians.

A fable well
applied.

In likewiſſe the Maſſiliens whiche then ſemed to bee but ſoiourners, wold perchaunce hereafter become Lordes of the countrie. The king being prouoked by this inſpygation, deuised how to ſurpriſe the Maſſiliens. So by a ſolemne feaſtfull day of the Goddeſſe Iſta, he ſent a greate ſort of ſtrong and ſtout men into the citie, as it had bene to make merie, cauſing a greate number mo to be coueide in cartes & wagons hydden with ruſhes and leaues, and he himſelf with his hoſt lay in ambuſhe in the next mountaynes, to the intent that in the night, when thoſe had ſet open the gates: hee mighte come with all ſpeede to the perſormance of his prepaſſed pollicie, and put the citie to the ſwoorde as they were dead a ſleepe, or elles eating and drinke. But a kynſwoman of the kynge bewraied this treaſon: who being woude to playe the goodfellowe with a certayne yong man of the Grekes, as ſhe embraced him hauing pity on him for his beauty, bettered the matter by to him, & counſelled him to auoyde the danger. He ſo forth with tolde the matter to the Offycers of the Citie: By meanes whereof the treaſon commynge to lyght, the Liguriens were layd hand one, and they that lay hidde in the ruſhes, wer pulled out by the heles. The which being euerichone ſlayne, the treaſon was turned vpon the kinges owne head for the Maſſilians ſlewe the king himſelf, and ſeven thouſand of his ſouldiers with him. From that day forthward, the Maſſiliens vpon their feaſtfull Dayes, kept their gates ſhutte, made good watch, ſent Penne to warde vpon the walles, ſerched all ſtraungers, toke good hede and euen as if they had had warre, ſo kepte they the Citie in tyme of peace. So well is good order kept among them at all tymes not ſo much in tyme of neede, as byppon cuſtome of doyng well. Afterwarde they had ſore warres with the Ligurians, and the Frenchmen, Whiche things bothe encreaſed the renoume of the Citie, and alſo by achieving ſo many victories made the knighthoode & cheualry of the Grekes, famous and redoubted amonge their neighbours.

Treaſon againſt the Maſſiliens.

Women can kepe no counſel.

The fortunate ſucceſſe of the Maſſiliens.

neighboures. Whereouer they dyuers tymes vanquiſhed the armies of the Carthaginienſes when they warred by them for taking of their ſhiper botts, and gaue them peace at their pleaſure like conquerours. With the Spaniards they entered in league of amity: and with the Romaynes they made a continuall confederacie and aliance almoſte from the firſt laying of the foundation of the Citie, the which they obſerued moſt faythfully and to the uttermoſte of their power ayded the as their confederates, in al their warres. Which thing made the to be bolder to truſte to their owne ſtrength, & alſo purchaſed them peace of their enemyes. Therefore at ſuch tyme as Parſels ſiſhed moſt in renoume of chualry and in abundance of ryches, and was in the chiefe flower of her ſtrength, ſodayly al people bordering about them, gathered themſelues together to roote by the name of the Maſſiliens, as it had ben to quench ſome common ſpye. A noble man called Caramandus was by comon conſent choſen to be captayn general agaynſt them: who as he lay at ſiege befoze the Citie with a greate hoſt of the beſt men that could be choſen, in all the countrie, ſaw in his ſleepe the likeneſſe of a woman with a greym & terrible countenance, which ſayd ſhe was a Goddeſſe: at whoſe ſight he was ſo aſtraughte, & of his owne mind vnrequeſted, he made peace with the Maſſiliens. And making request that he myght enter into their citie to worſhip their Goddes, when hee came into the temple of Minerua, eſpying in the porches the ymage of the goddeſſe which he had ſene in his dreame, he cryed out ſodaynly that it was euen ſhe that had feared him in the night, it was ſhe that commaunded him to rayſe his ſiege. Whereupon greatly reioyſing with the Maſſiliens, becauſe he perceiued that the Goddes immortall had ſuch care and regarde ouer them, hee gaue the Goddes a chayne of Gold for an offering, and made a bond of frendſhip with the Maſſiliens to continue for euer. After that they had thus gotten peace and eſtabliſhed quietneſſe, the Maſſilien Ambaſſadours

The viſion of Caramandus.

Ziliſ.

reſur

returning from Delphos (whither they had bene sent to
carpe presentes unto Apollo) heard say that the Citie of
Rome was taken and burnt by the Frenchmen. Whiche
tydings when they had brought home, y^e Massiliens pro-
claymed a vniuersall mourning, as if it had bene for the
death of some special friends, and gathered al their Gold
together, as wel priuate as publique, the which they set
to make by the summe, that the Frenchemenne deman-
ded of the Romaynes for their raunsome and for to graunt
them peace. In recompence of whiche good turne, they
were made free of the Citie of Rome, and placed among
the S^{er}uantes of all shewes and pageants. And alliance
was knyt with them to bee continually reputed as Ro-
maynes. In his last boke, Trogus declareth, that bys
Ancestours fetch their pedigree from the Volces, that
his Graundfather Trogus Pompeius in the wars against
Sertorius, did saue the Citie to Eneus Pompeius, that his
vnckle had the leading of the Horsemen vnder the said
Pompey in the warre agaynst Mythridates, and
that his father also serued in the warres vn-
der C. Caesar, in the roume of Secreta-
rye Lieutenant and keeper of
his Seale

A faythful frend
is tried in aduer-
sity.

The ances-
tours of Tro-
gus Pompeius.

The

The contentes of the. xliiii. Booke.

THE situation frutesfullnesse and description of Spayne. A yvon-
derfull example of pacience. The deedes of Viriatus Captain of
the Spaniards, of the genettes, and of the Steele that is in
that countrie, vvhath things were inuented by Gargoris, howe
Gargoris assayed by al means possible to put his daughters childe to
death, and could not, vvhetherupon moued with compassion for the
perilles he had escaped, he made him his heyre, vvhose name was
Habis. The inuentions of the sayde Habis. The Storye of Hercules
and Geiron the inhabitantes of the Gades, vppon vvhich occasion
the Carthaginenses entered first into Spayne, and of the doings of
their Captayns there, synallye howe it was subdued by Augustus
Thempour and made a piousse of the Romaynes.



Paine, like as it is the vttermost
bound of Europe, so Cal it also bee
thend of this worke. Pen in old tyme
called it Iberia after the riuier Iberus
and afterwarde they called it Spayn,
after y^e name of Hispalus. Their con-
terpe lyeth betwene Affricke & Frañce
& is enclosed with the Ocean Sea, & the mountayne Py-
ren Like as it is lesser than any of both those landes, so is
it moze frutesful the the both. For neither is it scorched wth
the outrageous heat of y^e Sūne as Affricke is nor infested
with continuall wyndes as Frañce is. But as it is midst
betwene the both, so on thone side throughe temperat heat,
& on thother throughe the moisture of pleasant shoures fal-
ling in due season it becommeth fertily of al kind of frute
and grayn, in so muche that it not onely sufficeth the In-
habitantes therof, but also sebeth abundance of all things
to Italy. & euē vnto Rome it selfe. For there cometh frō
thence not onely great plenty of corne & grayne, but also
of wyne, honny, and oyle. Besydes that, there is not onely
the best yron & stele y^e can be, but also many rases of most
swyft horses: neyther are the comodities that grow aboue
the ground to be praysed onely, but also the plentiful and
ryche mynes of Pettrals hydden depe within the ground

Thauncient na-
mes of Spayne.

The situation
of Spayne and
the fertility
therof.

of

Of flaxe and Wasse there in great store, and as for Ter-
million, there is no land hath more plenty of it. In this
land are running Rivers, not violently and outrageously
flowing to do any harme, but gently moistning the byne-
yards and cornfieldes, and (wher they ebbe & flow) with
the Ocean) very full of all kynd of fishes whereof many
also are ryche of golde which they carry to their great com-
mendation. Only by the ridge of the mountain Pyrene is
it parted from Fraunce, being on al other parties beside
encompassed round about with the Sea. The plat of the land
is almost foursquare, sauinge that the Sea beatynge on
both sides doth gather it somewhat narrower at þe moun-
taine Pyren. Howeuer wheras the Mountayne Pyren
runneth, it is in breyth five hundred miles. The air is whol-
some throught all Spayne, and the wind so coole and tem-
perate, that there ryseth no synkynge mistes oute of the
lowe groundes and marishes to infect it. Besides this, the
continuall ayre of the salt water rising by fro the sea runneth
about on all sides, perfereth throughte the whole countrey
the which being qualifed with the open ayre of the land
doth chiefly preserve all menne in health. The bodies of
the men can well awaye with hunger and payne & they
myndes can wel awaye with death. They live all verie
nigardly and hardly, and they couet rather war the peace.
If they want forayn enemy they seke one at home.
Ofentimes haue they died vppon the racke, for concea-
ling thinges put to them in secreete. So muche doo they
esteem more secreete then their lyues. Which maye well
be perceiued by the suffrance of that seruante in the war-
res of Carthage, who hauing reuenged the deathe of his
Master in the myddes of his tormentes, laughed and re-
ioysed, and with a mery and glad some countenauare van-
quished the cruelty of his tormētours. The people of that
countrey are exceeding swift of foote, vnquiet of mynd, and
many of them set more by theyr horses and armour, then
by their own bloode. They make not any preparation for
se allyng

The plat and
bignes of Spain

The nature &
disposition of
the Spaniards

A notable ex-
ample of con-
stant pacience.

feasting, but only vpon high & solempne daies. To washe
in warme water, they learned of the Romaines, after the
second warres with Carthage. During the continuance
of so many hundred yeres, they neuer had anye Captayn
of renoume sauing Viriatus: Who by the space of tenne
yeres togither bield the Romaines at the Staues end, some-
time to his gain, and sometime to his losse (so much were
they of nature more like brute beastes then like men) and
yet they followed him, not as one chosen by the discretion
of men, but onely because he was pollicique and cunning
in auoidyng of daungers. Yet notwithstanding hee was
of that vercuous behauior & stedynesse, that albeite he oftē
times vāquished the consuls with their armies, yet after
so greate enterpyles achieued, he neyther changed the
furniture of his armour, neither altered the fashion of his
aparel, nor brake he the order of his dyet, but loke in what
sorte he began firste his warres, in the same he continued
to the last, so that ther was neuer a common souldier but
seemed weltyler than the captain. It is reported of diuers
writers that about the river Tagus in Portugal, ymages
doo chure the by the winde. Which fable sprang first of the
fruitfulness of the Mares, and of þe great number of the
taces, of which in Gallie and Portugale, there are such
store to be sene, and those so swift, that not without good
cause, they may seme to be conceiued by the wynde. The
Gallicians allege theselyngs to be Grekes by descent. For
after the battel of Troy, they say that Teucer being ha-
ted of his father Telamon, for the deathe of his brother
Ajax & therupon not permitted to enter into his realm,
departed to Cyprus & ther builded a city, which he named
Salamine, after the name of his native countrey & hee same
fro. Where hearing of the deathe of his father, he retur-
ned to his countrey again, but being prohibited fro arry-
uall by Euryaces the sonne of Ajax, he arrived in Spain
and toke the ground wher new Carthage standeth nowe.
From whence he remoued to Gallie, & ther placing him
selfe

The doings
and comen-
dations of
Viriatius.

The swiftnes
of the Spanish
Genettes

The original of
the Gallicians
in Spayne.

The fruitfulness of Galice.

self and his, gave the country that name. For a porcion of Galice are called Amphiloichians, a country most plentyfull of brasse, lead, and Vermilion, whiche also gave the name to the ryuer thereby. Furthermore it is most riche of Golde, in so much that diuerse tymes they ere by cloddes of gold with the plough. In the borders of this countrie there is a holy hill, the which it is not lawfull to cut with any yron. But if it chaunce that the earth is broken with thunder and lighening (which is a common thing in those places,) they are permitted to gather by the gold as a gift of god. The women haue al the doing in houskeping and husbandrie, and the men giue themselves to war, and robbing. They haue the hardest yron that is, but yet their water is of more force then the yron for by tempering the metall therewith, it is made tougher and sharper, neither do they count any weapon good, that is not dypped either in the riuer Bilbo, or in the riuer Chalibs. Whereupon the people so well about the sayde riuer, are called Chalibs, and are reported to haue the best yron of al others. In the plaines of the Tarsellians, (where it is reported that the Tyrrhies made warre against the Gobbes) dwelled sometime the Curetes. An ancient king of which people named Gargaris, first inuented the maner to gather honye. This man perceiuing that his daughter had played the nygromancer, for thame of her wicked deede accepted diuers wayes to haue destroyed the child. But through good fortune he was preserued from al those dangers, and at the length for compassion of so many perils, was created king. First of all when he had commaunded him to be cast away, and ten dayes after he sent to seke his body, he was founde nourished with the milke of lordeys with heastes. Secondly, when he was brought hom, he commaunded him to be layd in a narrow path, where cattel were wont to go through. Surely he was very cruel, that wold haue his nephew rather troden to death, than simplye killed. Ther also perceiving he lay vnburied, & not buried, he caused hym

Steele.

The fruitfulness of Galice.

The inuentions of Gargaris.

The inuentions of Gargaris.

That which god will haue shued can not be hid.

him to be cast first to hungry dogges that he hadde pined from meete many dayes before for the nones and afterwards also to Swyne. Finally when they not onely did him no harme, but also some of the gaue him sucke, laste of al he had throw him into the Sea. Then as it were by the open and manifest prouidence of God, among the raging Scourges and the wallowing waues, as though he had ben carped in a ship, and not in the stream, & calme sea bare him vp aloft, and brought him safely to the shore. By and by came a hinde and gaue him sucke. Whereupon by keeping company with his nourice, the child became exceeding swift of foote and kepte in the mountaynes and forestes among the herbes of red dere as swift of foote as the mightiest of them. At the length beyng overthrown in a toyle & take, he was presented to the king for a gift. Ther by reason of his stature & making, wherein he much resembled the king, & by certain markes that wer growen in the child from his birth, the king knew him to bee his nephew. And by cause he had so wonderfull escaped so many perillous chaunces, hee proclaimed him heire and successor of his kingdome. His name was called Habis, who after that he had taken the crown vpon him, became a Prince of such maiesty that men thought it was not for nothing that he was so preserued by the prouidence of God from so many perilles. For he first ordayned lawes to kepe the sauage people in good order and conuersation one with another. He first taught them to breake oxen to the plough, and to til & to sow the ground, he first (for seriousnes of such thinges as he hadde suffered himselfe) caused men to forsake theyr beasty meates, & to fede vpon better. The chaunces of this man might seme to be but a fable: if the builders of Rome had not ben nourished by a wolfe & Cyrus king of Persia nourished of a Shee. This man forbad the people all seuerall occupations, & deuided the commons into seauē cities. After the death of Habis, the kingdome remayned in his posterity many hundred yeres.

The doinges of Habis.

In

The storie of
Gerion,

In another part of Spayne which consisteth of Tles, Gerion was kyng: in which part there is so great plenty of sweet pasture, that vntill the Cattel were kepte hungry, and not suffered to feede theyr fill, their bellies wold burst. In the same place were the Cattel of Gerion (wherein at those dayes mens substance did chiefly consist) whiche were of so great fame, that Hercules (allured with þe riches of the booy) came out of Asia thither. Whereouer Gerion was not triple as þe fables report, but the þrothers which accorded so frendly one with another, that it seemed as though one soule and one mynde ruled them all thre. Neither did they of theyr owne motion make war vpon Hercules. But when they sawe theyr Cattel drinen away they fought with him for the recovering of them. After that the Kings ceased in Spayne, the Carthaginenses first took vpon them the Dominion and rule of the cōtry. For when the Gaditanes, (being commanded so to do in a Dyane) had brought from Tyrus (out of the which city the Carthaginenses had also their begynnyng) the sacred Ceremonies of Hercules into Spaine, and there builded a Citie: though the malice of the people of Spayne their next neighbours, enuyng þe encrease of their new city and thei upon instigging the Gaditanes with warre, they sent to their kinsmen the Carthaginenses for helpe: who hauing a prosperous Journy, both defended þe Gaditanes from taking wrong, and also subdued the more part of the country vnder theyr dominion. Afterward also encouraged by the fortunate successe of their first voyage they sent Hamilcar as graundcaptaine with a great host to conquer the whole Realme: who hauing achieved manye haile enterpryses, whiles he followed his good luck with out aduiseiment, was entrapped by a pollicy and slayne. In his room was sent his sonne in law Hasdrubal, who also was slayn by a seruant of a Spanyard, in reuengement of his Maisters death. Hannibal the sonne of Hamilcar, greater thā the y both succeeded in the Captainship

For

For he surmounting the actes of them both, conquered all Spayne. And then making warre agaynst the Romans, he vexed Italye with sundry slaughters by the space of sixtene yeres together, but in the meane season the Romans sending the Scipios into Spayne, first drave the Carthaginenses out of the country and afterwarde had soze warres with the Spanyardes themselves. Neuertheles the countreyes of Spaine could neuer be brought vnder the yoke of bondage, vntill that Cæsar Augustus hauing conquered þe whole world came agaynst the with his victorious army, and bringinge those barbarous men and cruel people to a more ciuill trade of liuinge by order of

Howe the Romans conquered Spayne.

Lawe, substituted a Lyuerenaunce ouer them, like as was done in all other Provinces of the Empire.

FINIS.

IMPRINTED AT
London in Fleetstrete

neere vnto S. Dunstons Church
by Thomas Marsh

1578

The bringing of
the Carthaginenses
into Spayne.